CANADIAN HISTORY NOTES

COMPILED BY

C.R.JUDD.

CANADIAN HISTORY.

OUTLINE OF METHODS OF TEACHING HISTORY.

I. PURPOSES.

1. To present facts in such a manner that the principl of growth and government of nations will be established.
2. To stimulate patriotism.
3. To develop the minds of the pupils to imagine and grasp a situation.
4. To train the judgment and reasoning powers.
5. To direct the reading of pupils along supplementary lines and create a permanent choice for historical reading.
6. To strengthen and develop character.

II. PREPARATION OF THE TEACHER.

1. A thorough knowledge of the subject.
2. A knowledge of the methods of teaching.
3. Ability to direct the pupils in study.
4. Ability to present the subject in an interesting manner.

III. FOR THE JUNIOR GRADES.

History stories; Biographies of great men; Stories of exploration.

IV. FOR THE SENIOR GRADES.

Text books; Causes and effects; Maps; Outlines; Dates; Government; and Wars.

CANADIAN HISTORY.

I. THE INDIANS.

1. APPEARANCE.

They were tall, with straight black hair; high cheek-bones; and had a copper-coloured skin. They were lithe and active.

2. CLOTHING.

Their clothing consisted of skins of animals trimmed with feathers and quills. On their feet, they wore moccasins of deer skin; (some used only one piece of skin - others used three.)

3. DWELLINGS.

They lived in tents or tepees made of skin or bark; or in lodges made of logs. The tents were sometimes called wigwams.

4. FOOD.

Their food consisted of fish and game; fruit and nuts; and cultivated Indian corn or maize.

5. THE NAME.

The name "Indians" was conferred on them by Christopher Columbus. He discovered land in 1492 by sailing westward from Europe and thought that he had reached the East

Indies, off the coast of asia. He named the lan "The West Indies", and the people "Indians".

6. MANNER OF LIFE.

The Indians were very fond of hun ing, and fighting. They were proficient with the Tomahawk, and the "Bow and Arrow". They wer masters of woodcraft, and were fond of rovin The Hurons and the Iroquois cultivated the lan on a small scale, and built some houses of wood and bark. They were fond of feasting, gamb and dancing. They believed that objects of nature w inhabited by spirits, and they paid great defere to the medicine-man who was supposed to under stand spirits. They were cruel to their enemies, a often tortured their captives. The squaws had t do most of the drudgery.

7. THE CHIEF TRIBES.

The chief tribes were the Algonquins, Hurons, and Iroquois.

1. The Algonquins lived in the region extending from Lake Superior to the Atlantic Ocean and were the least intelligent of the tribes.

2. The Hurons lived around Georgian Bay and Lake Huron, and were the most peaceful

of the tribes.

3. The Iroquois lived in New York State, and were war-like. The Iroquois were composed of Five Nations - later six (Cayugas, Mohawks, Oneidas, Onondagas, Senecas, and Tuscororis)

8. TOOLS AND UTENSILS.

They used stone hatchets, flint arrows heads; clay pottery; bows and arrows; flint for making fires; rude needles made of bone; and deer sinews for thread.

9. MEANS OF TRANSPORTATION.

They moved from place to place in canoes, along the lakes and rivers; by ponies on the prairies, or in the open country; and by foot through the forest trails.

10. THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION REGARDING.

We learn of the Indians from the narratives of early explorers, and from their burial mounds, and village sites.

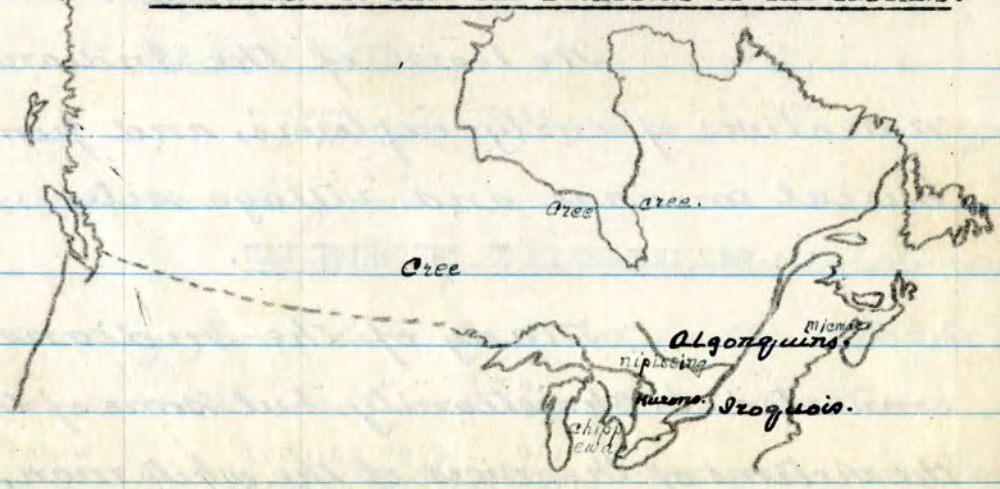
11. THE INFLUENCE OF THE WHITE MAN.

Many of the Indians became converted to Christianity, but some of them became the victims of the vices of the white man, especially the drinking of strong liquor and gambling.

The early French and English we
rivals for furs and territories; and the Indian
were much sought as allies. They, therefore, hel
balance of power, and felt that they were very
important. As the number of white people incre
the number of Indians decreased in comparis
This meant that they were becoming less imports
The Conquest of Canada by the British meant
that the Indians became even less important
as time went on. ou passed.

The Indians, to-day have not
assimilated civilization sufficiently to hold
their own in the lives of the country, so mos
of them live on reserves, and are wards of the
government.

12. SKETCH MAP TO SHOW THE LOCATIONS OF THE INDIANS.



See map- opp. page 11- The History of Canada. for
Highschools- McArthur.

II. THE FIRST VISITORS TO CANADA.

2. BJARNI.

I. DATE.

985 A.D.

2. HE WAS:-

a son of Herjulf; a norseman; a pirate; and an explorer who sailed the Atlantic Ocean.

3. THE ACCIDENTAL DISCOVERY.

It was his custom to return to his home in Iceland, every second year, to drink the Yule-tide Ale with his father. Upon his return in 984, he found that his father had gone with an Icelandic Chieftain - Eric the Red, to found a Norse colony on the newly discovered shores of Greenland.

He set out in pursuit, and eventually sighted a low wooded shore. He realized that he had sailed too far South - so turned north without landing - and finally arrived at his father's new home, where he told the settlers of the land that he had seen.

4. THE RESULT.

His explorations led the way for other explorers, who later followed to the land that he had sighted.

3. LEIF THE LUCKY.

I. DATE.

1000 A.D.

2. HE WAS:-

a son of Eric the Red; a norseman; an expl and a pirate who sailed from Greenland to visit the lan described by Bjarni.

3. HIS DISCOVERIES.

He first visited a shore which he described as "A land of Flat Stones", probably some part of Labrador. He continued, and landed at a place called Markland or Woodland, and finally stopped at a place called Wineland. He spent the winter there, and came in contact with the natives - Eskimos, or Indians, whom he called Skraelings.

4. THE RESULTS.

His explorations led the way for oth explorers.

4. OTHER NORSEMEN.

I. ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

Other Norsemen from Greenland, landed at Wineland, and attempted to establi a colony. They took away timber, but the colony

was a failure.

2. THE SOURCE OF INFORMATION.

Information is obtained from the Sagas, or historical tales of the Icelandic People.

3. EVIDENCE OF THE VISITS.

1. A cairn - inscribed 1135, with a Norse inscription was discovered in Baffin Bay.

2. A Stone with a Norse Inscription was found in Minnesota. If genuine, this proves that the Norsemen visited the western provinces.

4. THE RESULTS.

The visits were barren of results.

III. AN ITALIAN ADVENTURER

5. JOHN CABOT.

I. DATES.

1497 - 1498.

2. HE WAS:-

1 Born in Genoa, Italy, but as a youngman had gone to Venice, where he was employed in a trading house which dealt in silks and spices.

2. A visitor to the Eastern countries via the land route, - a buyer of silks and spices.

3. A student of geography, who believed that the earth was round.

3. HIS AIM.

He wanted to discover a North-west passage to Asia; and to make a fortune.

4. HE EXPLORED FOR:-

The English. He explored under the patronage of Henry VII, and the English merchants.

5. OUTLINE OF VOYAGE NUMBER ONE---1497.

He sailed from Bristol in the Matthew with a crew of (18) eighteen men, and reached the Shore of Canada.- probably Cape Breton Island. He claimed the land for England; discovered signs of natives, but did not see any; he believed that he had reached asia. He sailed through Cabot Str and skirted the south shore of Newfoundland. H noticed the abundance of Codfish on the Grand Banks of Newfoundland. Upon his return, he we honoured with a gift of £10, and was given a pension of £20 per annum.

6. OUTLINE OF VOYAGE NUMBER TWO.----1498.

On this occasion, he sailed with two vessels, and three hundred men. He went farther north; sighted Labrador, and sailed sou ward as far as chesapeake Bay. He traded with th

Indians, but did not secure silks and spices. On his return, he took some furs and fish with him. His backers were disappointed, and lost interest in his work. He was forgotten, and died, a broken-hearted, ruined man.

7. THE RESULTS OF HIS EXPLORATIONS.

1. He discovered Canada.

2. He established England's claim in North America.

3. He was the first to engage in the fur-trade (He started the American fur-trade and fisheries)

4. He made it possible for others to find a Northwest passage to China - a water-way to China.

8. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE EXPLORATIONS OF CABOT.

6. FISHERMEN--1504 A.D.------

They came to fish off the Banks of Newfoundland and landed on the mainland to dry, and to mend their net They met and talked with the Indians, and traded for furs

IV. THE COMING OF THE FRENCH.

7. JACQUES CARTIER.

I. DATES.

1534; 1535-6; 1541-2.

2. HE WAS:-

a French sea-Captain from St. Malo. France

3. THE NUMBER OF VOYAGES.

He made three voyages.

4. THE DATE OR DATES OF EACH VOYAGE.

1. Journey No. 1. = 1534.

2. Journey No. 2. = 1535-6.

3. Journey No. 3 = 1541-2.

5. THE REASONS FOR HIS EXPLORATIONS.

The French King was desirous of sharing in the newly discovered land; and wanted the coast of america explored to find a water-way to asia.

6. AN OUTLINE OF VOYAGE NUMBER ONE.....1534.

He crossed the Atlantic Ocean with two ships, and sailed through the straits of Belle

He coasted the shore of Newfoundland; crossed the Gulf of St. Lawrence; and sailed as far south as Prince Edward Island. He then turned northward, and was forced to take refuge in the land-locked Bay of Chaleur, south of Gaspé Peninsula. He landed on Gaspe, erected a cross with the arms of the French King, and claimed the land for France. The Indians were placated with a false story, and cheap presents. He persuaded the Indian chief to allow two boys to return to France with him, to be trained as interpreters. He then sailed northward as far as Anticosti Island in the St. Lawrence River, and then returned to France.

h 7. AN OUTLINE OF VOYAGE NUMBER TWO-----1535-6.

In 1535, he returned to Canada, with three ships; crossed the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and into the St. Lawrence River. He believed that he had found the water-way leading to Asia. He sailed up the river as far as Stadacona, an Indian village where Quebec now stands. He spent some time there with Donnacona. He heard the Indians using the word "Kanata", and thought that they were referring to the name of the country.- and so, he named the land- "Canada". The chief tried to discourage his

desire to continue up the river; but Cartier left so
of his men to prepare for winter, and he continue
up the river to Hochelaga, where Montreal now stan
He viewed the surrounding country from the top of
Mount Royal. He then returned to Stadacona wh
he spent the winter. During the winter, a number o
his men died of scurvy, and the rest were saved b
the Indian remedy - the use of a tea made from the
(balsam fir)(white Spruce). The attitude of the Indian
became hostile, and early in the spring, he set sa
for France, taking Donnacona and a number of
his men - Indians - with him.

8. AN OULINE OF VOYAGE NUMBER THREE----1541-2.

In 1541, the French King decided to pla
a colony on the St. Lawrence, and sent Cartier to
prepare the way for Roberval who had been appoint
Viceroy of New France. Cartier was his first lieut
ant. He returned to the St. Lawrence, and sailed
up the river as far as Hochelaga. He returned to th
neighborhood of Stadacona and wintered at
Cap Rouge. In the Spring, he set sail for France
and met Roberval off the coast of Newfoundla
Roberval ordered him to return, but under

cover of darkness, he sailed away to France. He returned to St. Malo, where he continued to reside.

9. THE RESULTS OF CARTIER'S EXPLORATIONS.

1. He planted the French flag on Can. Soil.

2. He named Canada.

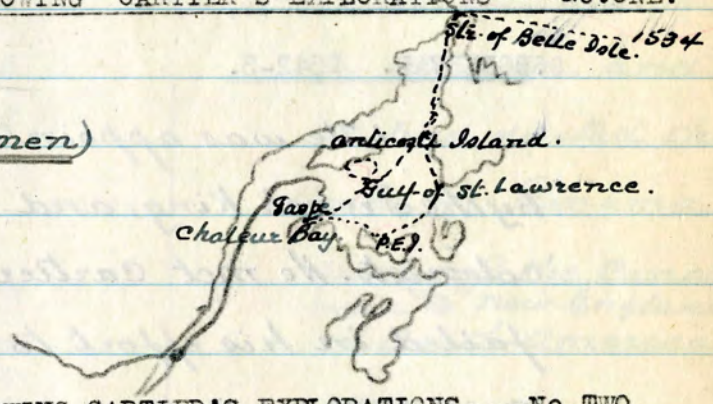
3. He discovered the great waterway of the St. Lawrence.

4. He pointed the way for the founder of New France.

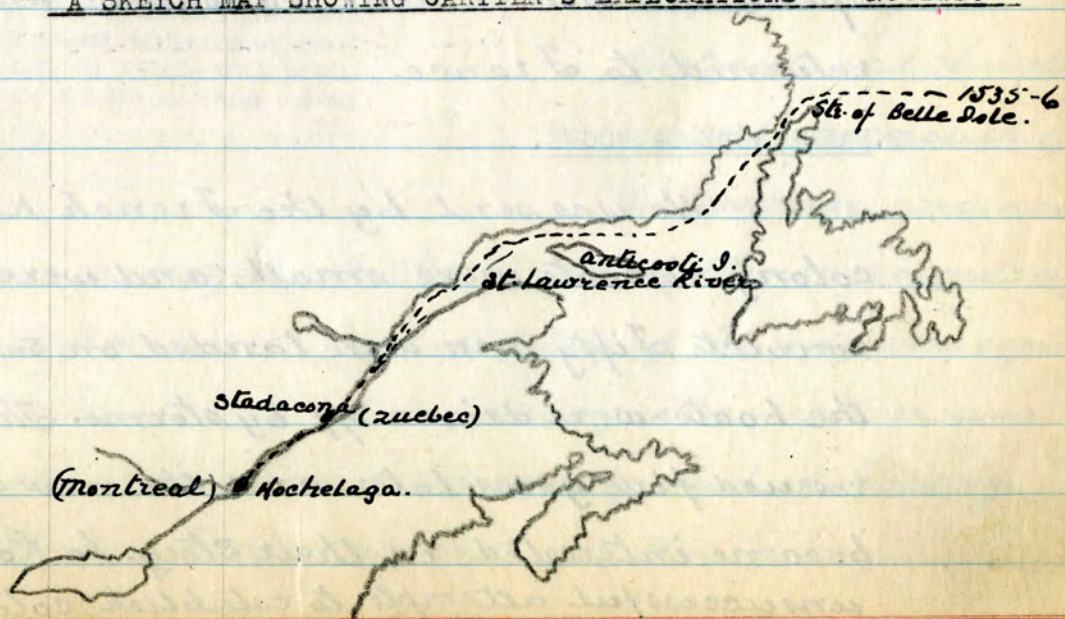
10. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING CARTIER'S EXPLORATIONS----No.ONE.

(See map. opp. page 14.

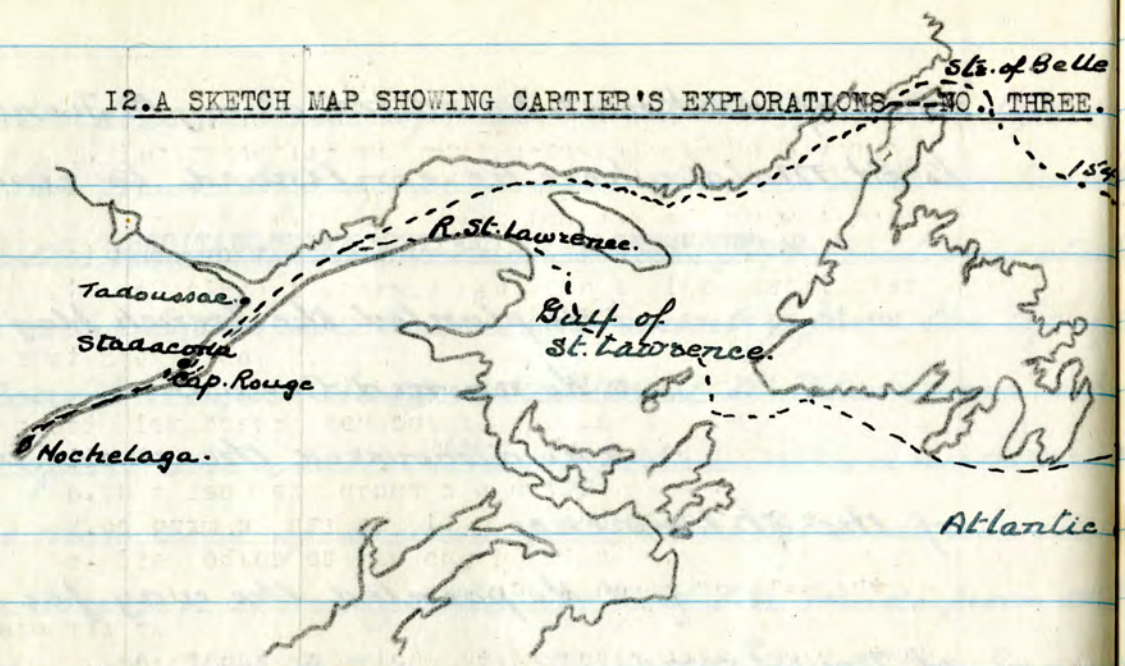
Explorers, Soldiers, Statesmen)



11. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING CARTIER'S EXPLORATIONS----No.TWO.



12. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING CARTIER'S EXPLORATIONS--NO. THREE.



8. ROBERVAL. 1542-3.

1. He was appointed viceroy of New France by the French King, and set sail to Canada with the colonists. He met Cartier returning to France, and failed in his effort to keep him in Canada. He spent the winter near Tadoussac, and in the spri returned to France.

9. MARQUIS DE LA ROCHE.

He was sent by the French King, to found colony. His boats were small, and were crowded wi convicts. Fifty men were landed on Sable Island, a the boats were driven off by storms. The men were rescued five years later, and the new French King became interested in their story. La Roche made tw unsuccessful attempts to establish colonies.

V. THE FOUNDER OF NEW FRANCE.

IO. CHAMPLAIN.

I. DATES.

1604, 1605, 1607, 1608, 1609, 1613, 1615-16, 1627, 1629, 1632, 1635.

2. HE WAS:-

A sailor of Britanny; an explorer; and the man sent out to decide on the location of a colony, by the French King.

4. HIS QUALIFICATIONS AS A LEADER.

He had served as a soldier, and as a sailor. He was an explorer, and had visited the west Indies and Mexico. He had crossed the Panama Canal zone and had suggested the building of the Canal. He had journeyed along the coast of North America from Acadia to New England.

5. HIS EARLY ASSOCIATIONS WITH COLONIZATION.

In 1604, De Monts, Pontgrave and Champlain tried to found a colony on an Island at the mouth of the St. Croix River. De Monts was the Governor, and was given a monopoly of the fur-trade. The surrounding coast, lakes, rivers, and the Bay of Fundy were explored. The winter was one of suffering. The weather was cold, fuel was scarce, and many died of scurvy. Relief from France arrived in the Spring.

In 1605, the colony was moved acr the Bay of Fundy, and was established at port R in the Annapolis valley of Nova Scotia. In 1607, t charter of De Monts was cancelled, and the colo was abandoned. (A number of colonists remained there, and five years later it was captured by th English.

Early in 1608, Champlain visited t harbour of Tadoussac, where Pontgrave was thin ing of starting a settlement.

6. THE CHOICE OF A SITE FOR THE SETTLEMENT.

Champlain sailed up the St. Lawre until he reached the "Narrows". There he searche for a place suitable for settlement, and found that the point at Quebec - socalled by the India because it was covered with nut trees. The site co easily be defended in time of war. This was one o the principal reasons for its choice.

7. THE FOUNDING OF QUEBEC----1608.

On the site of what is to-day, the market-place of the lower town of Quebec, Champl

axe-men fell to work. A clearing was made, and in it a habitation was erected. This consisted of a group of three log buildings surrounded by a strong wooden wall, surmounted by a gallery loop-holed for muskets. Around the wall, there was a trench or moat; some cannon were set on plat-forms and pointed toward the river; and a plot of land near-by was laid out as a garden.

During the establishment of the settlement, conspiracy was rife among the men. The ring-leader was executed. Scurvy caused the death of quite a number during the winter. In the spring, only eight men remained alive.

8. CHAMPLAIN'S AIMS.

1. Champlain aimed :-

1. to establish a trading post on the St. Lawrence River.

2. to found a colony.

3. to civilize and convert the Indians

4. to explore.

5. to hunt for a passage to china.

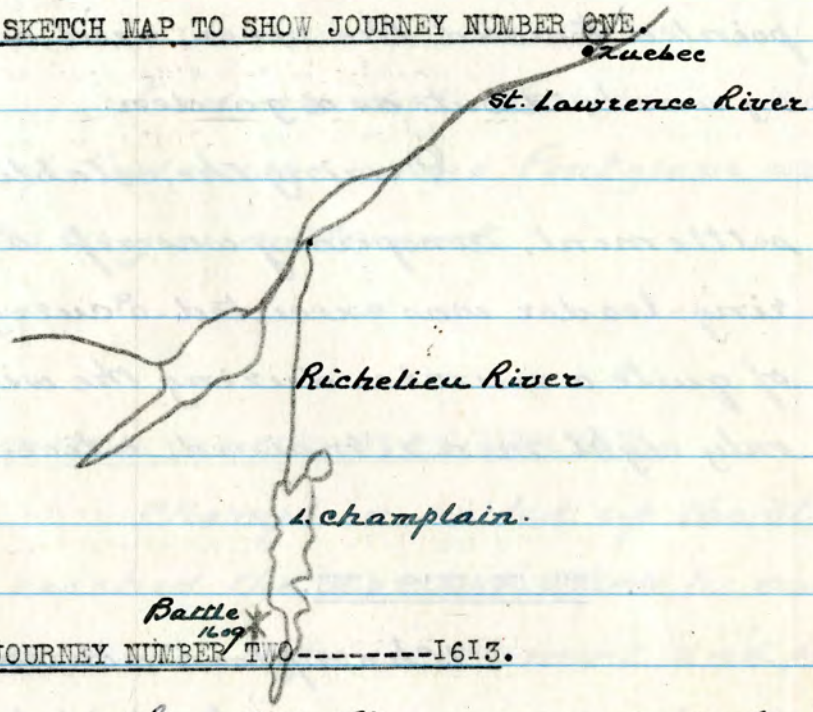
6. to found a strong New France.

THE EXPLORATIONS OF CHAMPLAIN.

9. JOURNEY NUMBER ONE-------1609.

In 1609, Champlain set out to explore. He sailed up the St. Lawrence and Richelieu Rivers to La Champlain. While there, he fought with the Algonquins against the Iroquois and won a victory. This antagoni the Iroquois against the French.

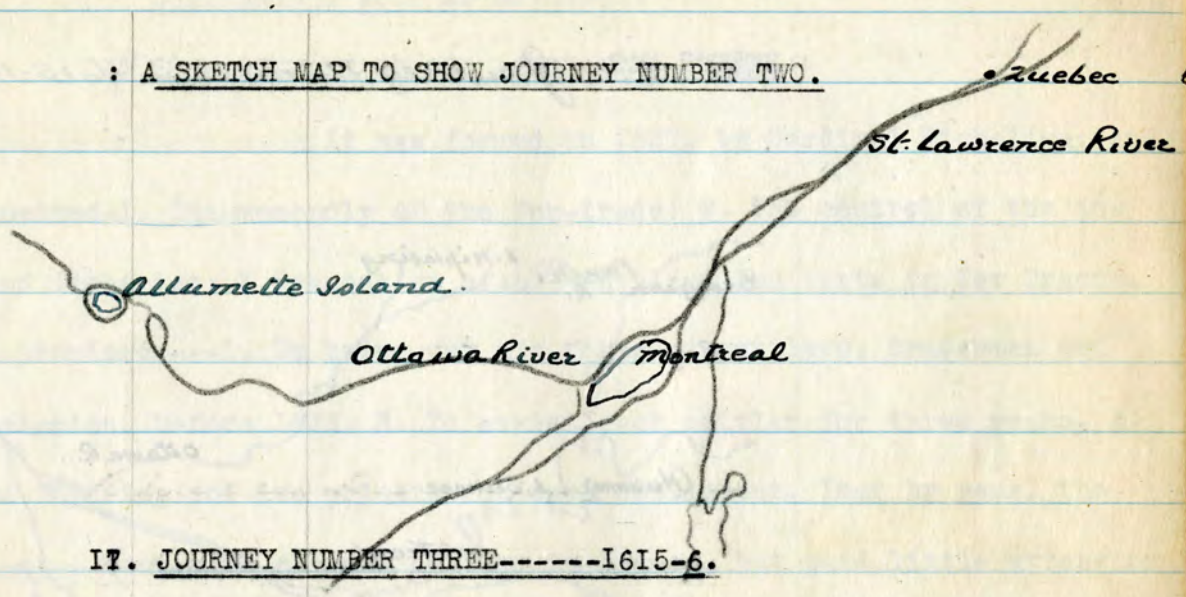
: A SKETCH MAP TO SHOW JOURNEY NUMBER ONE.



10. JOURNEY NUMBER TWO--------1613.

In 1613, Vignau, an impostor, persuad Champlain to search for a Northern Sea, by way of th Ottawa River. He journeyed up the St. Lawrence an Ottawa Rivers as far as Allumette Island. This journey was unsuccessful so they returned to Quebec.

: A SKETCH MAP TO SHOW JOURNEY NUMBER TWO.



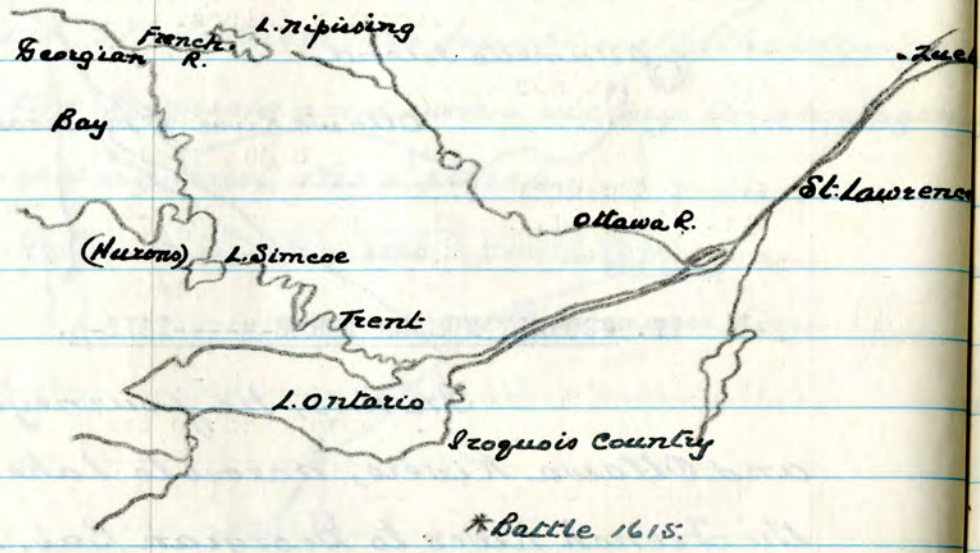
II. JOURNEY NUMBER THREE------1615-6.

In 1615, he journeyed up the St. Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers, across to Lake Nipissing, down the French River to Georgian Bay, southward along the coast to the Huron country. He was persuaded to go with the Hurons down the chain of lakes and rivers of the Trent valley to Lake Ontario near Kingston, and across to New York State where they made an unsuccessful attack against the Iroquois. He was severely wounded, and was carried back to the Huron village, where he remained throughout the winter. In the spring, he retraced his steps back to Quebec.

: A SKETCH MAP TO SHOW JOURNEY NUMBER THREE.

See Sketch Map next page.

SKETCH MAP. Journey Number 3. 1615-16.



12. THE RESULTS OF CHAMPLAIN'S WORK, (AS AN EXPLORER) and Ga

1. The first permanent settlement wa established in Canada at Quebec.

2. The Hurons and Algonquins became the allies of the French.

3. The Iroquois became the enemies of

4. He explored considerable in E. Canad

5. He increased the Fur-trade.

6. He was instrumental in having th Company of 100 Associates established to look after co

7. He surrendered Quebec to the Eng under Kirke - 1629.

8. He re-established Quebec - 1632-3

CHAMPLAIN'S WORK AS GOVERNOR.

13. THE COMPANY OF 100 ASSOCIATES. 1627.

It was formed in 1627, by Cardinal Richelieu; and received-1. The monopoly of the fur-trade; 2. The control of the inland fisheries; 3.Possession of all the land and forts in New France. It promised----1. To bring out six thousand settlers, tradesmen and mechanics, before 1643. 2. To assist each settler for three years. 3. and to bring out two priests for each settlement. Year by year, the Company sent rich cargoes of furs to France, but paid little attention to colonization. As a result, its charter was cancelled, in 1663, and ROYAL GOVERNMENT was introduced.

14. THE FALL OF QUEBEC---1629.

In 1627, war was declared between France and England, and involved the colonies in America. Quebec was besieged by the English 1628, and supply ships from France were destroyed. Quebec was surrendered to the English 1629, and Champlain was taken to England as a prisoner. The Eng. leader was Kirke.

16. THE RESTORATION OF QUEBEC, AND REBUILDING OF THE COLONY.

As Quebec was captured after peace was declared, it was returned to France 1632, and Champlain returned as governor. Quebec had been destroyed, but a larger Habitation was built. The church of Our Lady of the Recovery was built to commemorate the recovery of Quebec. New settlers were brought out.

13. THE SLOW GROWTH OF THE COLONYUP TO 1627.

France was more interested in the fur-trade than in Colonization, and settlers were discouraged by the accounts of cold and scurvy. Most of the settlers who did come, came as a result of Champlain's own efforts. In 1627, the number of settlers in New France was only 65 individual

11 17. LOUIS HEBERT.

Louis Hebert had been an apothecary in Paris, but had been with Champlain at Port Royal, where he had experimented with a garden. He had returned to France, but had come to Canada upon the insistent invitation of Champlain. He cleared a farm on Cape Diamond, near Quebec, and cast his lot with the new colony. He was the First Canadian Farmer.

12. 18. ETIENNE BRULE. 1608 – about 1640. (1595 – 1632)

He was an interpreter who had visited the Huron Country with Champlain. He was diplomatic, energetic, and an exceptional linguist. He explored in the Huron Country and from Lake Superior to Chesapeake Bay. He opened up the country for future settlement, and recorded information for future use.

Protestant traders.

English.

add last par here!

THE TEACHERS SHOULD HAVE THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION RE ETIENNE BRULE.

Etienne Brule came to Canada as a raw youth, under Champlain in 1608. He was given the difficult task of learning the Indian Languag and acting as interpreter, or liaison officer between the French at Quebec and the Indian Chiefs.

He realized that to win his way into the confidence of the Indians, he must adopt their customs. By so doing, however, he incurred the displeasure of Champlain, as well as the priests. He entered very fully into the life of the tent-dwellers, and even married a woman of the Hurons.

He fell into disfavour with Champlain also for refusing to spend much time at Quebec, and it also happened that they fell out, as so often occurs, over the question of money. Champlain failed to pay his interpreter any wages, although he held out some sort of a promise for the future.

Brule left the employ of Champlain, and went to work for the famous DeCaens,--Huguenot rival traders of Champlain's Company. From this company he received his compensation, and acted as agent with the Indians. Later, he worked for another company under the Kirkes. With this company, he had the same money arrangement as he had had with the previous company, and also had the same sort of material for trading.

rotestant traders.

English.

Champlain was infuriated with his one-time interpreter, and took every opportunity after that to heap abuse on the young man.

Brule was an outstanding explorer. He was the first white man to see the Great Lakes, and to travel around lakes Ontario, Erie, Huron and Superior. He was very well liked, was diplomatic, energetic, and a very very fine linguist.

His native resource stood him in good stead in one narrow escape from death, when he fell into the hands of the Iroquois in 1616. He was prepared for burning at the stake, and the fire had actually been started when he suddenly threatened his captors with the wrath of God. Immediately a thunderstorm broke loose, and the terrified Iroquois released him. He spent some time with this tribe while they nursed him back to health. Eventually they guided him back to the tribe of his adoption, the Hurons.

add last par. here

It was never definitely ascertained how he met his death, although it is known that he died when he was about 37 years old, on Penetanguishene Bay. One of the priests of the time wrote that he was barbarously and traitorously murdered. This priest--Father Brebeuf, visited the place three years after, and found that most of the villagers had left, as they feared reprisals.

It seems that much of the credit that has been given to Champlain for explorations in the area around Toronto should be attributed to Etienne Brule.

Brule had explored from Lake Huron to Lake Simcoe, and southward by way of the Humber to Lake Ontario in September 1615. He had

discovered the pathway of the Humber , and was the first white man to see lake Ontario.

It has been said that Brule came down to Quebec in 1628 with a party of Hurons, and, for some unexplained reason, deserted to the English and piloted Kirke's vessels up the St. Lawrence to Quebec.

THE TEACHER'S NOTE RE JEAN NICOLET.

JEAN NICOLET. 1598-1642.

He was born at Cherbourg, Normandy, and was brought to Canada by Champlain in 1618, to learn to be an interpreter. His ability to learn languages, and his adventurous disposition admirably fitted him for the task. He was sent to the Algonquins of Allumette Island, on the Ottawa, to learn their language. He remained with the tribe for two years; and afterwards spent eight or nine years with the Nipissing Indians, and gained so much of their confidence that he was made a member of the tribe and took part in their councils. He wrote a series of articles regarding this tribe and presented it to Father Le Jeune.

He returned to Quebec after an absence of fifteen years, in 1653. There he met Champlain who sent him once more to the west-1634. He reached Green Bay on Lake Michigan, and ascended the Fox River to the Wisconsin Portage. In 1635, he returned to Quebec, and was made Commissary of the fur trade, and interpreter at Three Rivers.

In 1637, he married the Grand-daughter of Louis Hebert, and some time later lost his life in the St. Lawrence River during a storm when his boat was swamped.

13 Jean Nicolet.

13. JEAN NICOLET.

In 1634, he crossed the waters of Lake Michigan and reached the watershed which divides the waters of the St. Lawrence from the valley of the Mississippi River.

A knowledge of the country was obtained and territory was added to the possessions of the French.

8. Maisonneuve:-

a. The dates:-

1641-2.

b. He was :-

1. A French Soldier.

2. The leader of the "Association for the conversion of the savages at Montreal.

3. The first Governor of Ville-Marie.

c. His work included:-

1. The establishment of Ville-Marie.

2. The defence of the colony.

d. The establishment of Ville Marie-

1. Montmagny the Governor of Quebec tried to persuade the association not to go to Montreal because the Island was in the path of the Iroquois who were enemies of the French.

2. Maisonneuve was determined to go, and went.

3. In 1642, they landed on Montreal Island which is at the confluence of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers.

4. They built:- a chapel, a simple habitation, and a fortification composed of a palisade of pointed stakes.

e. The defence of the colony.

1. The Iroquois, following some Algonquins, learned of the fort.

2. Maisonneuve sent to France for some watchdogs.

3. Pilotte scouted the surrounding woods and barked when the enemy was nearby.

4. The men in the fort urged attacking the Indians.

5. Maisonneuve finally led them out- but they were forced to retreat. M. shot the Indian chief. - They then fled.

f. The Results.

1. Ville-Marie became a centre of religious influence and the fur-trade

2. It (has) played a conspicuous part in the History of Canada.

8. Maisonneuve:-

a. The date:

1642-3.

b. Its men:-

1. A French soldier.

2. The leader of the "Associations for the conversion of the savages of Montreal."

3. The first Governor of Ville-Marie.

c. Its work included:-

1. The establishment of Ville-Marie.

2. The defence of the colony.

1. The establishment of Ville-Marie:-

1. Immediately the Governor of Quebec found it prudent the Associations had to go to Montreal because the Iroquois were in the pay of the Dutch who were enemies of the French.

2. Maisonneuve was determined to go, and went.

3. In 1642, they landed on Montreal Island which is at the confluence of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers.

4. They built:- a chapel, a simple habitation, and a fortification composed of a palisade of pointed stakes.

2. The defence of the colony:

1. The Iroquois, following were disappointed, learned of the

2. Maisonneuve went to France for more reinforcements.

3. Pilots accepted the adventuring work and landed when the enemy were ready.

4. The men in the fort urged attacking the Iroquois

5. Maisonneuve friendly led them out - but they were forced to retreat. He shot the Indian chief. They then fled.

d. The Result:

1. Ville-Marie became a centre of religious influence and the fur-trade.

2. It (was) played a conspicuous part in the history of Canada.

VI. THE WATCH-DOG OF VILLE-MARIE.

14. MAISONNEUVE.

I. THE DATES.

1641 - 1676

2. HE WAS:-

1. a French Soldier.

2. a High-minded and chivalrous gentleman who was selected as leader by a number of enthusiastic, priests, nuns, and laymen who had formed a foreign Missionary Society known as "The association for the conversion of Savages at Montreal".

3. The first Governor of Montreal (for 22 years)

3. HIS WORK INCLUDED:-

1. The establishment of Ville-Marie.

2. The defence of the Colony.

4. THE ESTABLISHMENT OF VILLE-MARIE.

In 1641, Maisonneuve arrived at Quebec with fifty men and four women. Montmagny, the Governor at Quebec, tried to persuade him to give up the idea, because the Island of Montreal, which was granted to the society for the establishment of a mission was in the path of the Iroquois raiders. Maisonneuve said, "I have not come here to deliberate, but to act. It is my duty and my honour to found a colony at Montreal, and I would go if every tree were an Iroquois." He refused to be turned aside, and Montmagny journeyed to Montreal

with the party.

In 1642, they landed on the Island of Montreal which is at the confluence of the Ottawa an the St. Lawrence. They selected as the site, the place wh Hochelaga had stood in 1535 when visited by Cart They built a chapel, simple habitations, and the fortifications composed of a palisade of pointed st and Ville-Marie was established.

5. THE DEFENCE OF THE COLONY.

The existence of the fort was revealed to Iroquois as they pursued some algonquins who ente it for refuge. There-after the site of Ville-Marie wa the scene of considerable fighting.

Maisonneuve sent to France for some watchdogs. One of these - Pilotte scouted through th surrounding woods - and barked when the enem was nearby. The men in the fort were anxious to g out to meet the Indians, but Maisonneuve refused until there was danger of his authority being questioned.

They sallied forth - 1644; met the Ind in the woods; fought until their ammunition wa about exhausted; and then retreated into the fort Maisonneuve followed to enable all to arrive in sa

He shot the leader of the Indians; they carried away the body of their chief, and fled.

On numerous occasions there-after the Governor had the task of defending the colony.

6. THE RESULTS.

Ville-Marie later became a centre of religious influence, and the fur-trade. It has played a conspicuous part in the history of Canada.

VII. THE HURON MISSIONS.

(15)

I. THE DATES. 1616 - 1626

1639 - 1650

2. THE NAMES OF THE MISSIONARIES.

(THE TEACHER'S NOTE.) The first Order to attempt to bring Christianity to the Indians was the RECOLLETS. Father le Caron made two unsuccessful attempts to convert the Hurons. The Order that worked with the Hurons after the Recollets was the JESUITS. The following names are those of the Jesuit Order. In twenty-five years, twenty-five priests were at work among the Hurons, and the Iroquois, and of these six were put to a cruel death.

1. Father Jerome Lalement.
2. Father Paul Raguneau.
3. Father Brébeuf.
4. Father Antoine Daniel.
5. (Father) Gabriel Lalement.

3. THE AIMS OF THE MISSIONARIES.

1. They aimed (1) to establish missions in the

Huron country; (2) to convert the Indians to christianity and as far as possible, (3) to prevent their contact with the fur-traders who hindered their work.
(4) 2. To establish a strong native church.

4. THE WAYS BY WHICH THEIR WORK WAS HINDERED.

1. The fur-traders sold fire-water to the Indians; cheated them in trade; and taught them the vices of Europe.

2. The medicine-men of the Indians opposed their work because they felt that their conversion would rob them.

3. The Iroquois destroyed the mission stations, massacred the Hurons and killed some of the priests.

5. THE CENTRES AT WHICH MISSION STATIONS WERE ESTABLISHED.

1. Ste marie - 1639. at the mouth of the Wye R. which flows into Georgian Bay about one mile E. of midland

2. St. Louis, about one mile to the East.

3. St. Joseph - (The Southernmost Indian Village)

4. St. Ignace.

5. There were twelve Mission Stations, and seven chapels (and several hundred Hurons converted.)

7. THE DESTRUCTION OF THE HURON MISSIONS.

In 1648, The Iroquois attacked St. Joseph and tortured Father Daniel. In 1649, they captured St. Louis and took Father Brebeuf and Father Lalement to

St. Ignace where they tortured them. One by one the stations were wiped out, and the Fathers in charge of Ste. Marie, set fire to the mission and sought refuge on one of the Christian Islands in Georgian Bay. During the winter many perished.

In 1650, thirteen priests, sixty Frenchmen and three hundred Hurons left the Huron country, and journeyed to Quebec. They established themselves on the Island of Orleans, and later moved to the mainland at Lorette. Others escaped to the neighborhood of the Detroit river and became known as "Wyndots."

3. THE RESULTS.

1. The hopes of the French re establishing a strong native church were shattered.

2. The Jesuit missions to the Indians were an apparent failure.

3. Some converts were made to the christian religion, and some died embracing the new religion.

4. The influence of the Jesuits extended to remote villages, and some tried to live christian lives.

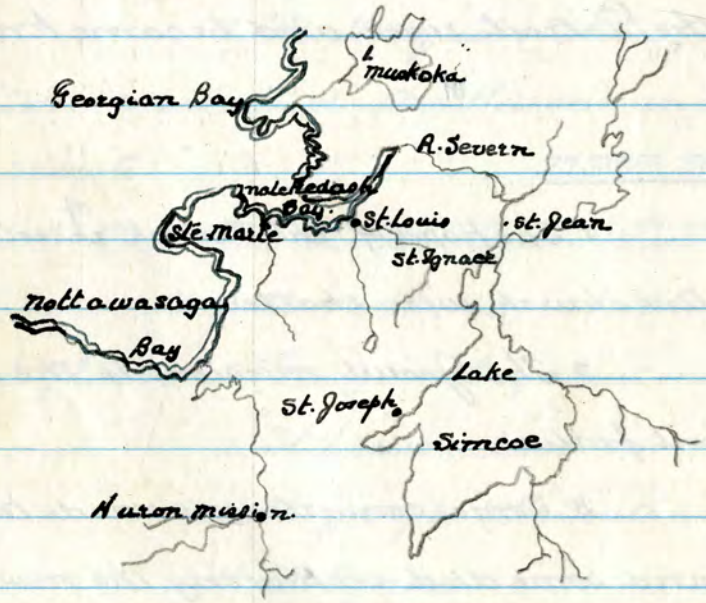
5. The Jesuits displayed examples of heroism, sacrifice, and endurance.

6. The Huron nation was destroyed.

FATHER JOGUES.

He was a Jesuit Missionary sent to convert the savage ~~Iroquois~~ Huron to Christianity. He was captured by a party of Iroquois warriors and was carried up the Richelieu River to the Iroquois settlement near Lake Champlain. He was kept a prisoner for a year, a at intervals in the meantime was inhumanly tortured. His hands were mutilated, his fingers were either cut off, or broken. He was later helped to escape by the Dutch. A few years later, he was sent as a messenger of peace to the Iroquois. When peace was concluded, he was allowed to return to Quebec, He promised the Indians that he would return, and left as a pledge, a locked box containing his priestly vestments and consecrated vessels. During his absence, a plague of grasshoppers, and Smallpox came upon the Indians. They blamed the locked box of the priest. When Father Jogues returned, he found the feeling of the Indians strongly against him. He was tortured once more, and one evening as he was going to a feast given by one of the chiefs, he was brutally murdered by an Iroquois who struck him down with a tomahawk.

6. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE LOCATIONS OF THE INDIAN MISSIONS



VIII. THE HEROES OF THE LONG SAULT.

I6. ADAM DOLLARD and the Sixteen Frenchmen.

I. THE DATE.

1660. (1634-1660)

2. THEY WERE:-

1. A number of young men of Montreal, who intercepted the Iroquois as they journeyed toward that settlement to destroy it.

2. There were sixteen Frenchmen under the leadership of Adam Dollard.

3. There were forty Huron and four Algonquin allies.

3. ADAM DOLLARD.

He was a young soldier officer of the Garrison of Montreal who organized, and led the Volunteers up the Ottawa River to waylay the Iroquois.

4. THE REASONS FOR THEIR EXPEDITION WERE:-

1. The fur-trade was interrupted by the Iroquois who robbed the Hurons who were on their way to Montreal. as they

2. The Iroquois planned to attack and wipe out the French settlements of Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec.

2. Settlers were afraid to settle in Montreal.

3. The colony was not prepared to withstand an attack.

5. THE PREPARATIONS MADE AT MONTREAL AND LONG SAULT.

1. They organized a group of volunteers.

2. They obtained permission from Maisonneuve to make the expedition.

3. They made their wills; and received the Sacrament.

3. They journeyed up the Ottawa River to the Long Sault Rapids, and found an abandoned Algonquin fort.

4. They strengthened the defences as well as they could; ~~and~~ welcomed some Hurons and Algonquin allies; and awaited the coming of the Iroq

6. THE LONG SAULT.

1. A series of rapids which interrupts navigation on the Ottawa River, about fifty miles north-west of Montreal.

2. The site of the heroic stand made by Adam Dollard and his volunteers.

7. THE SIEGE.

The advance (party guard) of the Iroquois was surprised; but at least one warrior escaped and ran back to advise the others. These soon arrived, and made a vigorous attack, but were repulsed. They then built a fort from which to carry on the siege. They sent for reinforcements, and in the meantime kept up a continuous fire on the French.

In the fort, the defenders lacked food and water. The Hurons deserted, and the men became exhausted. A hand made bomb thrown by Dollard fell back into the fort, and injured

the majority of them. This allowed the Iroquois time to break through - and to finish their destruction. The Heroes of the Long Sault perished.

8. THE RESULTS.

1. The Heroes of the Long Sault gave their lives to save others.

2. They displayed a patriotism and made the supreme sacrifice.

3. The Iroquois were checked, and discouraged. and so went home.

4. Montreal was saved.

9. THE SOURCE OF OUR INFORMATION.

1. Radisson, a furtrader, came down the Ottawa; saw the remains of the fort, and the charred remains of the defenders; and carried word to Montreal.

2. Some Hurons - escaped from the Iroquois, and also carried word to Montreal.

A REVIEW OF "THE HEROES OF THE LONG SAULT".

In 1660, a number of young men of Montreal, under the leadership of Adam Dollard, intercepted the Iroquois as they journeyed to destroy the colony at Montreal. Adam Dollard was a young soldier of the garrison of Montreal, and the leader of the sixteen volunteers.

They made the expedition because the fur-trade was being intercepted by the Iroquois who robbed the Hurons as they journeyed

to Montreal; the settlers were afraid to settle in Montreal; the colo was not prepared for an Indian Attack; and the Iroquois planned to attack and to wipe out the French Settlements along the St. Lawrence at Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec.

The Volunteers obtained permission from Maisonneuve, the Governor, to make the expedition; made their last wills, and receive the Sacrament. They journeyed up the St. Lawrence and the Ottawa Riv to the Long Sault Rapids, and there found an abandoned Algonquin for They strengthened the defences as well as possible, and welcomed som forty Huron and four Algonquin Allies.

The Long Sault is a series of rapids which interrupt ~~or interrupt~~ navigation on the Ottawa River, about fifty miles North-we of Montreal..and marks the site of the Heroic stand of "The Heroes o The Long Sault.

The advance troop of the Iroquois was surprised by the occupants of the Fort, but at least one warrior escaped and went bac to advise the others. These soon arrived, and made a vigorous attack, but were repulsed. They then built a fort from which to carry on the Siege, and sent for reinforcements. In the meantime they kept up a continuous fire on the French.

In the French Fort, the defenders lacked food and water. T Hurons deserted, and the French became exhausted. A hand-made bomb thrown by Dollard fell back into the fort, and injured the majority those who were there. This allowed the Iroquois time to break throug the palisade, and to complete their work of destruction. The Heroes of the Long Sault perished.

The chief results of the stand of the Heroes of the Long Sault were:-they gave their lives to save others; they displayed a patriotism, and made the supreme sacrifice; the Iroquois were checke and discouraged so that they returned home; and Montreal was saved.

The sourceof ourinformation is from the records of the vis made by Radisson as he was returning to Montreal with some furs; an from the Huron Indians who escaped from the Iroquois, and reported the affair to the settlers at Montreal.

De Tracy, a French army Officer, led some French regulars i 1666 against the villages of the Mohawks, one of the Iroquois tribe in eastern New York State. They burned and killed with the result th for twenty years peace prevailed on the St. Lawrence.

GENERAL NOTES REGARDING TALON, AND HIS ADMINISTRATION.

The first census taken in French Canada showed that there were 528 families in the colony, and represented the total population with the exception of the French Soldiers.....3215 people. Quebec had 2135 people. Three Rivers had 455 people;;;and Montreal had 625. There were 1250 children fifteen years of age and under. There were four people over 81 years of age.

Nearly all of the vocations were represented..there were 36 carpenters, 32 masons, 30 tailors, 22 sailors, 20 shoemakers, 18 [illegible], merchants, 16 gentlemen of means, and 3 teachers.

In 1673, the population was 6705...and in 1679--9400.

In 1667 there were 11,500 acres under cultivation.

During the administration of Talon, the colony grew more rapidly than at any other time.

The farms were laid out in the shape of triangles, with the narrow part at the front, The houses were built at the narrow ends, so that they were grouped together in a small village. This arrangement was good for the protection of the colonists, and for social intercourse. It avoided the loneliness which characterizes the usual life of the pioneers...It also afforded a defence against the savage enemies.

OUTLINE FOR..... CANADA UNDER ROYAL GOVERNMENT.

I. GOVERNMENT.

1. The rulers were appointed by the king.

1. Governor

1. Official head of the colony.
2. Represented the king.
3. Had charge of the Military affai
4. First Governor----de Tracy.

2. Bishop.

1. Had charge of Church affairs.
2. First Bishop------Laval.

3. Intendant.

1. In charge of the finance and the business of colony.
2. First Intendant---Talon.

2. This was a weak form of Government because.

1. There was disagreement between the Officials....The Bishop demanded the same honour as the governor

and opposed the sale of fire-water to the Indian
This was encouraged by Talon.

II THE PROGRESS OF THE COLONY.

1. French Soldiers were sent to Canada, and became settlers. They were encouraged by the King becau they could be kept in training, and would help i the defence of the Colony.
2. New colonists were sent out, and wives were sen for the bachelor Canadians.
3. Attractive villages and houses were built, and the farmers were helped to secure seed and live-stock.
4. New Industries were established--ship-building, fisheries,mining of coal near Quebec, breweries.

III.THE RELATIONS WITH THE INDIANS.

1. There were threatened attacks by the Iroquois-- Frustrated by Dollard's expedition--and there we continued attacks against outlying settlements. --Madeleine de Vercheres.
2. In 1666, the French attacked the Mahawks, and destroyed their crops and villages.
3. A peace pact was made with some of the Iroquois.

IV.

SEIGNORIAL TENURE.

1. This was the French way of holding land--The Seignors received the land from the King, and promised Military service, certain small dues, certain services such as the establishment of mills and acting as magistrates for the habitant
2. The habitants received the land from the seigno and promised in return,--military service, cert small dues, and a small payment if the land cha hands.
3. This was a good system while the country was n ~~but~~ as the seignors looked after the habitants. The government held the seignors to their dutie Later it did not work out so well, as the habit did not care to improve the land that they did own.

V. THE COURIER..DU..BOIS.

1. Laws were made against them as they traded free in brandy which was ruinous to the Indians, and as a result was dangerous to the settlers.
2. They found the life more exciting than farm lif and felt that all restraint was removed..and fortunes were to be made in furs.

CANADA UNDER ROYAL RULE.

Owing to the fact that the Company of One Hundred Associates did not keep the terms of their agreement, they lost their Charter in 1663, and Royal Government was introduced in Canada.

Royal Government was introduced in 1663 and continued until the French lost Canada in 1760.

During this period, the country was governed by a Governor, a Bishop, and an Intendant. They were assisted by a Supreme Council. They were appointed by the French King.

THE GOVERNOR...represented the King in the Colony, and was the official head of the Colony. The first Governor was--Marquis de Tracy.He had charge of Military affairs.

THE BISHOP.....looked after the affairs of the Church.The first Bishop was Laval.

THE INTENDANT..looked after the business, legal, and financial affairsof the Colony. The first Intendant was Talon.

This was a weak form of Government because there was disagreement between the Officers. The Bishop demanded the same honours as the Governor, and opposed the sale of Fire-water to the Indians. This was encouraged by Talon because it increased the revenue.

The progress of the Colony was rather slow up to 1663, because of the hostility of the Iroquois who had threatened to destroy the settlements. It was difficult to persuade the colonists to settle where the climate was so extreme. The Company of One Hundred Associates did not encourage settlement, as the clearing of the land would drive the fur-bearing animals farther from the settlements.

In 1665, Talon came out as the business manager of the colony French soldiers were encouraged to come to Canada by the French King. They became settlers, and kept in training so that they could help in the defence of the Colony. New colonists were sent out, and wives were sent out for the bachelor Canadians. Attractive houses were built, and villages were established. The farmers were helped by the Government to secure seed and livestock. New Industries were encouraged--shipbuilding,Fisheries, Mining,of coal near Quebec, and Brewing, Roads were improved, and the revenue was helped by well-planned taxes.

The relations with the Iroquois up to 1663 were not very satisfactory. They threatened to wipe out the French settlements of Montreal, Three Rivers, and Quebec. In 1660, Adam Dollard and his volunteers frustrated a threatened attack on Montreal, and saved the other settlements from destruction.

An attack was made by the French on the Mohawks. The Indians fled, a their crops and villages were burned. Later a peace pact was made wit some of the Iroquois. Even then there were continued attacks on some the outlying settlements....one of which was the settlément where Madeleine de Vercheres played such a conspicuous part.

The system of land tenure in Canada at that time was known as Seignorial Tenure--or Feudalism, which was the French way of hold land. The Seigneurs received the land from the King, and in return, promised Military service; certain small dues; and certain services the habitants---the establishment of mills, and acting as magistrate The habitants received the land from the Seigneurs,and in return, th promised Military Service; the payment of certain small dues; and a small payment if the land changed hands.

This system was good while the country was new because the Seigneurs had a fatherly care over the Habitants; and the Government held the Seigneurs to their duties. After the country was well estab ed,it did not work out so well because the Habitants did not care to improve the lands that they did not own.

The Courier-de-bois, or Runners of the woods were a source of trouble to the French. They found the life more exciting than farm life; they felt a lack of all restraint; and they felt that fortunes could be made in the fur-trade. They traded freely in brandy which wa ruinous to the Indians, and was dangerous to the settlers. Laws were passed against these free-traders.

LAVAL, BISHOP OF QUEBEC.

He was dedicated to the Church in his youth. He was deeply religious, energetic and enthusiastic, and was unyielding where duty was concerned, or the Honour of the Church was at stake. He was made the Bishop of Quebec, and had all of New France under his authority.

He tried to prevent the sale of fire-water to the Indians, and advanced the power of the Church in New France. He quarrel with the Governor (Frontenac) regarding the sale of brandy to the Indians, and the building of frontier forts. He also questioned the position of the new Intendant, and his right to preside in council.

The duties of the above officers were not well defined. Th led to disputes, but the colony was ruled much better than by the fu companies. Seignorial tenure was introduced, and a great effort was made to bring out colonists. The Customs of Paris was made the law o the land; but THE PEOPLE HAD NO VOICE IN THE GOVERNMENT OF THE COUN

IX. THE GREAT INTENDANT.

17. TALON.

I. THE DATES.

1663 appointed.

1625-1691 (In Canada 1668-1672) 7 years.

2. HE WAS.

He was born in Picardy, France. He held offices in Bordeaux and Lyons..and was Intendant of Hainant from 1661 to 1663.

1. Appointed Intendant of New France in 1663.
2. The first Intendant in French Canada under Royal Government.
3. An honest, and efficient administrator, who worked to build up the colony, and to protect the Colonists.
4. The business, legal, and financial controller of the colony.

3. THE CONDITIONS FOUND BY TALON UPON HIS ARRIVAL.

1. The population numbered about three thousand.
2. There were only three towns in French Canada.
3. There were no roads.
4. The highway of the colony was the St. Lawrence R.
5. New France had grown very slowly.

4. THE REASONS FOR THE SLOW GROWTH OF NEW FRANCE.

1. The hostility of the Iroquois.
2. The difficulty of persuading colonists to settle in the country because of the extremely cold winters.
3. The failure of the Company of One Hundred Associate to carry out its part of its agreement.

5. THE POLICIES OF TALON WERE.....

1. A Population Policy.
2. A Trade, Industrial, and Commercial Policy.
3. A Religious Policy.
4. An Exploration Policy.

6. HIS POPULATION POLICY.

Upon his arrival in French Canada, he ordered a census...the first ever taken in Canada. From this he readily saw the needs of the Colony. The aim of his population Policy was to increase the Inhabitants of New France. Immigration was encouraged, and disbanding French Regiments were induced to come to Canada. He encouraged early marriages, and was instrumental in having a number of young marriageable ladies sent out to become the wives of the male settlers. "THE KING'S GIFT" was offered as an inducement to the youths to marry before they were twenty. Bachelors were forbidden to engage in the fur-trade. Pensions were granted to parents who had ten or more children. During his administration, the population increased from three thousand to six thousand.

He helped the colonists by laying out attractive villages; building houses; and by helping them to receive seed and livestock.

7. HIS AGRICULTURAL, TRADE, INDUSTRIAL, and COMMERCIAL POLICY

He was instrumental in having horses, cattle and sheep imported, and encouraged the growing of hemp, the raising of sheep for wool; and insisted that the women and girls should learn to spin and to weave. Numerous industries were established...tanning, ship-building, fishing, the making of Potash and Tar, the mining of coal near Quebec. Trade was developed with the French West Indies. Roads were built and improved. He encouraged the sale of fire-water to the Indians because he feared that the fur trade would be deflected to the English..and because more furs could be obtained by the use of the Fire-water.

8. HIS RELIGIOUS POLICY.

He encouraged the work of the Jesuit Missionaries and tried to improve the Education of the Colonists.

9. HIS EXPLORATION POLICY.

He sent a number of explorers into the interior of the country, and thus added to the knowledge of the Geography of North America.

(a) La Salle-1671-reached the Illinois country west of Lake Michigan...and later explored the Mississippi River to its mouth.
(b) Father Albanel--A Jesuit Missionary--1671-2--made the first overland journey from the St. Lawrence to Hudson Bay.
(c) Louis Joliet and Father Marquette--1672--reached the water of the Mississippi River.

10. THE RESULTS.

1. Talon increased the Population of New France.
2. He established trade and Industries.
3. He encouraged the Missionaries and Education.
4. Territory was added to that claimed by France.
5. Upon his return to France, Canada had a strong foundation-----and he was ennobled, and finally became the secretary to the King's Cabinet in France.

In 1668, he returned to France, but came back to Canada in 1670. In 1672, he returned to France, and for several years held his positions in the French Cabinet.

AN OUTLINE REGARDING LA SALLE.

I. THE DATES.

1. 1667- 1687.

2. HE WAS.

1. A French explorer who came to Canada 1667.
2. He was twenty-three years of age.
3. The holder of a large grant of land on the St. Lawrence, near Montreal..later known as Lachine.
4. A cold, reserved man, though courageous, honourable and devout.
5. A poor leader of men.

3. HIS AIM.

1. To discover a western way to China; and as a result, his seigneury was nicknamed Lachine.
2. To explore.

4. HIS FIRST VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY 1669.

1. He followed Lake Ontario to Niagara.
2. He explored the Ohio River, and found that it was not a way to the far East.
3. He was deserted by his men.
4. He returned to Montreal.

5. HIS VISIT TO FRANCE.

1. He was made a noble by the King.
2. He was given permission to explore the west, and a monopoly of the trade in buffalo hides.

6. HIS RETURN TO CANADA.

1. He was given command at Fort Frontenac, which was a good place for Fur-trade.
2. He preferred exploration and adventure.

7. HIS SECOND JOURNEY OF DISCOVERY 1679.

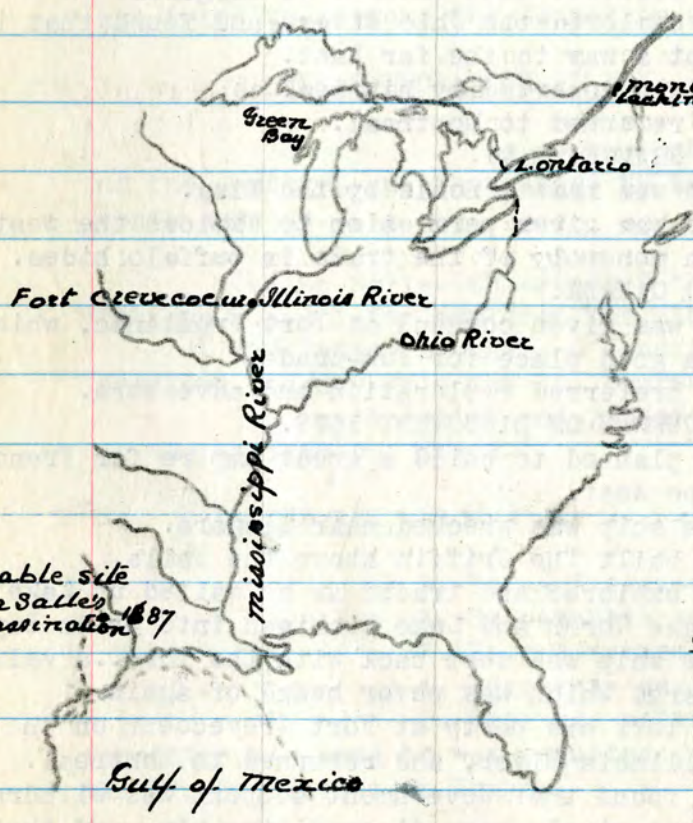
1. He planned to build a great empire for France in the west.
2. His ship was wrecked near Niagara.
3. He built The Griffin above the Falls.
4. He explored and traded as he sailed up Lake Erie, Lake Huron and Lake Michigan into Green Bay.
5. The ship was sent back with the furs..a valuable cargo which was never heard of again.
6. He left his party at Fort Crevecoeur on the Illinois River, and returned to Montreal.
7. He found that Government support was withdrawn, that rivals were discrediting him, and that some of his discontented followers were planning to murder him.

8. HIS THIRD VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY.1681-2.

1. The route taken was by way of Lake Ontario, Lake Simcoe, Georgian Bay and Lake Huron, Lake Michi The Illinois River and the Mississippi River.
2. He found that party that had been left behind d the previous journey, and traced the River to its mouth in the Gulf of Mexico.
3. He claimed the land for the King of France, and named it Louisiana.

9. THE ATTEMPTS TO FOUND A COLONY.

1. He laboured for five years, but accomplished ve little.
2. He was murdered by his followers 1687.



JOURNEY NUMBER ONE.

1. Lachine.
2. Lake Ontario.
3. Niagara.
4. Ohio River.

JOURNEY NUMBER TWO.

1. Montreal.
2. Lake Ontario.
3. Niagara.
4. Lake Erie.
5. Detroit River.
6. Lake St. Clair.
7. River St. Clair.
8. Lake Huron.
9. Lake Michigan.
10. Green Bay.
11. Illinois River.
12. Back to Montreal.

Journey Number Three.

1. Lake Ontario.
2. Lake Simcoe.
3. Lake Huron and Georgi Lake Michigan.
5. Illinois River.
6. Mississippi River.
7. Back to Canada, and over to France.

X. THE SEIGNIOR OF CHINA.

18. LA SALLE.

I THE DATES.

1643--1687.

2. HE WAS.

1. A French explorer who had been born at Rouen, in France. He spent some years with the Jesuits, but left them and sailed to Canada in the spring of 1666.

2. A man of vision who set before himself an ambition

3. A man who was serious in all things, incapable of the lighter pleasures, finding no joy but in the pursuit of great designs, too shy for society and too reserved for popularity, often unsympathetic, schooled to universal mistrust, stern to his followers and pitiless to himself, bearing the brunt of every hardship and every danger, demanding of others an equal constancy, heeding no counsel but his own, attempting the impossible and grasping at that which was too vast to hold. He contained in his own complex nature the chief springs of his triumphs, his failures, and his death.

4. A brother of a Priest at Montreal, who secured the Seignory of Lachine for him.

3. HIS AIM WAS.

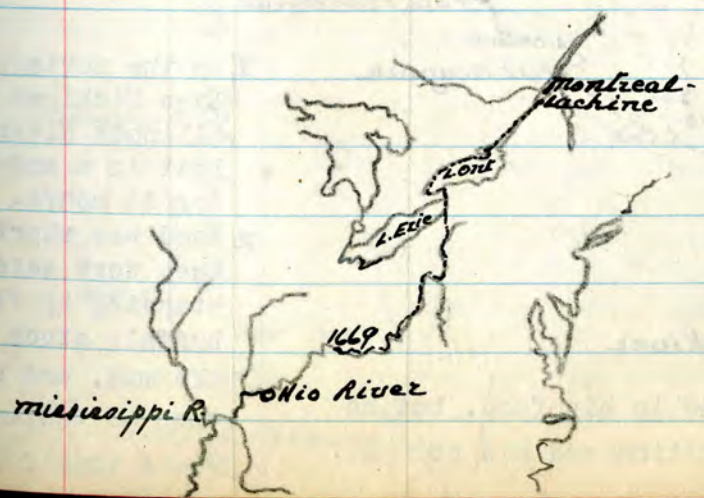
1. To discover the western passage to China.

4. JOURNEY NUMBER ONE-1669.

He set out from Lachine with two missionaries who were journeying to the west to establish mission stations, and met Jolliet at the western end of Lake Ontario. Dollier de Casson and Galinee, the two missionaries decided to make their way to the upp upper lakes, while La Salle turned south to explore the Ohio River. He continued down this river for some distance, and was finally deserted by his men, and had to return to Montreal. He found that this river did not lead to the far east..as expected.

He then returned to France in 1674, and secured the seigniory of Fort Frontenac..where Kingston now stands. He remain- there until 1678, and prepared for further explorations.

5. JOURNEY NUMBER ONE--1669. SKETCH MAP.



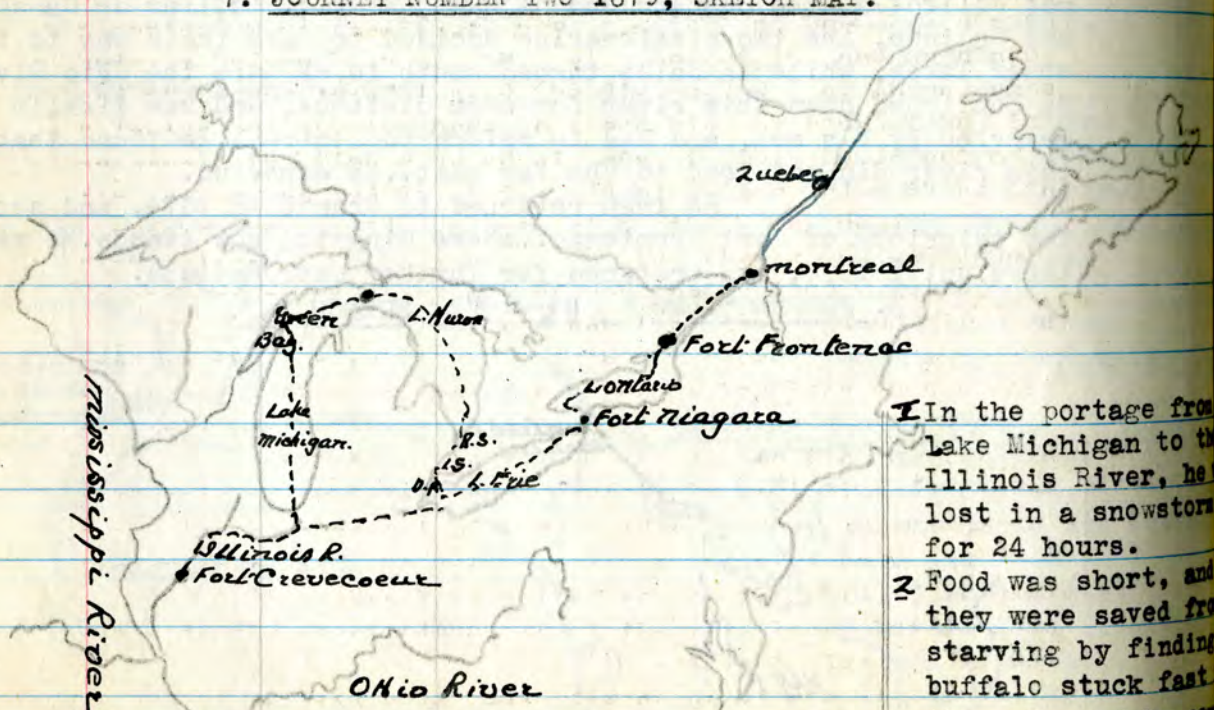
6. JOURNEY NUMBER TWO 1679.

While in France, La Salle secured from the King, special trading rights in the regions of the Ohio, The Illinois, and the Mississippi. He set out from Fort Frontenac in 1679, and sailed up Lake Ontario with his faithful lieutenant, Henri de Tonti, and spent the winter at the trading post on the Niagara which had been established in 1678. He launched the GRIFFIN, the first sailing vessel on the upper lakes. This vessel was to carry merchandise to the western country, and to bring back furs. He sailed up Lake Erie, Detroit River, Lake St. Clair, St. Clair River, Lake Huron, and into Lake Michigan to Green Bay. A large cargo of furs was loaded into the Griffin, and it was sent back with its rich cargo.

La Salle proceeded down Lake Michigan, across and down the Illinois, on the bank of which he established Fort Crevecoeur or HEART BREAK, because it was there that he learned of the loss of the Griffin. He left Tonti in charge, and walked across country to Montreal for supplies...a distance of over 1000 miles. Time required was 65 days. Upon his arrival at Fort Frontenac, he found that his creditors had seized his property, and the supplies that had been sent from France had been lost.

He learned that the men left at Fort Crevacoeur had torn down the fort, destroyed the supplies, and had deserted.

7. JOURNEY NUMBER TWO 1679, SKETCH MAP.



1 In the portage from Lake Michigan to the Illinois River, he was lost in a snowstorm for 24 hours.

2 Food was short, and they were saved from starving by finding a buffalo stuck fast in the mud, and by coming upon an Indian Village where some food was

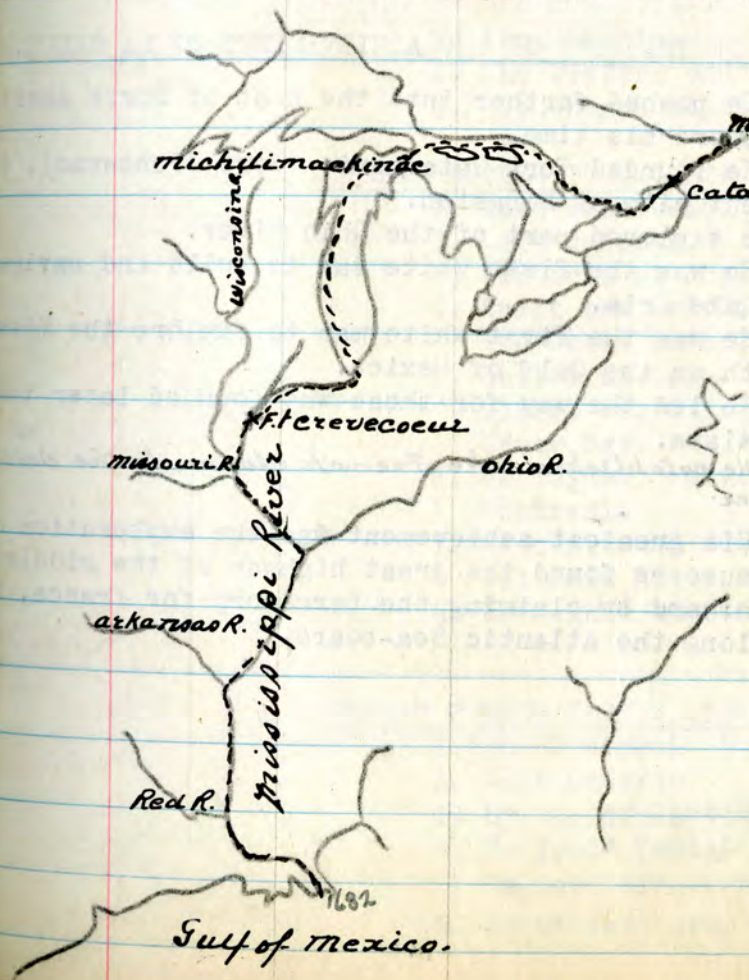
3. Poison was placed in his food, but he discovered it in time and did not eat.

8. JOURNEY NUMBER THREE 1681-2.

On the third journey, he took a shorter route, by going by way of Lake Simcoe and Georgian Bay. He found his lieutenant Tonti at Michilimackinac. They journeyedsouthward by way of the Illinois River, and on to the Mississippi, down which they travelled. They reached the mouth of the river in April 1682. At the mouth of the river La Salle set up a cross bearing the emblem of France, and named the country in honour of the French King...Louisiana. The sovereignty of Louis of France was proclaimed over the entire Mississippi basin.

Upon his return to Canada, he found that his enemies had been active. Frontenac was no longer the Governor, and his successor had thrown in his lot with the rival traders. La Salle found that his trading privileges were cancelled, his stores were looted, and most of his property was sold. He journeyed to France to get redress. He found that he was still favoured by the King, and received a commission to establish a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi.

9. JOURNEY NUMBER THREE 1681-2. SKETCH MAP.

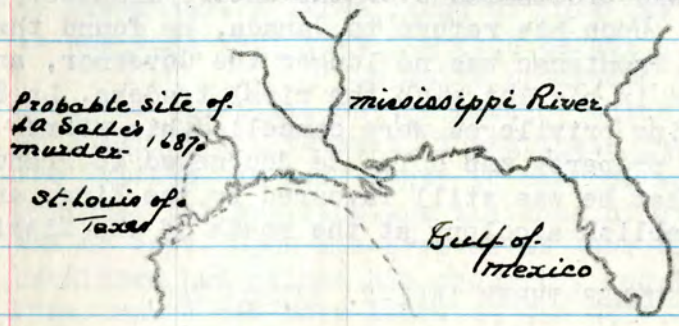


ON this journey down the River Mississippi, no difficulties barred the way. They had an abundance of food. The Indians were friendly, and they were the first white men to reach the mouth of the Great River.

10. JOURNEY NUMBER FOUR--1684.

He set sail from France with four vessels. After several weeks the expedition landed in what is now the State of Tex about three hundred miles west of the mouth of the Mississippi. The men were unfaithful to their leader, and plotted against his life. F some time he searched for the river. He was shot by one of his men.

11. JOURNEY NUMBER FOUR--1684. SKETCH MAP.



12. A SUMMARY OF THE WORK OR THE ACHIEVEMENTS OF LA SALLE.

1. He pushed farther into the heat of North America than any white man before his time.

2. He founded Fort Cataraqui--(Fort Frontenac), on the site of the present city of Kingston.

3. He explored part of the Ohio River.

4. He was the first white man to build and navigat a sailing vessel on Lake Erie.

5. He was the first white man to explore the Missi ippi River to its mouth on the Gulf of Mexico.

6. He led the way for those who founded later the French Colony of Louisiana.

7. He established the French claim to the valley of the Mississippi River.

His greatest achievement was the exploration of the Mississippi, because he found the great highway of the middle west of North America; and by claiming the territory for France, he hemmed the English along the Atlantic Sea-board.

AN OUTLINE REGARDINGLA SALLE.

LA SALLE.

1. HE WAS.

1. A French Explorer,,who came to Canada 1666.-1667.
2.A man of vision who set before himself an Ambition
3. A man who was serious in all things; shy, reserve unsympathetic, stern, and determined.

2. HIS AIM.

1. He aimed to discover the western passage to China

3. The dates of his explorations were..

1. 1669.
2.1679.
3.1681-2.
44. 1684.

4.JOURNEY NUMBER ONE...1669.

1. From Lachine.
2. The western end of Lake Ontario.
3. Southward to the Ohio River.

5. JOURNEY NUMBER TWO...1679.

1. Fort Frontenac.
2. Lake Ontario.
3. Wintered at Post established on the Niagara.
4. Built the Griffin..The first sailing vessel on the Great Lakes..upper.
5. Sailed up Lake Erie, Detroit River, Lake St. Clair, St. Clir River, Lake Huron, Lake Michigan, Green Bay.
6. He loaded the vessel with furs..it sailed for Montreal.
7. He continued down Lake Michigan,portaged to the Illinois River, down this river to Fort Crevecoeur
8. He walked across country to Montreal..65 days.

6. JOURNEY NUMBER THREE...1681-2.

1.From Montreal.
2. Lake Ontario.
3. By way of Lake Simcoe to Georgian Bay.
4. He found Tonti, at Michilimacinack.
5. He went down Lake Michigan.
6. He crossed over to the Illinois River.

7. He journeyed southward to the Mississippi River.
8. He went down the Mississippi River to its mouth in the Gulf od Mexico...1682.
9. He claimed the land for the King of France.. and named it Louisiana.
10. He returned to Canada..then over to France.

7. JOURNEY NUMBER FOUR..1684.

1. Hesailed from France to establish a colony at mouth of the Mississippi River.
2. He missed it, and landed in Texas.
3. He was murdered in 1687.

8. Results.

1. He pushed farther into the heart of N.A. than any other white man.
2. He founded Fort Frontenac.
3. He explored part of the Ohio River.
4. He was the first white man to build and navigate a sailing vessel on the Upper Lakes.
5. He was the first white man to explore the Mississippi River to its mouth in the Gulf of Mexico.
6. He led the way for others.
7. He hemmed the English in the Eastern section of the present U. S. A. along the Atlantic Sea-board.

v. The founder of New France.

Champlain.

a. Dates - 1604, 1605, 6, 7, 8, 9, 13, 15-16, 27, 29, 32, 35.

b. He was.

1. a sailor of Britanny.

2. an explorer

3. the man sent out by the French King to choose a site for the settlement in Canada.

c. His qualifications as a leader.

1. He had served as a soldier and a sailor.

2. He was an explorer, and had visited the W. Indies & Mexico (He had crossed the Panama Canal Zone, and suggested the building of the Panama Canal) He had journeyed along the coast of N. America from Acadia to New England).

d. His early associations with Colonization.

1. 1604 - Island - mouth of St. Croix - De Monts, Pontgrave.

2. 1605 - colony moved to Port Royal - Nova Scotia.

3. 1607 - Charter of De Monts was cancelled.

4. 1608 - He visited the harbour of Tadoussac - and continued up the river in search of a suitable site for a settlement.

e. The choice of a site for the settlement.

1. The Narrows on the St. Lawrence.

2. Chosen because it would be easily defended in time of war.

f. The founding of Quebec - 1608

1. On site of present market place of Quebec.

2. a clearing was made

3. a Habitation was erected.

Habitation was three log buildings, surrounded by a strong wooden wall. This was surmounted by a gallery that was loop-holed for muskets. Around the wall, there was a trench or moat. Some canons were set on platforms and pointed toward the river. (During the establishment, conspiracy led to the execution of the ring-leader. Scurvy caused the death of many)

G. Champlain's aims -

1. To establish a trading post on the St. Lawrence.
2. To found a colony.
3. To civilize and convert the natives.
4. To explore
5. To hunt for a passage to china
6. To found a strong new France.

H. The explorations of Champlain.

a. Journey number 1. 1609.

1. From Quebec up the St. Lawrence.
2. Up the Richelieu to lake Champlain.
3. He fought with the Algonquins against the Iroquois.
4. The victory antagonized the Iroquois against the French.

b. Journey number 2 - 1613

1. From Quebec - up the St. Lawrence with Vignau,
2. Up the Ottawa to Allumette Island.
3. Vignau was an imposter - no northern sea found.
4. The journey was unsuccessful so they returned to Quebec.

c. Journey number 3 1615-16.

1. From Quebec up the St Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers
2. Across to Lake Nipissing - down the French River - southward along Georgian Bay coast to Huron country.
3. He went with the Hurons through the Trent Valley -
4. Across Lake Ontario near Kingston - into New York State.
5. An unsuccessful attack was made against Iroquois.
6. He returned to Huron County and wintered there.
7. In the Spring, he returned to Quebec.

I. The results of Champlain's work as an explorer, colonizer - Governor.

1. The first permanent settlement was established in Canada at Quebec.
2. The Hurons and Algonquins became the allies of the French.
3. The Iroquois became the enemies of the French
4. He explored considerable of Eastern Canada.
5. He increased the fur trade.
6. He was instrumental in having the Co. of 100 Associates established to look after the colonization.
7. He surrendered Quebec to the English under Kirke 1629.
8. He reestablished Quebec 1632-3.

Jacques Cartier -

1 Dates -

2 He was -

3 The no of Voyages.

4 The dates of each V.

5 The reasons for his explorations

1. To add to the possessions of France.
2. To carry on the fur-trade with the Indians.
3. To convert the Indians to Christianity.

6. He visited -

1
- a. The Str. of Belle Isle.
- b. Gulf of St. Lawrence
- c. Prince Edward Island
- d. Gaspe Basin

2
- a. Gulf of St. Lawrence
- b. St. Lawrence River
- c. Stadacona (Donnacona.)
- d. Hochelaga (Montreal)

3.
- a. St Lawrence River
- b. Montreal
- c. wintered near Quebec.
- d. Newfoundland (Roberval)

7. Results.

Mr. Judd,

I haven't received the supplies I ordered for September. If they have arrived, will you please send them down soon.

M. Barlow.

MARQUETTE AND JOLIET. OR JOLIET AND MARQUETTE.

MARQUETTE.

He was a missionary who arrived in Canada 1666. He was sent to the Upper Lakes in 1668, and was one of the founders of the mission of Sault Ste Marie. He spent the winter of 1669 on the south shore of Lake Superior with the Hurons, and the Ottawas. In 1671, he founded the mission at Michilimacinack for the Hurons.

He was agifted linguist, and mastered six Indian languages. He heard of the great river flowing to the south, and wanted to explore it.

His opportunity came in 1673, when he was chosen by Talon, to accompany Louis Joliet. They descended the river to the mouth of the Arkansas, and satisfied themselves that it did not flow into the Gulf of California, nor into the Atlantic.

They returned to Green Bay, and Marquette remained at the mission until 1675.He died as he was being taken to Quebec.

Joliet.

He was born at Quebec, and was educated by the Jesuits. He became associated with the fur-trade, and was sent by Talon to discover the copper mines on Lake Superior. As he was returning, he met La Salle, 1669, near the present site of the city of Hamilton.

In 1673, he set out with Jacques Marquette to discover the Mississippi River. They left Michilimacinack, and coasted the north shore of Lake Michigan, to the foot of Green Bay, ascended the Fox River, and portaged to the Wisconsin which they descended to the Mississippi River.

They descended this river, passing the mouths of the Illinois, Missouri, Ohio, and Arkansas. They turned back because they feared the hostile Indians, and the Spaniards. They returned to Lake Michigan by way of the Illinois.

Joliet lost the records of his journey at the foot of the Lachine rapids, but he remembered sufficient of the information to be able to give a very satisfactory report to his superiors.

FATHER ALBANEL.

He came to America from France 1649, and was a Jesuit Missionary. He made expeditions from Quebec to the Hudson Bay by way of the Saguenay in 1671-2, and again in 1674.

He met Radisson at the Hudson's Bay Company's post at the mouth of the Rupert River.

He was carried to England as a prisoner, but returned to Canada in 1675, and was sent to the Western missions.

He died at Sault Ste Marie.

XI. THE GREAT ONONTIO.

19. FRONTENAC.

I. THE DATES.

1672-1682 and 1689-1698.

2. HE WAS...

1. A French soldier who became a general at the ag of 27, and who had fought against the Turks.

2. A man who was unhappily married, and was glad o the appointment that took him away from the French Court, where his wife remained. 3. A man who had fine manners, a keen intellect, a hot and jealous temper, a lover of display and ceremony, He was boas ful and extravagant, courageous, determined, ambitious; and rather hard to work with, in his official capacity.

3. HIS AIM WAS:

1. To make Canada a great French Empire of which h was to be the ruler.

4. HIS APPOINTMENT.

1. He was made Governor of Canada 1672 by Louis XI the most powerful King in Europe, who was eager to gain power in the new land. He received his instructions directly from the King, and was to build up a great French Empire in America. (He was the first French Governor of New France under Royal Government).

5. HIS WORK INCLUDED.

1. The calling together of the first Canadian Par ment, to which he called the leading people of the Colony..STATES GE ERAL. This mave met with opposition as Talon, the Intendant refused attend. The King, who wished to be the sole ruler objected, and the idea of establishing a Parliament was given up.

2. The attempt to extend the territory of New Fra He travelled westward to Lake Ontario, and had Fort Frontenac built serve as a trading post, and to help in keeping the Indians in order He encouraged exploration, and assisted La Salle, Marquette and Joli in their work. Forts and trading posts were built at Niagara, Detroi Sault Ste Marie, and Michilimackinac, and the Colony of Louisiana wa established at the mouth of the Mississippi River.

3. The defence of the Colony.

4. The relations with the Indians. He awed them wi pomp and ceremony, and treated them like children, by praising them, by giving them gifts, and by punishing any attempts that were made against the French. He was able to keep peace with the Iroquois beca they feared and trusted him. (The Iroquois traded with the English colonists because they were better paid for their furs, and the Engl rum was cheaper than French Brandy.)

6. HIS QUARRELS WITH HIS COLLEAGUES.

1. He quarrelled with Bishop Laval regarding the s of firewater to the Indians. Frontenac approved this, and Laval fo it under pain of excommunication. This was settled by the King who ruled that it was a matter of State, not Church.

2. He quarrelled with Perrot, the Governor of Montreal, regarding his power to grant licenses for fur-trading. Perrot was arrested, and was sent to prison; and fur-traders who had licenses that were issued by him were hanged.

3. He quarrelled with the Intendant..Duchesneau.. regarding his right to preside over the Superior Council, which was composed of the Intendant, Bishop, Governor, and seven others of less authority. The Council was created to carry out the matters of the Government. The King ruled that the Intendant was to preside, but Frontenac refused to allow this, with the result that the quarrel continued for five years, and finally ended in the recall of both Frontenac and Duchesneau.....1682.

7. THE EVENTS DURING FRONTENAC'S ABSENCE.

1.La Barre was made the Governor of New France. He lacked courage and dignity, and as a result failed in his dealings with the Indians, who refused to attend his councils. He even went to the Indians and tried to threaten them, but all of his threats and bluster were useless. He was recalled.

2. De Denonville was then made Governor. He was overconfident and treacherous. He seized a number of friendly Iroquois and sent them to the King of France who wanted Galley-slaves. He wanted to win favour from the King, and to prove that he was a success He made an attack on two friendly villages: destroyed the villages, and captured a number of young braves.

The Indians, as a result, rose against the French, and massacred the people at Lachine, and threatened the very existence of the whole colony.The whole colony was dismayed. Denonville was frightened. The French withdrew from the frontier forts. Niagara was abandoned, and Fort Frontenac was abandoned and destroyed. Denonville was ~~destroy~~ recalled.

8. FRONTENAC'S SECOND TERM AS GOVERNOR....1689-1698.

1. HIS RETURN.

The Jesuits disliked his coming because he upheld the power of the State against that of the Church; while many of the colonists welcome him.

2. HIS DEALINGS WITH THE IROQUOIS.

He brought back the survivors of the galley slaves, and sent messengers of peace to the Iroquois, but they refused to accept his messages. A great council was held at Montreal which was attended by the Hurons, Algonquins, and the French.The Iroquois refused to attend, and as a result, war was declared against them. This dragged on for years with massacres and reprisals; with captures and tortures on both sides.

In 1696, he led an army of two thousand French against the Onandagas. They burned their villages and fled.

3. His DEALINGS WITH THE ENGLISH.

England and France were at war in Europe, and Frontenac received instructions to destroy the English colonies. Raiding expeditions were sent against the English because he felt th they were urging the Indians against the French; and that a Victory over the English was easier to gain than a victory over the Indians, and that such would restore French Prestige. The parties were compo of French and Indians; and they surprised, burned and murdered.

The English under Sir William Phipps str back. They captured Port Royal, and laid siege to Quebec. They deman a surrender, but Frontenac refused. The siege was lifted with the co of winter, and Quebec was saved....1691.

THE RESULTS.

1. Frontenac's Skill saved New France.
2. The boundaries of French Canada were extended t Hudson Bay on the North; west to the Detroit River; and south to New Orleans.

A SUMMARY OF THE REGIME OF FRONTENAC.

I. THE DATES.

1672-1682. and 1689-1698.

2. HE WAS.

1.The first French Governor of French Canada under Royal Government.

2. Arrogant and domineering, hot tempered, jealous, boastful and extravagant, courageous, determined, and ambitious.

3. HIS AIM WAS:

I. To make Canada a great French Empire of which he was to be the ruler.

4.His WORK INCLUDED:

I. The calling together of the First Canadian Parl iament, which was patterned after the Estates General in France.

2. The encouragement of Exploration..

La Salle.

Marquette and Joliet.

3.The building of Forts and trading posts.

Fort Frontenac. Fort Saull Ste marie

Fort Niagara. Fort Michilimacki

Fort Detroit

4. The defence of the Colony.
5. The handling of the Indians.
He awed them, praised them, gave them gifts, punished them, and in general kept peace with them.

5. THE QUARRELS WITH HIS COLLEAGUES.

I. He quarrelled with Laval (Bishop) regarding the sale of of firewater.

2. He quarrelled with Perrot, the Governor of Montreal, regarding the granting of licenses for fur trading.

3. He quarrelled with Duchesneauu (Intendant) regarding his right to preside over the Superior Council.

4. The result of these quarrels was his recall to France.

6. THE EVENTS DURING HIS ABSENCE.

I. La Barre failed in his dealings with the Indians

2. Denonville seized a number of Iroquois and sent them to France as galley slaves.

3. This resulted in the Massacre of Lachine.

7. FRONTENAC'S SECOND TERM AS GOVERNOR. 1689-1698

I. His return was disliked by the Jesuits.

2. His dealings with the Iroquois were mixed with massacres, captures, tortures, on both sides.

3. His dealings with the Englishwere marked by victorious raiding parties; and the successful defence of Quebec 1691. when it was attacked by Phipps.
The attacks against the English were made at,-Schenectady, New Hampshire at Salmon Falls, and at Fort Loyal in Maine.

8. THE RESULTS.

I. His skill saved New France.

2. The territory of French Canada was extended.
The boundaries of French Canada were,-
On The North---Hudson Bay.
On The West----The Detroit River.
On The South---New Orleans.

XI#. GENERAL REVIEW OF FRENTENAC.

The greatest French Governor of Canada was Frontenac. He first came to Canada as Governor in 1672. He was sent out by the Fre King.

His great fault as Governor was that he was arrogant and domineering.He quarrelled with one element after another in the colo but he had a redeeming feature in that he was able to control the Indians.

His first term as Governor was from 1672 to 1682, a term o ten years. He was recalled to France because of the quarrels with th other officials of French Canada.He quarreled with the Bishop of Que the Intendant of New France: and the Governor of Montreal.

He was again made Governor because those who succedded hi were incapable of handling the Indians, and there was danger of the colony being wiped out by the Indians and the English. The situatio existing between the French Colony and the English Colony was quite similar to the conditions thateexisted between the mother countries. The mother countries were at war, and the colonies soon followed sui Open warfare was caused by the French sending raiding parties agains the frontier settlements, and defeating them.

The English colonists were anxious to conquer and annex Ne France because it would add to the territory owned by England; it would drive the French from the productive fur area of Canada; it would make for a freedom from possible French invasion.

The British,under the command of Sir William Phips, appear before Port Royal in Acadia, the centre of the French Settlements th No resistance was offerred, as the garrison of only seventy soldiers was not in a position to withstand an attack..And all of Acadia fell into the hands of the English. Phips then sailed to Quebec and laid siege to the city.

The siege lasted until the fall, when there was danger of vessels being frozen in, and having to remain throughout the winter.

XII. THE SHINING MOUNTAINS.

20. LA VERENDRYE.

I. THE DATES.

1685---1709---1728---1730---1738---1742--1743-49

2. HE WAS.

1.a French Canadian who was born at Three Rivers.

2.The son of the Governor there.

3.A soldier in the French Army who served in Canada, New Foundland, and in Flanders, where he was severly wounded in the battle of Malplaquet.-1709.

4. He was rewarded by beingbpresented with a seigniory.

3.HIS AIMS:

I. He aimed to explore western Canada, and the Great West. 2. He also aimed to find a way to the Pacific.

4.THE REASONS FOR HIS AIMS.

I. In 1726, he was placed in charge of the trading post on Lake Nipigon, and while there, he heard numerous stories from the Indians about a great Western Sea that was not far beyond Lake Superior. 2. He loved adventure, and wanted to test the truth of the stories.

3. He also heard from the Indians about a great river flowing west, and a vast flat country, devoid of timber, with large herds of cattle.

4. An old Indian drew a map for him showing rivers emptying into the western sea.

5. THE PREPARATIONS FOR HIS EXPLORATIONS.

1.

He applied to the king for aid, but he only received the grant of a monopoly of the fur-trade.

2.He interested the Governor of New France, the Marquis de Beauharnois, and some merchants of Quebec, in his scheme of western discovery.

3. Merchants of Montreal also advanced some of the necessary capital.(A large sum of money was needed to maintain the large company that was formed, and to build forts in which to store the furs.)

6.THE MARCH WESTWARD AND THE BUILDING OF FORTS.

I. The region explored extended to the west of Lake Superior, from Grand Portage.

2. He set out from Montreal in 1731.

3. Some of the men refused to go beyond Grand Portage, and he was compelled to winter at the mouth of the Kaministikwia

4. The places explored, and the names of forts that were established were:-

1.Rainy Lake.....Fort St. Pierre.
2.Lake of the Woods.....Fort St. Charles.
3.The Winnepeg River.....Fort Maurepas.
4.The Red River and the Assiniboine.....Fort Rouge.
5.Up the Assiniboine River, westward.....Fort La Reine.
6.Southward to the country of the Mandans.
7.Northward to Lake Manitoba and the Saskatchewan River.. Forts were built on Lake Manitoba at Fort Dauphin on Cedar Lake at Fort Bourbon, and on the Saskatchewan at the site of the present.The Pas,(Fort Paskoyac)

5.He did not find any river flowing westward, but while searching for it, he heard from some Indians about the Missouri which flows east instead of west.The Indians to the south were unfriendly, so he returned to Fort La Reine, where he remained owing to ill health, and sent his sons out to explore.

6. The march westward was marked by---
1.His having to return to Montreal 1732-1733, to make new arrangements for financing the expedition.
2.His nephew died at Fort Maurepas.
3.His son Jean was killed by the Sioux.

7. The chief members of the expedition were---
1.Pierre Gaultier de la Verendrye.
2.Jean.
3.Pierre.
4.Francois.
5.Lieutenant De la Jemeraye-his nephew.
6. Louis-Joseph-his youngest son.
8. Pierre was left in charge of Fort St Charles.

THE EXPLORATIONS OF FRANCOIS AND LOUIS VERENDRYE 1742.

1.They went south to the Mandan Country in a further attempt to find the western sea.
2. The Mandans led them south-westerly to the Horse Indians.
3.These took them farther south-west to the Bow Indians.
4.In January 1743, the brothers sighted the Rocky Mountains.
5.Indian war-fare prevented them going farther.
6. They spent the winter on the Missouri, and claimed the land for the French. They raised a pyramid of stones and buried a

leaden plate, near the site of the present city of Pierre, in North Dakota. They returned to Fort La Reine 1743.

7. They were compelled to journey east again to secure further financial support, but were unsuccessful.

8. In 1749, his appeal was successful, and preparations were made to return to the west, but the elder Verendrye died before they started out.

9. The sons were not given an opportunity to continue the work in fact they were denied permission to accompany the newly appointed explorer of the west.

THE EXPLORATIONS OF SAINT-PIERRE.

1. He made his headquarters at Fort La Reine.

2. One of his officers was given charge of the exploration of the Saskatchewan.

3. In the summer of 1751, this officer followed the River to the foot-hills of the Rockies, and there built Fort La Jonquiere, in honour of the Governor of French Canada....possibly near the site of the present city of Calgary.

4. No attempt was made then to go beyond the mountains.

---

8. THE RESULTS OF VERENDRYE'S EXPLORATIONS.

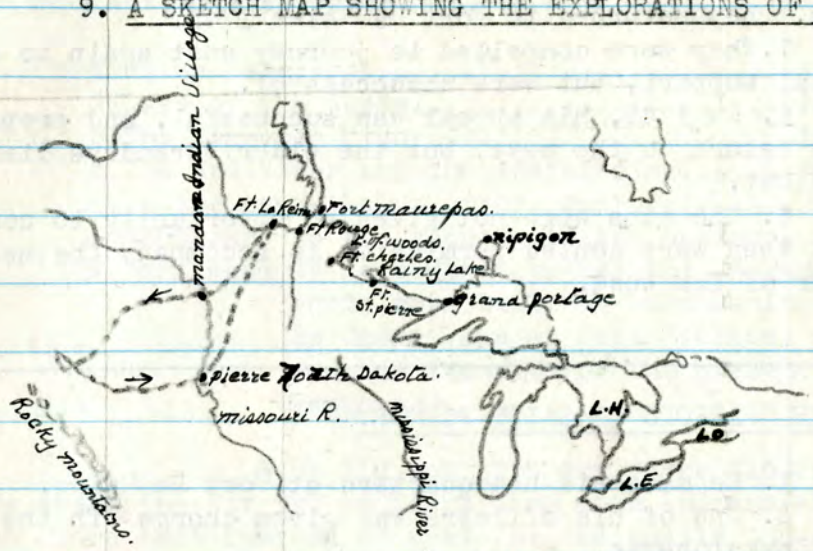
1. He did not reach the western sea.

2. He was the first explorer to visit, and to open up the country between Ontario and the Rocky Mountains.

3. He added to the territories of the French, those vast areas which are now known as The Great West.

4 They led the way for those who did reach the Pacific.

9. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE EXPLORATIONS OF VERENDRYE.



A SUMMARY OF THE EXPLORATIONS OF LA VERENDRYE.

1. THE DATES. (1685--1709--1728)
1.1730---1738--1742--1743--1749--1913

2. HE WAS
1. A son of the Governor of Three Rivers.
2. A soldier who saw service in Canada, New Foundl and Europe...In Flander where he was wounded at Malplaquet--1709.
3. An explorer.

3. His AIMS.
1. To explore the west, and if possible, find a way to the Pacific.

4. THE PREPARATIONS FOR THE WESTWARD EXPLORATIONS.
1. He secured a monopoly of the fur-trade.
2. He received financial help from the Governor of Quebec, merchants of Quebec, and merchants of Montreal.

5. THE MARCH WESTWARD AND THE FORTS BUILT.
1. From Montreal 1731..to Grand Portage-L. Superio
2. Rainy Lake--Fort St. Pierre.
3. Lake of the Woods..Fort St. Charles--(Pierre)
4. L. Winnipeg.....Fort Maurepas....(Jemeraye)
5. Red and Assiniboine R.. .Fort Rouge.
6. Assiniboine R,.....Fort La Reine.
7. South to the Mandan Country; North to the Saskatchewan River.
8. Jemeraye died; Jean was killed.
9. Francois and Louis sighted the Mountains.
10. a lead plate buried at Pierre, S. Dakota claiming the land for France

6. THE RESULTS OF LA VERENDRYE'S WORK.

1. He did not reach the western sea.
2. He was the first explorer to visit the country between Ontario and the Rocky Mountains.
3. He claimed the land for the French.
4. He led the way for those who later reached the Pacific Ocean.

7. A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE EXPLORATIONS OF VERENDRYE.

SEE the map in connection with the preparation.

LA VERENDRYE. 1685- 1749.

He was born in Three Rivers, and was the son of the Governor there. He served in the New England campaign of 1704, and in 1705 in New Foundland. In 1707, he went to France, and served with the army in Flanders, where he was wounded in the Battle of Malplaquet in 1709.

Upon his return to Canada, he married the daughter of a former Governor of Three Rivers, and engaged in the fur-trade for some years on the St. Maurice River.; and in 1727-8 on Lake Nipigon. While there, he developed the idea of exploring the unknown country beyond Lake Superior, and discovering an overland route to the Western Sea. It was to this project that he devoted the remainder of his life.

He secured a monopoly of the fur-trade from the French King approval from the French Governor in Canada, and financial assistance from the merchants of Quebec and Montreal. He left Montreal for the for the West in 1731, with his sons--JEAN. PIERRE. AND FRANCOIS. His youngest son Louis joined the expedition some years later. He built forts on Rainy Lake..Ft. St. Pierre, and on Lake of the Woods--Ft. St. Charles.

Jean and the missionary who accompanied him were murdered by the Sioux Indians as they were returning to Lake Superior for Supplies for the starving garrison of Fort St. Charles.

In succeding years, he penetrated to Lake Winnipeg, Red River, The Assiniboine River, and the Saskatchewan. He built Ft. Maurepas at the mouth of the Winnipeg River, on the shore of Lake Winnipeg, Ft. Rouge at the junction of the Red and the Assiniboine. Fort La Reine, on the Assiniboine, Fort Dauphin at the foot of Lake Winnipegosis, and Fort Bourbon on the Saskatchewan.

In 1738, he made a journey to the Mandan country on the Missouri. In 1739, one of his sons penetrated to the Saskatchewan.

In 1742, he was unable to continue explorations because of ill-health, so sent two of his sons to the south-west. They hoped to reach the western sea, but were stopped by the hostile Indian tribes, and the barrier of the Rocky Mountains.

In 1743, the brothers deposited on the banks of the Missou a leaden plate which claimed the land for France. This plate was fou in 1913, at Pierre , South Dakota.

In 1743, the Verendryes returned to Montreal. The father w in very poor health, and was heavily in debt. In 1749, he died.

His sons begged to be allowed to continue the western expl ations, but hostile influences made this impossible.

The Verendryes did not achieve complete success in carryin out their whole undertaking, but they are given the credit of being the first to visit , and to open up the vast west. La Verendrye was the most unselfish and public spirited explorer of his time.

Jean--the eldest-- was born in 1713-- and was murdered on what has later been called Massacre Island in the Lake of the Woods in 1736.

Pierre-- ----------was born in 1714. After taking part in the search for the Western Sea, was sent to Acadia 1746. He served in the army, and in 1759 brought a large party of Indians down to Quebec.

Francois.....was born in 1715, and took part in the expedition to the south-west in 1742-3. He remained in Canada after the Conquest, and died in Montreal

Louis.....was born in 1717. He took part in the western exploration. He sailed for France in 1761, and lost his life when the vessel was sunk.

XIII. A SOLDIER OF FRANCE....THE CONQUEST OF CANADA. THE STRUGGLE FORN.A

I. FRANCE AND ENGLAND AT WAR IN EUROPE.. 1689.....
(King william's war)

1.Louis of France was a very ambitious king, and felt that he was the strongest ruler in Europe. His ambitions were curbed by a treaty with England. By this treaty, Louis promised not to put his Grand son on the throne of Spain; and to acknowledge William the 111. and his heirs as Kings of England. Louis broke the treaty by placing his grandson on the throne of Spain, and by acknowledging Charles Stewart as King of England.

England declared war on France. The English forces were led by the Duke of Marlborough, and the French were defeated after long years of struggle.

11. WAR IN THE COLONIES.

King Wm's war. 1690

King William's war

1.The French and Indians attacked the border settlements, and in general interferred with the trade of New England. The American Colonies retaliated. The British fleet sailed out from Boston, attacked and captured Port Royal in Acadia. They named it Annapolis after Queen Anne. The leader of Br: ships.

In 1691, an attempt was made at Quebec. The fleet and the army moved from Boston against Quebec.The Commanders of the British were timid and undecided. Eight of the British Transports were wrecked at the mouth of the St. Lawrence. After a feeble attempt to capture Quebec, the British withdrew and returned to Boston. Each side offeredrewards for scalps. The Treaty of Ryswick ended war in 1697.

Queen Anne's war - 1713 or War of the Spanish Succession.

111. PEACE: THE TREATY OF UTRECHT (1713) This closed Queen Anne's war.

1. France yielded to Great Britain
   1. The Hudson Bay Region (No boundaries)
   2. Newfoundland.
   3. Acadia.(The boundaries were indefinite) France retained Cape Breton I. and Prince Edward Island.

1V.PREPARATIONS FOR FURTHER STRUGGLE.

1. France built Louisburg on Cape Breton Island. There was a spacious and fortified harbour there,and with the great fortress of Louisburg, New England was threatened.

2. Fort Frontenac was strengthened. This was a threat against the Settlements of New York.

3. French Traders and explorers in the Northwest, threatened the British Trade on Hudson Bay.

4. French forts were built on the Ohio, and the Mississippi.

V. WAR RESUMED BETWEEN FRANCE AND ENGLAND... The War of the Austrian Succession. 1745

I. In Europe; France and Spain were allied against England...The War of the Austrian Succession...; and in America, the French and English Colonies were again at war.

2. Two French vessels from Louisburg captured an English Fishing Village in Acadia. The inhabitants were made prisoners they were taken to Louisburg, and later were sent to Boston. They told of the weakness of the garrison of Louisburg where there was strife and mutiny.

3. The English then sailed for Louisburg, and besieged and captured it. The French attempted to retake the fortress, but they failed.

4.

VI. PEACE..TREATY OF AIX-LA-CHAPELLE 1748.

I. The British exchanged Louisburg in America, for Madras in India. This move by the British angered the New England Colonists in America.

VII. PREPARATIONS WERE MADE FOR A CONTINUATION OF THE STRUGGLE.

I. The British established a fortress and settlement at Halifax. This became a rival of Louisburg.

2. The French built forts along the Ohio River.

3. George Washington was sent by the British Colonies to warn the French off British Territory. He was made a prisoner, and later was returned to Virginia.

4. Fort Duquesne, a French Fortress, was completed in 1754. It was on the site of the present city of Pittsburg.

5. Braddock, withan English army was sent against Fort Duquesne, although war was not declared. He was attacked in the forest by the French and their Indian Allies. Braddock was killed, and the army retreated under Washington.

6. The Indians of the western country then joined the French.

7.In a battle of Lake George, the French leader, Dieskau, was made a prisoner. The Iroquois allied themselves and fought with the English.

VIII. THE EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS FROM NOVA SCOTIA.

I. Agents from France and Quebec kept the Acadians hostile to the English. The French at Louisburg even paid for English scalps. The French claimed that the ceded Acadia ended with the Isthmus of Chignecto. The Acadians refused to take the oath of Allegiance; war was imminent; and the British feared treachery.

The Acadians were deported. Some of them were sent to England; some to France; and some to the English Colonies. Most of them sank into hopeless poverty, and there was much suffering among them, as is expressed by Longfellow in his Poem--Evangeline.

IX. THE WAR OF THE BOUNDARY LINES..THE SEVEN YEARS WAR//

A. THE EARLY STAGE OF THE WAR.

1.The leadership of the English was entrusted to Braddock.

L. BRADDOCK

1.He was an English Army Officer who had seen service in Europe underThe Prince of Orange..in Holland..1746-8; and at Gibraltar in 1753.

2. In 1755, he was the General and Commander-in-chief of the British Forces in America.

3.He wished to conduct the war in America on European plans, and ignored the Indian and forest war-fare.

4. He led an expedition against Fort Duquesne in 1755, and was ambushed by the French and Indians before he arrived there. He was defeated and mortally wounded.

5. The expedition was saved by the skill of Washington, who led a successful retreat.

2. DIESKAU

1.He was of German descent, but served under the French. When it was made known that the English had sent two regiments to America under Braddock, the French decided to fit out an expedition on a larger scale, and six regiments embarked for Canada under Dieska who was given the rank of General. He believed, like Braddock, that the war in America should be carried on along European lines.

Immediately after assuming command, he prepared to attack the British, and marched at the head of a body of men against Johnsonwho was in the country near Lake Champlain.

Although his plans seem to have been well laid, Dieskau's position was betrayed through the action of the Indians. He was severely wounded, and was made a prisoner by the British. He was well cared for by the British, and was taken to England, ruined in health and fortune. He was liberated at the conclusion of the war in 1763, and returned to France.

X The French saw that so long as the colonies of two nations were side by side in America, there could be no security, and no permanent peace. Oneemust completely defeat and drive out the other.

3. ABERCROMBIE.

I. Abercrombie was the British Leader who was sent to America to succeed Braddock. He had had considerable military experience in Europe. He was sent to America in 1756. He was the superior officer but resigned his command in favour of Loudon. In 1757, he commanded the second brigade against Louisburg. When Lord Loudon was recalled, he became the commander-in-chief..1758.

2. He led an expedition against Ticonderoga, with Lord Howe as second in command. When Howe died, the campaign became a dismal failure for the British. Abercrombie was out-generalled at every point by the French under Montcalm. Abercromby was recalled to England . He was a failure as a British Leader.

20-----4. MONTCALM.

I. THE DATES.

I. 1756--1759.

2. HE WAS:-

1. He was bornin France, and entered the French Army at the age of fourteen. Later he married the grand niece of Talon.

2. Appointed by the King of France, to the position of Commander-in-chief of the French allied forced in Canada.(Major-Ge

3. A soldier who had won distinction in the war of t Austrian Succession, and had also seen service in Bohemia and Italy.

4. An experienced soldier: a devout church-man: and a leader, and commander of great genius.

(5. A man who wanted to be---a man of honour; brave, and a good Christian: He also wanted to read moderately, to know as much Latin and Greek as other men, also arithmetic, history, geograp literature, and some art and science: and to handle a horse and a sw as well as possible.)

3. MONTCALM'S ASSOCIATES IN FRENCH CANADA.

I. His first impressions were very favourable. He w royally entertained by the Intendant- Francois Bigot. The Governor of New France, the Canadian-born Marquis de Vaudriel, exerted himself to be agreeable to Montcalm.

2. Before Montcalm was in Canada very long, he found that his work was hampered by the men who should have been the first to assist him, in an endeavour to make French Canada a success.

5. MARQUIS DE VAUDRIEUL.

1. He was born in Canada, and entered the Army at an early a He held the positions of Governor of Three Rivers, 1732-1742; of Lou iana 1743-1753; and Governor of Canada from 1755-1760.

He was continually at odds with Montcalm, and hampered him in his defence of the colony. He was a man of average ability, and was disposed to assert his authority as Governor on every possible occasion, and interfered with Montcalm in the discharge of his duties. Time and again Montcalm's plans for the defence of Canada were all but wrecked by Vaudriel's interference.

He was jealous of the officials who were sent out from France. He was conceited and stupid. Victories that were won by Montcalm were claimed by him. Defeats were attributed to Montcalm.

His character was feeble and he was irresolute, unenlightened, jealous of his authority, and he was taken advantage of by a corrupt entourage which he was incapable of dominating. He detested Montcalm, and tried unsuccessfully to despise the vehement and irascible little general, but was no match for him either in ability or will power. Montcalm had been placedmore or less under his authority, and he was in a position to thwart his plans. He lost few opportunities of doing so.

It was the misfortune of France that, at the supreme crisis of her career in the New World, all efforts of a brilliant general should have been rendered useless by the carelessness of the Court, the swindling of the Intendant Bigot, and the weakness and vanity of Vaudriel...the last Governor of New France.

6. BIGOT.

He was born in France, and through his influnce at the Court, obtained several lucrative offices in New France which he turned to his own personal advantage. He arrived in Louisburg in 1739, and after its capture in 1745, he returned to France, where serious charges of misappropriating public funds had been brought against him, but his power at the court was sufficient to extricate him from this scrape and to secure him the office of Intendant of New France..1748.

He was able but unscrupulous, and elaborated a system of peculation by which every branch of the public service was laid under tribute to enrich himself and his creatures.This helped to bring about the final loss of the colony.

He had charge of the civil governemnt; was competent; clever and deceptive; well mannered; and a favourite of Vaudriel. The combined conceit, stupidity, and corruption of Vaudriel and Bigot cost France, the Colony of New France.

Montcalm found that Bigot was enriching himself at the expense of the colony, and that, while there was plenty of money for Bigot's dinner-parties, there was very little for Montcalm and his soldiers.

He was expected to see that food and war supplies were properly distributed to the colonists and the soldiers. These supplies were sent from France on the request of the Intendant. When they arrived, he sold them at high prices and pocketed the money.

The people were half-starved because they could not pay the exhorbitant prices that were demanded for food. The army was poorly equipped and poorly fed due to Bigot's criminal neglect.

Montcalm had to contend with the annoyances of a bungling governor who put all sorts of difficulties in his way; and also had to submit to having his army ill-fed, and ill-equipped.

THE REASONS FOR DISSENSIONS IN THE ARMIES

Numerous residents of the New Land regarded themselves as American. They regarded the country as their own, and had their own id regarding the conduct of war therein. These did not always agree with those of the regular officers from France and England. The European officers were inclined to despise advice of colonial officers, who were much more familiar with the conditions under which the war was being fought.These differences did not promote harmony in either the English or French Forces.

4.THE CONDUCT OF THE WAR, UNDER MONTCALM.

1. OSWEGO was captured BY THE French. Sixteen hundr British prisoners were taken, and the Indian allies were made secure.

2. FORT WILLIAM HENRY was captured by the French, and the Indian allies of Montcalm massacred the garrison even though Montcalm did his best to prevent it.

3.TICONDEROGA saw the defeat of the British under Abercrombie by Montcalm.

THERE WAS THEN A CHANGE IN THE BRITISH WAR POLICY.

William Pitt was made the Secretary of War in E and. He saw that competent generals were chosen for the British Forc AMHERST was made Commander-in-chief, and JAMES WOLFE was made second in command. The Fleet and the army were strengthened.

4. LOUISBURG was besieged and captured by the Briti in 1758. Six thousand prisoners were taken, and the fortifications were destroyed.

5. FORT FRONTENAC was captured by the British 1758.

6. FORT DUQUESNE was captured by the British 1758.

In Canada there were internal troubles. Vaudrei was jealous of Montcalm; and Bigot's corruption and extravagances we in evidence. The Government stores were robbed. Bigot's friends were given extravagant prices for worthless contracts; pay was given witho service; paper money was issued without backing: there was a lack of adequate provisions and munitions; and the soldiers lacked training.

5. THE BRITISH PLAN OF ATTACK

1. A force was to move against Montreal by way of Lake Champlain, under Amherst.

2. A force was to move against Montreal by way of the Upper St: Lawrence.

3. A force under Wolfe was to lay siege to Quebec.

6. THE SIEGE OF QUEBEC 1759.

As the war progressed, it became evident that the crucial point of the struggle would be at Quebec. Montcalm stationed his main force before the city early in 1759.

1.The British Fleet, under the command of Admiral Saunders, and General Wolfe, consisted of some 250 vessels, and 30,000 men.

2. The fortifications at Quebec, with the exception of those on the north side, were strong.

3. The first attempt made by the British was from the East, but this was interrupted by the gorge of the Montmorency.

4. An attack was then made on the Beauport Shore, but the British were driven off with heavy losses.

5. A cannonade was then directed against Quebec from Point Levis, across from Quebec. The French still held their ground.

6.In September 1759, the British gained the Height on the Plains of Abraham. There was necessity for immediate action as the cold weather was beginning to arrive, and it was impossible to carry on once the river was frozen over. Wolfe's Cove was the aim of the British, and when it was gained, a path led to the Height above. The army moved up the river under protection of a bombardment that was carried on by ships closer to Quebec. They took possession of the Heights, and there met Montcalm with the French Army. The French were defea ted in the battle; and both Wolfe and Montcalm were killed. In the end Quebec capitulated.

7. An attempt was made by the French under Levis to retake Quebec 1760, but it was unsuccessful.

7. THE BRITISH CAPTURE MONTREAL.

1. Three British forces united against Montreal, and in 1760, Levis capitulated and ceded all of Canada to the British

8. THE TERMS OF CAPITULATION.

1. Honours of War were refused to the French soldiers because Amherst considered them responsible for Indian outrages in warfare.

2. French settlers were not to be deported.
3. They were to retain their property, and might e engage in trade.
4. They were to have their religious liberty.
5. They must become loyal subjects to the British king.

THE PEACE OF PARIS 1763.

1. France gave up all of her possessions in America East of the Mississippi with the exception of the Islands of St. Pierr and Miquelon in the mouth of the St. Lawrence; and New Orleans.
2. Canada was ceded to Great Britain.
3. The British gave the French who remained in Cana all of the rights of British Subjects.
   1. They could remain in Canada.
   2. They could retain their own property.
   3. They were to enjoy religious liberty.
   4. They were to become loyal British Subjec

BIOGRAPHIES

MONTCALM.

He was born in France, and joined the army at the age of 14. In 1756 he was appointed commander-in-chief of the French army in Nor America, with the rank of major-general.

His American military associates were skilled soldiers. Shortly after his arrival in Canada, he conferred with Vaudriel regar ingthe plan of campaign. The situation was extremely difficult becaus he was hampered at every step by the weak and jealous governor, and a corrupt and selfish Intendant. He had insufficient troops, and suppl es to meet an aggressive enemy.

With swift decision, he sent Levis to Lake Champlain, and he led an expedition to Oswego, which he surprised and captured. In 1757, he captured Fort William Henry on Lake George.

The French soldiers and citizens were on short rations, whil Bigot made millions out of the corn he had monopolized; men were need for the army, and the king sent seventy-five recruits.

In the summer of 1758 Montcalm won the battle of Ticonderog but thereafter he began to meet with defeat. In 1759, he was very ill prepared to meet the attack of the enemy. His officers and men were inspired by his leadership; but he had to contend with the leadership of Wolfe. He defended at Quebec, what was believed to be an impregnabl fortress.

He was prudent, and firm; and took no chances with the ene but waited for them to attack. He was playing a defensive game. He might exhaust the British, or force them to raise the siege at the

approach of winter. His army was entrenched along the river from Montmorency to the St. Charles, and he had made his headquarters nearby.

His plans were carefully laid, and for some time it appeared that he might at least force Wolfe to withdraw.

The British attacked at Montmorency, and failed, and although Saunders managed to get part of the fleet above Quebec, there seemed no probability of a serious attack from that quarter. Montcalm had no inkling of Wolfe's plan to scale the height at Wolfe's Cove. He had a small force stationed there as a precaution, but most of the men had been withdrawn when the critical moment came, through the folly of the Governor, Vaudriel.

Montcalm was deceived by Wolfe's feint at Beauport, which appeared to be the main attack; and as a result, the British were able to ascend the Height, and when seen, were arrayed for battle.

Montcalm led a force from the citadel against Wolfe, and some claim that he should have waited for reinforcements before making the attempt..no doubt he felt that delay would give Wolfe an opportunity to strengthen his position.

In the fight, the French were shot down by the British, and in their retreat, they carried Montcalm with them. In attempting to rally some of the men outside the St. Louis Gate, he was mortally wounded, and died the following day.

Wolfe.

Throughout his life, he was handicapped by a very delicate constitution. At the age of 16, he took part in his first campaign in Flanders. He distinguished himself by his bravery, and was made Lieutenant and Adjutant, and shortly afterwards was promoted to Captain. Generally, he had considerable military experience, and was chosen by Pitt to go to America with Amherst. He was sent against Louisburg, and succeeded in capturing it. This gave the British control of the Key to the St. Lawrence.

He was later given command of the expedition against Quebec with the rank of Brigadier-general. Saunders commanded the Fleet...141 vessels, which made its way successfully up the river to Quebec. His army was only 9000, much less than the strength of the fleet. Montcalm had 17,000...militia, badly armed and half-starved.

Siege batteries were established at strategic places, and Wolfe made an unsuccessful attack at Montmorency. Convinced that nothing could be done below the town, he secretly worked out the plans of the attack, and moved his men up stream in preparation for the scheme. In the attack on the Plains of Abraham, he was mortally wounded, and died in the hour of victory.

AMHERST

He was sent to America by William Pitt, and succeeded Abercrombie when he was recalled. He took Ticonderoga and Crown Point in 1759, but instead of continuing into Canada to help Wolfe, he set his men to work to build a new fort at Crown Point. In 1760, after Wolfe had captured Quebec, he brought all of his available forces to the final conquest of Canada. It was planned that there was to be threefold attack upon the final fortress...Murray was to advance from Quebec against Montreal: Haviland was to go by way of Lake Champlain; and he was to lead the main army down the St. Lawrence from Lake Ontario. The three movements were carried out, and Vaudriel finally signed the capitulation of Montreal and all of Canada.

WILLIAM PITT—THE GREAT COMMONER

He became the Minister of War, or the Secretary of State in England in 1757, for his second term in Office, when the Seven Years' War was going badly for the English.

He prosecuted the war with France with great vigour, and reorganized the British Army. He sent General Amherst to America as first in command upon the recall of Abercrombie: and General Wolfe was sent as second in command. As a result, British victories in America were more numerous: and finally Quebec, The Key of Canada, was captured, and New France became a British possession.

GENERAL MURRAY.

He led the forces against Montreal, 1759, and captured it from Vaudriel, the last Governor of New France. In 1760. he was left in charge of Quebec. During the winter there was a great deal of sickness, and in the spring, Quebec was attacked by the French under Levis. Levis was captured. The French withdrew with the arrival of the British fleet, and Quebec remained a British possession.

He was made the civil governor of Canada 1763-1766. There was bitterness between the soldiers and civilians, and he was recalled to England 1766.

He was made Military Governor of Canada 1760, and tried to protect the French settlers from the aggression of the English traders. He opposed a legislature entirely British, governing French Canada, and wished to give recognition to the French. He espoused the cause of the soldiers in the quarrels between the soldiers and the civilian traders. His appointment as civil Governor 1763 was opposed by the British traders, and his recall was due to their demands.

10. THE RESULTS OF THE CONQUEST OF CANADA.

1. The seigneurs and gentlemen of new France to the extent of one-half returned to France. The others remained and held land under British Rule.

2. The Habitants were very little affected by the change, They were glad of peace, and an opportunity to till the land. They were free from the plundering Bigot, and were loyal to Canada rather than to France.

3. The Indians were surprised and incredulous when the British took over the French Forts. Major Rogers took over Detroit from the French. The French Garrison left, and all French Posts were taken over within the year.

The Indians were unfriendly to the British because the officers were stern disciplinarians during the war, and the British were not friendly to the Indians as was shown by the fact that they did not fraternize with them as the French had. They seemed cold, reserved and suspicious. They acted as masters--not allies, and demanded the freeing of British prisoners, and they even ordered them away from the forts.

The Indians considered themselves as allies of the French; and Pontiac,the chief of the Ottawas, leader of the Western Indians, a statesman who was talented, crafty and ambitious organized a conspiracy, to destroy the British. The Indians pretended friendship with the British; warriors gathered near the forts, and the British were massacred when they were off their guard. The aim of the Indians was to return the land to the French, so that the French and the Indians as their allies would hold the land.

The French traders were still active west of the Mississippi, where the property was still French. They assured the Indians that the French would soon regain their lost territory, and even encouraged the Indian plots.

At Michilimacinac, the British garrison was invited to watch a lacrosse game played by the Indians outside the fort. The squaws were onlookers, and were seated near the gates, wrapped in their blankets. The players edged up near to the fort,and the ball was thrown over the palisade. The Indians rushed into the fort. The squaws produced weapons from under their blankets, and a massacre followed.

At Detroit, Major Gladwin, at the head of the garrison was warned. The Indians as a result had no chance to carry out their plans. Guards were found stationed everywhere, and upon withdrawing, laid siege which lasted for nearly a year. The messengers were murdered when they went to talk with the Indians, and the fort was threatened with famine, but the British sent relief. The

attempt to drive out the British was dropped, and Pontiac was murdered by one of his followers.

4. The English Fur-traders flocked in from the English colonies as they desired to make fortunes. They had no voice in the government, and demanded a Canadian Legislature, which refused to allow the French to hold office. The Roman Catholics Murray, the military Governor, refused to allow the few newcomers to control the country. The legislature was refused, and troubles commenced between the traders and the Governor.

The traders hated the soldiers because the officers were arrogant, and they despised the traders. The soldiers were billeted in private homes, and they considered this an imposition, with the result that there were bitter feuds between the soldiers and the civilians.

5. During the six years following the conquest of Canada, there was military rule between 1760-1763, with General Murray as the Military Governor. From 1763- to 1766. the was a civil governor-Murray...and from 1766 to 1774 Sir Guy Carleton.

PONTIAC.

Pontiac was an Ottawa Chief, who, in 1763, formed a plan to gain possession of all the British forts in the West. He arranged a game of Lacrosse at each fort, invited the garrisons to be spectators, and while they were offf duty, the Indians rushed in and captured the fort. Although many forts were taken the plot failed, and Pontiac was afterwards murdered.

He was an ally of the French during their struggles with the British. In 1746, he and his Indians assissted the French at Detroit in repelling an attack by northern tribes, and in 1755 he led the Ottawas when General Braddock was defeated. In 1763 he began a campaign against the British; destroyed several forts from Lake Michigan to Niagara, and massacred their garrisons. Detroit was then attacked and besieged for nearly a year, until relieved by Colonel Bradstreet. Pittsburg was saved only by the timely arrival of Colonel Bouquet. Eight out of twelve fortified forts were destroyed by Pontiac and his Indians. They were finally subdued by Sir William Johnson, who in 1766 concluded a treaty of peace. In 1769, Pontiac was assassinated by another Indian.

The fort at Detroit was the only one from Lake Superior to Virginia that held out for such a long time. Pontiac was finally compelled to make peace; and gradually the lost ground was all recovered; and the British Flag flew from Hudson Bay to the Gulf of Mexico.

FORT DUQUESNE. at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela Rivers.

Fort Duquesne was a military post built at the junction of two tributaries of the Ohio, by the French. It was near there that Braddock suffered his disastrous defeat in 1755. It was captured in 1758 by the British under Bouquet. He changed the name to Fort Pitt.

FORT WILLIAM HENRY.

Fort William Henry was on Lake George. It was built by William Johnson in 1755, and was named by him, after the king's Grandson. Numerous raids were made against the Fort by the French and Indians. The British made it their headquarters for their expeditions against the French. It was captured by Montcalm 1757. The earthen mounds of the fort still stand on the shore of L.George.

FORT OSWEGO.

Fort Oswego was originally built by the Governor of New York in 1727 at his own expense. A Loop-holed house of stone still stands on the site of the present city of Oswego,on the south shore of Lake Ontario. It was designed to attract the Indian trade from Fort Niagara, and in this was eminently successful. It was destroyed by Montcalm in 1756. It was rebuilt in 1759 by the British, and renamed Fort Ontario...It was captured by Drummond and Yeo in the war of 1812.

LOUISBURG. Louisburg.

Louisburg is a seaport on the south-east coast of Cape Breton Island, and was formerly a stronghold of France in America. The fortress was named after Louis XIV. It was begun in 1709. and 25 years were spent in fortifying it. The cost was estimated at thirty million livres. It was captured by the British under Pepperel and Warren in 1745. It was ceded back to France by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. It was again captured by the British under Amherst, Wolfe, and Boscawen in 1758.

TICONDEROGA.

It was built on a promontory at the southern end of Lake Champlain, where it formed the advance post of the French, and guarded the frontier from British attack. Abercromby brought an army against it in 1758, and was badly beaten by Montcalm. The following year, the fort was captured by Amherst, and the French retreated down the Lake with his force.

In 1775 it was taken by the Americans under Ethan Allan. It was recaptured by Burgoyne, and remained in the hands of the British until the end of the war. When the boundary was settled it became the property of the United States.

FORT FRONTENAC...CATARAQUI.

The name is derived from the Iroquois. Afort was built under Frontenac's orders. The site was selected by La Salle. The fort stood at the mouth of the Cataraqui, on the present site of the city of Kingston. Frontenac held a great council there with the representatives of the five nations of the Iroquois in 1673.

On Frontenac's recommendation, fort Cataraqui was granted to La Salle as a seigniory, upon his repaying the amount that the fort had cost the King.

La Salle renamed it Fort Frontenac, and it became the base of his ambitious scheme of western exploration.

La Barre, in1682, seized the fort during La Salle's absence, and turned it into a trading post for himself and his friends. The following year the king ordered it restored, and full reparations given to La Salle.

In 1689, Denonville ordered the garrison to blow up the fort, destroy the stores, and return to Montreal.

In 1695 Frontenac had the fort rebuilt and garrisoned. It was captured and destroyed by the English in 1758.

THE PLAINS OF ABRAHAM.

These are above the city of Quebec, and were named after Abraham Martin, who owned a portion of these lands in the early days of the colony. It was on the Heights of Abraham that Wolfe stationed his army of three thousand men. During the battle which followed Wolfe and Montcalm were killed. Quebec, the Gibraltar of America, and the Key of Canada became a British possession.

21. THE CONQUEST OF CANADA. 1755-1763

1. THE NAMES GIVEN TO THIS WAR WERE:-

1. The Seven Years' War.
2. The War of the Boundary Lines.
3. The Struggle for Supremacy in North America.
4. The Conquest of Canada.

2. THE REMOTE, AND THE IMMEDIATE CAUSES WERE:-

1. In 1690, the French attacked the border settlements of the English...Frontenac., and the English retaliated by attacking the French settlements. The captured Port Royal, and made an unsuccessful attack against Quebec. Temporarily restored peace by the Treaty of Ryswick. 1697.

2. War in Europe between France and England meant war in the Colonies. By the Treaty of Utrecht 1713, the British received The Hudson Bay Region; Newfoundland, and Acadia.

3. The building of forts along the Ohio, and the Mississippi, hemmed the English along the Atlantic Sea-board; (and the strengthening of Forts along the Frontier threatened the very existence of the English Colonies).

4. The capture of the British fishing station in Acadia by the French....The War of the Austrian Succession. 1745 The capture of Louisburg by the British. This was handed back by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle..1748

5. The expulsion of the Acadians 1755.

6. The realization that it was impossible for two colonies of two nations to exist side by side in America. There could be no permanent peace or security, and it came to the point where one must completely defeat and drive out the other.

7. The dispute regarding the boundary line. Fr.vs.Br

8. Indian Warfare against French and English.

9. The English were desirous of extending westward.

3. THE LEADERS OF THE FRENCH IN THE SEVEN YEARS WAR WERE-

1. Dieskau---weak--captured by the British.
2. Montcalm--the commander-in-chief of the French allied forces in America, was strong, but he was hampered by Bigot, and Vaudriel. He was mortally wounded in the Battle of the Plains of Abraham. 1756-1759.

4. THE LEADERS OF THE BRITISH IN THE SEVEN YEARS WAR WERE:-

1. Braddock..He was killed in the expedition against Fort Duquesne. weak.
2. Abercrombie. weak..out-generalled..recalled.
3. Amherst..commander-in Chief..strong--appointed by William Pitt. 4. Wolfe..second in command..strong..captured Louisburg, and Quebec..He was killed on the Plains of Abraham.

5. THE EVENTS OF THE WAR

1. 1754 ---- The French built Fort DuQuesne..now Pittsburg.
2. 1755----- Braddock went against Fort Duquesne, was ambushed and killed. The British army retreated under Washington.
3. 1755----- Dieskau was defeated near Lake George. (Johnson)
4. 1755----- Fort William Henry was built by the British.
5. 1757----- Fort William Henry was taken by the French.(Mont.)

AMHERST AND WOLFE WERE SENT BY WILLIAM PITT....SECRETARY OF STATE IN ENGLAND.

6. 1758----- Louisburg was captured by the British.
7. 1758----- Ticonderoga was a French victory over Abercrombie.
8. 1758----- Fort Duquesne was captured by the British.
9. 1759 ---- The British were defeated on the Beauport shore.
10. 1759----- The Battle of the Plains of Abraham was a victory for the British..Wolfe led the British; Montcalm led the French; both were killed.Can. trans. to
11. 1759----- Niagara was captured by the British.
12. 1760----- Montreal was captured by the British.

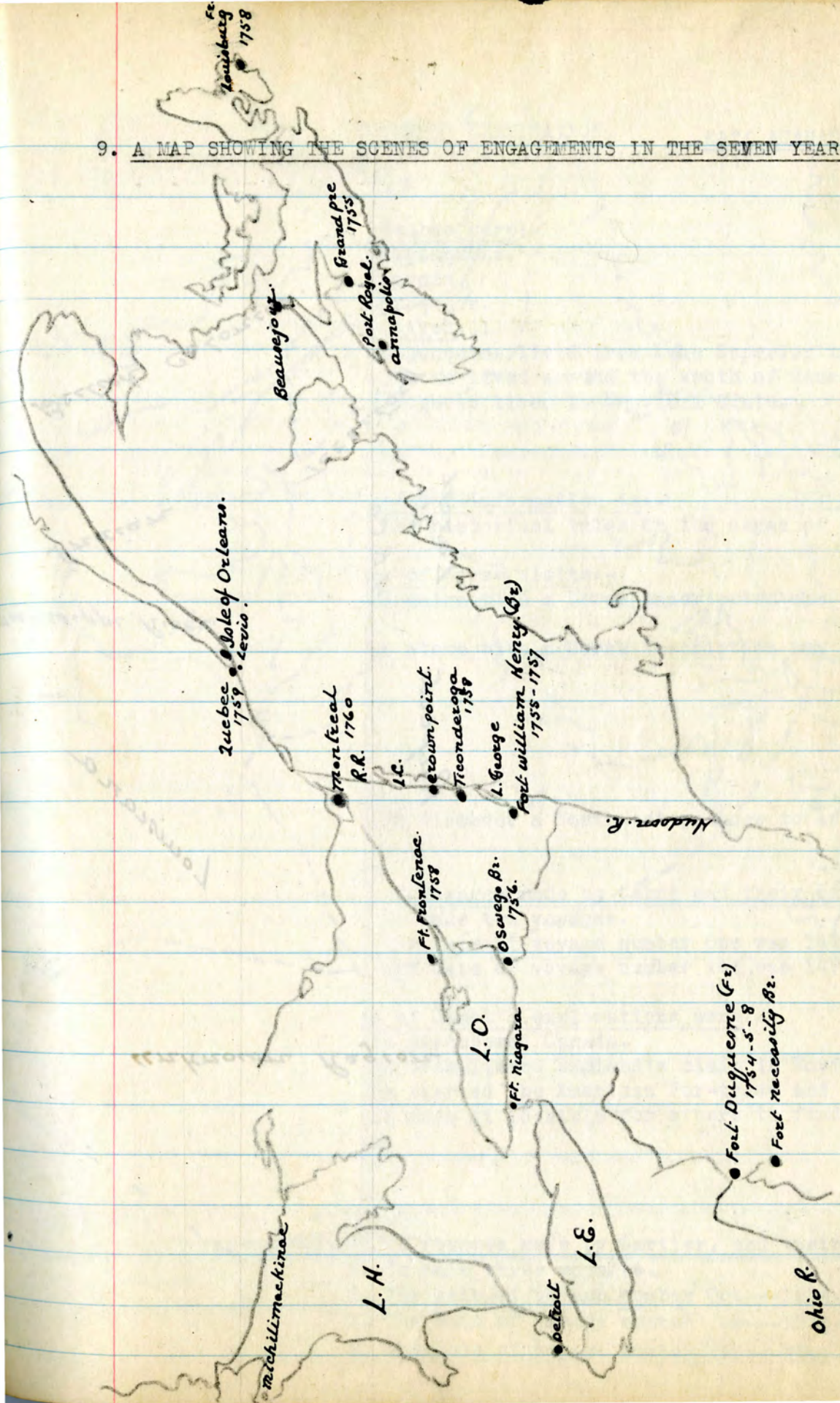
6. THE PEACE OF PARIS. 1763.

1. France gave up all of her possessions in America East of the Mississippi with the exception of the Islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon in the mouth of the St. Lawrence; and New Orleans.
2. Canada was ceded to Great Britain.
3. The British gave the French who remained in Canada all the rights of British subjects...
   1. They could remain in Canada.
   2. They could retain their own property.
   3. They could enjoy religious liberty.
   4. They were to become loyal British Subjects.

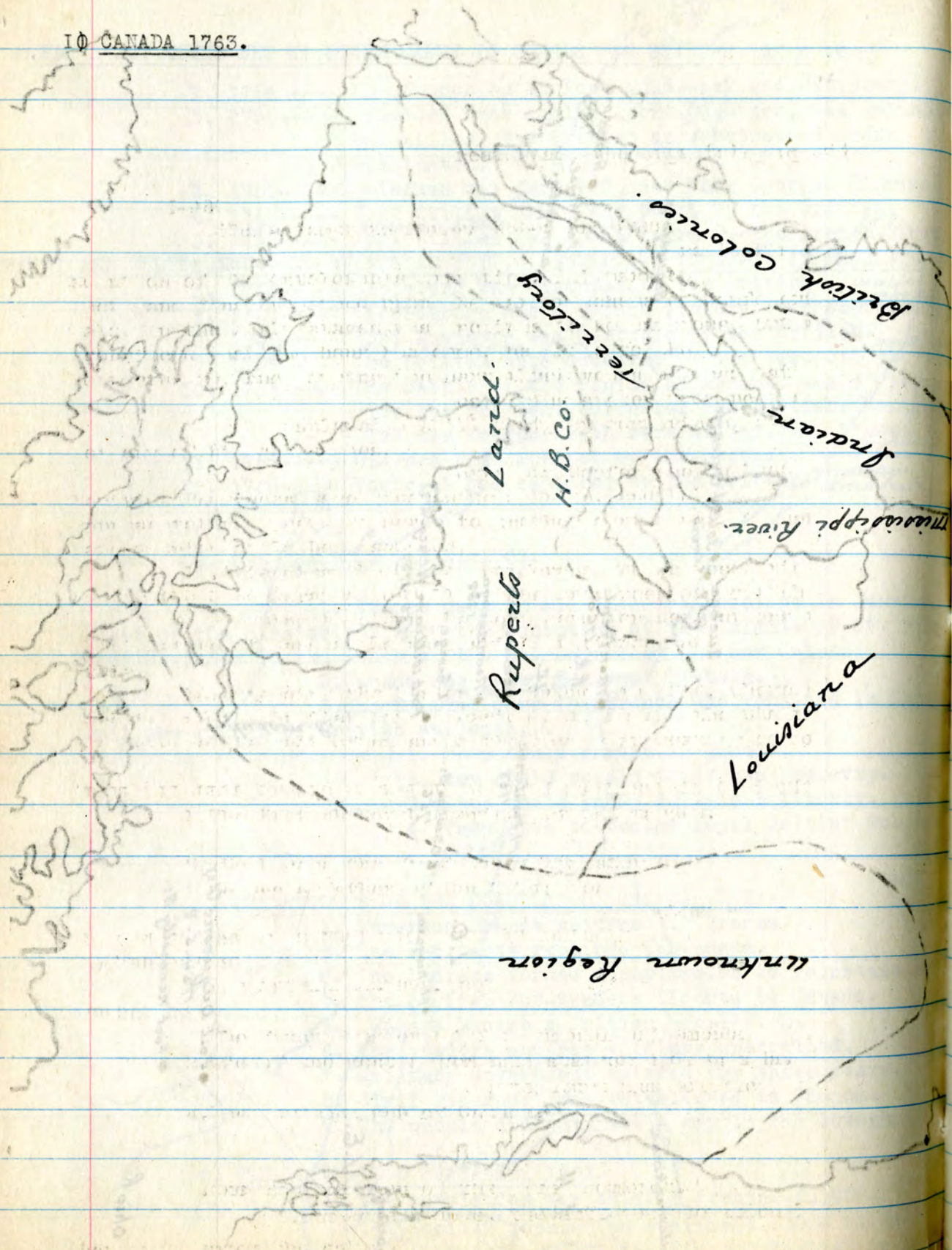
7. THE RESULTS OF THE CONQUEST OF CANADA WERE:-
   1. Numerous French returned to France.
   2. The Habitants remained in Canada.
   3. The Indians formed conspiracies to reinstate French
   4. The English Fur-traders flocked to Canada.
   5. Canada became a British possession.
   6. The traders and the soldiers quarrelled.
   7. Military Government existed for three years.
   8. Civil Government was established in Canada.
   9. The people did not have a say in the Government.

8. THE POPULATION OF CANADA 1763.
   1. The population was chiefly French..65,000.
   2. The English population was small..3000 at Halifax and 10,000 in Nova Scotia..400 English in N. Fr.

9. A MAP SHOWING THE SCENES OF ENGAGEMENTS IN THE SEVEN YEARS WAR.



I Φ CANADA 1763.



NOVEMBER EXAMINATION.

I. THE INDIANS

3 1. The chief tribes were:-

1. Algonquins.
2. Hurons.
3. Iroquois.

2. Each tribe lived...

3 1. Algonquins lived from Lake Superior to Atlantic O.
2. Hurons lived around the south of Georgian Bay.
3. Iroquois lived in New York State.

II. THE NORSEMEN.

2. 1. The source of our information is:-

1. The historical tales or the sagas of the Norse.

2. The evidence of Norse visits:-

2. 1. A cairn with a Norse inscription was discovered in Baffin Bay.

2. A stone with a Norse inscription was found in Minnesota.

III. JOHN CABOT.

2. His aim was:-

1. To discover a Northwest passage to Asia, and to make a fortune.

3. 2. The number of voyages made by Cabot and their dates:-

1. He made two voyages.
2. The date of voyage number One was 1497.
3. The date of voyage number two was 1498.

3.

4. The results of Cabot's explorations were:-

1. He discovered Canada.
2. He established England's claim in North America.
3. He started the American Fur-trade and fisheries.
4. He made it possible for others to find a North-west passage to China.

IV. JACQUES CARTIER.

4. I. THE number of voyages made by Cartier, and their dates:-

1. He made three voyages.
2. The date of voyage number One---1534.
3. The date of voyage number Two---1535-6.
4. The date of voyage number three-1541-2.

2. 2. THE REASONS FOR HIS EXPLORATIONS WERE:-

I.The French King was desirous of sharing in the newly discovered land.

2. He wanted the coast of America explored to find a water-way to Asia.

4. 3.THE RESULTS OF CARTIER'S EXPLORATIONS WERE:-

I.He planted the French flag on Canadian soil.

2.He named Canada.

3.He discovered the great water-way of the St. Lawrence.

4. He pointed the way for the founder of New France.

V.CHAMPLAIN.

5 I.THE FOUNDING OF QUEBEC 1608.

On the site of what is today, the market place of the lower town of Quebec, Champlain selected the site for the settlement. He hadsailed up the St. Lawrence until he reached the Narrows, and found that the place could easily be defended in time of war.

His axe-men fell to work. A clearing was made, and in it a habitation was erected. This consisted of a group of three log buildings surrounded by a strong wooden wall, surrounded by a gallery, loop-holed for muskets. Around the wall, there was a trench or moat;some cannon were set on platforms and pointed toward the river; and a plot of land nearby was laid out as a garden.

During the establishment of the settlement, conspiracy was rife among the men. The ring-leader was executed. Scurvy caused the death of quite a number during the winter.In the spring, only eight remained alive.

4. 2.THE NUMBER OF JOURNEYS OF EXPLORATION MADE AND THEIR DATES.

I.He made three journeys of exploration.

2.The date of journey number One .....1609.

3. The date of journey number two.....1613.

4. The date of journey number three...1615-6.

5. The results ofCHAMPLAIN'S WORK WERE:- (Five)

I.The first permanent settlement was established in Canada at Quebec.

2.The Hurons and Algonquins became friends of French.

3.The Iroquois became enemies of the French.

4.Considerable of Eastern Canada was explored.

5.The fur-trade was increased.

6.The Company of One Hundred Associates was formed to look after the colony.

7. He surrendered Quebec to the English under Kirke

8 He reestablished Quebec. 1632-3

VI. THE HURON MISSIONS.

4. I. THE AIMS OF THE MISSIONARIES WERE.

1. To establish missions in the Huron Country.
2. To convert the Indians to Christianity.
3. To prevent the Indians coming in contact with the fur-traders who hindered their work.
4. To establish a strong native Church.

2. THE RESULTS OF THE HURON MISSIONS WERE:-

5. I. The hopes of the French of establishing a strong native Church were shattered.
2. The Jesuit missions to the Indians were an apparent failure.
3. Some converts were made to the christian religion, and some died embracing the new religion.
4. The influence of the Jesuits extended to remote villages, and some tried to live christian lives.
5. The Jesuits displayed examples of heroism, sacrifice, and endurance.
6. The Huron Nation was destroyed.

VII. THE WATCHDOG OF VILLE MARIE.

1642

I. THE NAME OF THE FOUNDER OF VILLE MARIE WAS:-

2. I. Maisonneuve.

8 The Heroes of the Long Sault.

1660

2. THE NAME OF THE DEFENDER OF VILLE MARIE WAS:-

2. I. Adam Dollard, and his sixteen companions.

IX. TALON.

4 I. THE CONDITIONS FOUND BY TALON UPON HIS ARRIVAL WERE:-

1. The population numbered about three thousand.
2. There were only three towns in French Canada.
3. There were no roads.
4. The highway of the colony was the St. Lawrence.
5. New France had grown very slowly.

3. 2. THE REASONS FOR THE SLOW GROWTH WERE:-

1. The hostility of the Iroquois.
2. The extremely cold weather.
3. The failure of the Company of One Hundred Associates to carry out its part of their agreement.

4 3. The POLICIES OF TALON WERE:-

I. A Population Policy.
2. A Trade, Industrial, or Commercial Policy.
3. A Religious and Educational Policy.
4. An Exploration Policy.

4. 4. THE RESULTS OF TALON'S WORK WERE:-
I. The population of New France was increased.
2. Trade and Industries were established.
3. Missionaries and education were encouraged.
4. Territory was added to that claimed by France.
5. Canada was firmly established with a strong foundation.

X. LA SALLE.

5 I. THE ACHIEVEMENTS OF LA SALLE WERE:-
I. He pushed farther into the heart of North America than any white man before his time.
2. He founded Fort Cataraqui (Fort Frontenac), on the site of the present city of Kingston.
3. He explored part of the Ohio River.
4. He was the first white man to build and navigate a sailing vessel on Lake Erie.
5. He was the first white man to explore the Mississippi River to its mouth on the Gulf of Mexico.
6. He led the way for those who later founded the Colony of Louisiana.
7. He established the French Claim to the Mississippi valley.
8. His claiming the Mississippi Valley for the French, hemmed the English along the Atlantic Sea-board.

XI. FRONTENAC.

5. I. THE WORK OF FRONTENAC INCLUDED:-
I. The calling together the FIRST CANADIAN PARLIAMENT
2. The encouragement of exploration.
La Salle.
Father Marquette and Joliet.
Father Albanel.
3. The building of forts and trading posts.
Fort Frontenac.
Fort Niagara.
Fort Detroit.
Fort Sault Ste Marie.
Fort Michilimacinack.

4. The defence of the Colony.
5. The handling of the Indians.

XII. LA VERENDRYE.

4 THE RESULTS OF LAVERENDRYE'S WORK WERE:-

I. He did not reach the Western Sea.

2. He was the first explorer to visit, and to open up the country between Ontario and the Rocky Mountains.

3. He added to the territory of the French, those vast areas which are now known as the GREAT WEST.

4. They led the way for those who did reach the Pacific.

XIII. THE CONQUEST OF CANADA.

1. THE CAPACITY IN WHICH MONTCALM WAS SENT TO AMERICA WAS,-

2 1. Commander-in-chief of the French allied forces.

2. THE NAMES BY WHICH THIS WAR WAS KNOWN WERE:-

4 1. The Seven Year's War.
2. The War of the Boundary Lines.
3. The struggle for supremacy in North America.

3. The British LEADERS SENT TO AMERICA BY PITT WERE:-

2 1. Amherst.
2. Wolfe.

4. THE BATTLE BY WHICH CANADA WAS TRANSFERRED TO THE BR. WAS:-

2 1. The Battle of the Plains of Abraham.

5. THE LEADERS IN THIS BATTLE WERE:-

1. Montcalm.
2 2. Wolfe.

6. THE TREATY THAT CLOSED THE WAR WAS:-

1. THE PEACE OF PARIS.
2

7. THE DATE OF THE PEACE WAS:-

1 1. 1763.

PART TWO.

BRITISH CANADA BEFORE 1867.

THE ENGLISH.

The Iroquois were a persistent and troublesome foe of the French, but the English were a more serious threat to New France.

While the French were making their settlements along the St. Lawrence, The English planted their flag to the North, East, and South of New France.

In 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert attempted to found a settlement in New Foundland.

In 1607, the London Company established at Jamestown in Virginia, the first Permanent settlement of Englishmen on American Soil.

In 1610, Henry Hudson led the way into Hudson Bay.

In 1620, The Pilgrim Fathers founded a colony at Plymouth which developed into the New England States. In time thirteen distinct English colonies were established by the English along the Atlantic.

In 1621, Lord Baltimore established a colony on The Island of New Foundland.

In 1670, the Hudson Bay Company was organized.

The Great West was still "NO MAN'S LAND" and to keep this region for themselves, the French built a chain of forts south of Lake Erieextending along the Ohio Valley and the Mississippi in such a way as to shut the English up in the narrow strip along the Atlantic. Due to this circumstance, to rivalry for the fur-trade, and to constant raids from New France, a supreme struggle gradually developed and lasted for 150 years.

THE REASONS FOR THE SLOW GROWTH OF CANADA UNDER THE FRENCH WERE:

1. The constant Indian wars.
2. Seignorial Tenure.
3. The settlers neglected Agriculture.
4. The lack of education of the people.
5. The settlers had no voice in the government of the colony.

PART TWO BRITISH CANADA BEFORE 1867

CHAPTER ONE AN ENGLISH EXPLORER.

I. HENRY HUDSON.

I. THE DATES.

I. 1607-1608-1609-1610-1611.

2. HE WAS.

1.An Englishman who was associated with the Muscovy Company----a trading company or corporation engaged in sending ships to northern Europe.

3. HIS AIM WAS.

1.To find a passage to China.

4. THE NUMBER OF VOYAGES MADE BY HIM WAS..

I. Four.

5. AN OUTLINE OF HIS VOYAGES.

1.VOYAGE NUMBER ONE 1607.

In 1607, he sailed for the MUSCOVY CO. in search of a North-eastern passage to China. He journeyed northward toward Spitzbergen, which is north of Norway. He explored the coast of this Island, and then returned to England.

2. VOYAGE NUMBER TWO. 1608.

In 1608, he sailed for the same company and searched for the North-eastern passage to China. On this journey he reached and explored the coast of the Island of Nova Zembla,which is northRussia. He then returned to England.

3. VOYAGE NUMBER THREE..1609.

In 1609, he sailed for the Dutch East India Company. This voyage was started in an endeavour to find the north-eastern passage, but was changed and became a search for a ~~xxxxk~~-western passage. He sailed into New York Harbour, and explored the Hudson River in the hapes that it led to the western sea. He realised that America was an impassable barrier to a western passage

4. VOYAGE NUMBER FOUR 1610-1611.

In 1610, he was outfitted by three Englishmen--members of the Muscovy Company. He set sail from London, in the DISCOVERY with a crew of twenty men. He sailed for Iceland, and then continued westward past Greenland to Hudson Strait which had been visited in 1602 by George Weymouth, an English sailor. The journey through the strait was dangerous as it was filled with ice, but once through the channel, the vast sea of Hudson Bay appeared. He sailed west, and then south, and found that he was in a great land-locked sea or bay.

When he reached the southern part of this bay, winter prevented their return, and it was necessary

History

English	French
1497-8	
	1534
1583	
	1604
	1605
1607	
	1608
1610	
1620	
	1642
1621	
1670	
	1671
	1672.

History

English	Jewish
1497-8	
1583	1534
1607	1604
	1605
1610	1608
1620	
1621	1672
1720	1711
	1712

for them to spend a number of months on the bleak and barren shore:

In the spring of 1611, he started back, and found that his men were in a state of mutiny. The mutineers, under the leadership of Henry Greene, seized Hudson, his son, and eight of the crew who were sick and useless. They were put into a small open boat and were set adrift. The "Discovery," with the mutineers, reached Hudson Strait, and there the majority of them were massacred by the Eskimos.

The Discovery, with a mere handful of men continued homeward. Upon arrival there, only three remained alive. These carried back the story of Hudson's last and greatest exploit.....

THE DISCOVERY OF THE ROUTE WHICH THE ENGLISH WERE TO FOLLOW IN EXPLORING THE NORTHERN HALF OF NORTH AMERICA.

6. THE RESULTS.

2. Henry Hudson perished in the region of Hudson Bay.

1. He had discovered the route which was later followed by the English as they explored the northen half of North America.

5. Hudson Bay and Hudson Strait were named in honour of his daring exploit.

4. Hudson Bay became the gateway through which the English explorers entered Canada.

Note x. The French explorer working in Canada for France at that time was Champlain. It has been said that While Champlain was in the region of Lake Champlain 1609, Henry Hudson was but a short distance away..on the Hudson River.

3. He established England's claim to the land around Hudson and James Bay.....1610-11.

11. THE FOUNDING OF THE GREAT COMPANY.

2. THE HUDSON BAY COMPANY 1670.

(a) THE MEN DIRECTLY ASSOCIATED WITH THE FOUNDING OF THE COMPANY

1.Pierre Esprit Radisson.

2.Medard Chouart des Groseilliers.

x.They were two French-Canadian fur-traders.

(b) RADISSON 1635-1710. AND GROSEILLIERS 1621-1696

1.He was born in Paris, and came to Canada in 1651. He settled at Three Rivers, and was captured by the Iroquois in 1652 when he was seventeen years of age. He was carried off to their country and was so successful in running the gauntlet that he won their admiration by his courage and endurance. He was adopted by the tribe, and attempted to escape; but was recaptured and taken back. In 1653, he succeeded in escaping to the Dutch at Albany. From there he went to France, and later returned to Canada.

(c) GROSEILLIERS 1621-1696.

1.He was born in France about 1621, and came to Canada in 1642. He had spent some time as a lay assistant to the Jesuits in the Huron country, but had returned to Three Rivers in 1646. ~~He married the sister of Radisson, and in 1654~~ Through marriage, he was a brother-in-law of Radisson. He became interested in the Fur-Trade.

(d) THE EXPLORATIONS AND TREATMENT ACCORDED THEM BY THR FRENCH GOV.

1. In 1658, they journeyed west-ward, and explored south of Lake Superior and to the west. They met numerous tribes of Indians and learned,as they were returning by the north shore of Lake Superior,that there were better furs to be obtained farther north. In 1660, they descended the Ottawa River on their way to Quebec and saw the result of the stand made by Adam Dollard and his companions at the foot of the Long Sault Rapids.

In 1661, they planned to make another expedition but the Governor insisted that he be allowed to share in their profits, and they left without his license. That meant that they continued as free-traders.

On this journey, they explored the region to the north of Lake Superior. They braved the dangers from Indians, from cold and fromstarvation.They penetrated as far as James Bay, and on their return took with them a cargo of valuable furs.

They were welcomed at Montreal, 1663 but were arrested at Quebec and the Governor seized so many of their furs that barely one-half tenth was left. (The Governor fined them $20,000 ; $30,000 ; $70,000;;;; and left them approximately $230,000) Groselliers was imprisoned.

They then went to France to gain redress, but were disappointed.

They then offered their services to the English in the

New England States. Colonel Cartwright persuaded them to visit England Charles the Second, King of England, granted them permission to make an expedition to the region of Hudson Bay.

(e) THE EXPEDITION TO THE REGION OF HUDSON BAY FOR THE ENGLISH.

1. Prince Rupert, the cousin of the King, induced several men about the court to join with him in fitting out an expedition. In 1668 the Eaglet, under Radisson; and the Nonsuch under Groselliers, were sent out. The Eaglet was compelled to return; but the Nonsuch continued and visited the region of Hudson Bay. In the spring they returned with a cargo of furs.

Application was then made to the King for a charter to form a trading company. (The charter was granted in 1670; and the company was formed. It consisted of Prince Rupert and seventeen others. It was known as " THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF ADVENTURERS OF ENGLAND TRADING INTO HUDSON BAY." Prince Rupert was the first Governor.)

(f) THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY. 1670.

1. The charter granted to Prince Rupert and his companions in 1670, created the Hudson's Bay Company. It was granted .....

1. The sole right to trade in all the lands watered by the streams flowing into the Bay.
2. The sole right to rule in these lands.
3. A tract of over One Million square miles.
4. The right to erect buildings, and fortifications.
5. The right to make laws and to administer justice.

(h) THE PARTS PLAYED BY RADISSON AND GROSEILLIERS AFTER 1670.

1. In 1674, they withdrew their support because they felt that they were not getting their fair share of the profits. They returned to the service of the French.

2. In 1682, Radisson captured one of the Posts, and also an English vessel loaded with furs. He took it to Quebec, but La Barre released it to the English.

3. In 1683, Radisson was persuaded to return to the service of the English. Groseilliers refused, and returned to Three Rivers.

4. Changing conditions in England resulted in Radisson being neglected, and in the end, he died in poverty.

(g) THE FRENCH CLAIM TO THE REGION AROUND HUDSON BAY.

1. Although England's claim was established to the region in 1610, by Henry Hudson, the French claimed that it was part of Canada, and as a result belonged to France.

2. In 1672, Father Albanel, a Jesuit Priest visited the shores of James Bay, and formally claimed the surrounding country for the King of France.

3. Radisson persuaded Frontenac to form a Company..The Company of the North, which claimed the right to trade in that region. This Co. also claimed the Territory.

(i) THE RESULTS OF THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE GREAT COMPANY.

1. The English became established in the north of Canada.

2. The fruit of french toil and exploration was reaped by the English.

3. The explorers associated with its establishment helped to unravel the mysteries of the vast interior of Canada.

4. It was one of the most important commercial ventures in the world.

5. Forty years of fighting occurred between the English and the French regarding the possession of the territory.

6. It has contributed a great deal to the development and the exploration of Canada.

7. Numerous trading posts were established on the shores of Hudson Bay...Fort Charles, Hayes Island, Albany River, Moose River Severn, Nelson.

8. It has become one of the greatest trading corporations of modern times, and its work continues in a modified way at the present time.

SUMMARY.

2. THE HUDSON BAY COMPANY.1670.

(a) THE MEN DIRECTLY ASSOCIATED WITH THE FOUNDING OF THE COMPANY.

1. Radisson.

2. Groseilliers.

1. They were French-Canadian fur-traders.

2. Brothers-in-law.

(b) THE EXPLORATIONS MADE BY THEM.

1. South of Lake Superior.

2. Western Canada.

3. North of Lake Superior.

4. The region around Hudson and James Bay.

(c) The treatment accorded them by the French Governor.

1. He refused to grant them a license unless they would agree to giving him a goodly share of their profits.

2. They became free-traders.

3. Their goods were seized when they returned to Quebec.

4. They could not get redress in France.

(d) THEIR SERVICE WITH THE ENGLISH.

1. Charles 11. of England gave them permission to make an expedition.

2. Prince Rupert was instrumental in outfitting the Eaglet and the Nonsuch.

3. The expedition was successful

4. It resulted in the formation of the Company of H. Bay

(e) The Hudson's Bay Company 1670.

1.A charter was granted in 1670.

2.The Company consisted of Prince Rupert and seventeen others.

3. It was named " THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF ADVENTURERS OF ENGLAND TRADING INTO HUDSON BAY."

4.Prince Rupert was the first Governor.

5. The Charter granted the Company..

1. The sole right to trade in all the lands watered by streams flowing into the Bay.

2.The sole right to rule those lands.

3. The territory extended from Labrador to the Rocky mountains of over One Million square miles.

4.The right to erect buildings and fortifications.

5.The right to make laws and to administer justice.

(f)THE FRENCH CLAIM TO THE REGION AROUND HUDSON BAY.

1.Although England's claim was established in 1610 by Hudson, the French claimed that it was part of Canada, and as a result belonged to France.

2.In 1672, Father Albanel visited the shores of James Bay and claimed the surrounding country for the King of France.

3. Radisson persuaded Frontenac to form The Company of the Nort which claimed the territory, and the right to trade in that region.

*(This resulted in forty years of fighting).

(g) THE PARTS PLAYED BY RADISSON AND GROSEILLIERS AFTER1670).

1.In 1674, they withdrew because they felt that they were not receiving their share of the profits. They returned to Service of Fran

2.In 1682, Radisson captured one of the English posts, and a loaded vessel. He took it to Quebec, but La Barre turned it over to the English.

3.In 1683, Radisson was persuaded to return to the service of the English. Groseilliers refused, and returned to Three Rivers.

4. Radisson held positions in the company in England, but as time went on, the (Company) management changed hands, and he was forgotten.

(h) THE RESULTS (OF THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY.

1.The English became established in the North of Canada.

2.The fruit of French toil and exploration was reaped by Eng.

3.In-formation was gleaned obtained about the interior north of Canada.

4.It was one of the most important commercial ventures in histor

5.Forty years of fighting resulted between the Eng. and French

6.It has contributed to the development of Canada.

7.Trading posts were established on in the shores far north of the Bay.

8.It has become one of the greatest trading corporations of modern times, and its work continues in a modified way even at the present time.

111. THE ACADIANS.

(A) THE REGION EMBRACED WAS:..

The Maritime Provinces ..New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and Prince Edward Island. About 1603, de Monts was in charge of Acadia which extended from the fortieth to the forty-sixth degree of north Latitude. The limits of Acadia were later reduced, but the boundaries became a cause for contention between England and France.

(b) THE ATTEMPTS TO SETTLE ACADIA.

In 1604, the first settlemnet was established on the Island of St. Croix. In 1605, it was transferred to Port Royal in Nova Scotia. In 1607 it was abandoned.

In 1610, Poutrincourt established a new settlement at Port Royal. This was destroyed by the English under Argall in 1613.

In 1621, James 1. granted the territory of Acadia, under the name of Nova Scotia, to Sir William Alexander. This grant was renewed in 1625 by Charles 1. A small Scottish settlement was established at Port Royal by Alexander.

In 1632, Acadia was restored to the French by the Treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, and new settlers were brought out from France. These were the first permanent settlers, and from them, the Acadians of to-day are descended. Other French colonists were brought out by Charnisay from 1639 to 1649; and by La Tour between 1651 and 1658

The first general census taken in 1671 showed that there were 392 persons in Acadia. In 1686, there were 885 persons. In 1693, there 1018 people.

In 1713, Acadia was ceded to the British, and had a population of 2500.

(c) ACADIA FROM 1713 to 1755.

Between 1713 and 1745, a number of French families moved to Prince Edward Island and Cape Breton Island. In 1749, when the English established Halifax, there were about 12500 Acadians in the province. Between 1749 and 1755, there was a further increase of settlers. In 1755, there were about 10,000 Acadians. Including those on the The Island of Cape Breton, and in Prince Edward Island, there were about 16,000 inhabitants in 1755.

(d) THE EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS 1755.

Governor Lawrence in 1755, with the advice of his Council, but without consulting the Home Government, decided that the Acadian must be deported from Nova Scotia.The reason for this decision was the obstinate refusal of the Acadians to take the Oath of Allegiance and the conviction of the Governor that the safety of the colony

depended upon their expulsion.

In September 1755, all preparations had been made. Monckton at Beausejours; Winslow at Grand Pre; Murray at Piziquid; and Handfield at Annapolis, seized the inhabitants and held them prisoners until the arrival of the transport and provision ships. These were delayed, and the final embarkation did not take place until late in December.

A number of Acadians escaped to the woods. Some went to Miramichi, and later to Chaleur Bay. Others went to Prince Edward Island and Cape Breton Island; and quite a number found their way to the St. John River, and to the Province of Quebec.

Between six and seven thousand Acadians were deported. They were distributed among the British colonies along the Atlantic Sea-Board. Families were broken, and in general, the Acadians were harshly treated.

In 1763, some hired vessels and sailed to Miquelon, and in 1767 and following years they returned gradually to their Acadian homes. Others went directly to Nova Scotia in 1766, as there was no longer any reason for their exclusion. Others went north to Quebec, or south to Louisiana.

The story of these exiles has been forcefully told by the American Poet, HENRY LONGFELLOW in the famous poem..EVANGELINE.

The expulsion of the Acadians was one of the tragedies of North American History.

SUMMARY.

(A) THE REGION EMBRACED WAS:-

1.The Maritime Province of New Brunswick and Nova Scotia,

(b) THE ATTEMPTS TO SETTLE ACADIA and associated particulars.

FRENCH.	ENGLISH.
1.1604----The first settlement was established on St. Croix Island. (De Monts)	
2.1605----It was moved to the mainland of Nova Scotia, and was established at Port Royal.	
3.1607----It was abandoned.	
4.1610----Poutrincourt re established it on the site of Port Royal.	
	1.1613----Port Royal was captured by the English under Argall
	2.1621----Acadia was granted to Sir

FRENCH	ENGLISH
	William Alexander. He established a colony on the site of Port Royal.
5.1632----It was handed back to the French by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye.	
	3.1654---Port Royal was captured by the English for Oliver Cromwell..and it was under British rule for 13 years
6.1667----It was handed back to the French.In 1671, the population was 392. In 1686-it was885.	4.1690----Port Royal was captured by the English.
7.1690----It was recaptured by the French.In 1693, the population was 1018	5.1710----It was captured by the British, and by the Treaty of Utrecht, 1713, Acadia became a British Possession. Port Royal was renamed Annapolis Royal in honour of Queen Anne.

omit

(c)ACADIA FROM 1713 to 1755.

1. Between 1713 and 1745, a number of French moved to Prince Edward Island and Cape Breton Island.
2. In 1749, when the British established Halifax, there were 12,500 Acadians in the Provinces.
3. Between 1749 and 1755 there were about 10,000Acadians.

(d)THE EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS 1755.

I.REASONS FOR THE EXPULSION.

1.Agents from France and Quebec kept the Acadians hostile to the English.

2.The French at Louisburg paid for English scalps

3.The French claimed that the ceded Acadia ended with the Isthmus of Chignecto.

4. The Acadians refused to take the Oath of Allegiance to the British.

5.War was imminent, and the English feared Treachery.

6.The belief that the expulsion of the Acadians was necessary for the military safety of Nova Scotia.

2. THE EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS...1755.

In 1755, the Acadian stronghold, Beausejours, fell into the hands of the British, This was followed by an order from Governor Lawrence that some six thousand Acadians were to be deported. This move did not meet the whole-hearted support of the lieutenants, but they had to carry out orders.

Governor Lawrence did not consult the Home Government, but felt that the obstinate refusal of the Acadians to take the OATH OF ALLEGIANCE to the British warranted the deportation as he felt that the safety of the colony depended on the removal of the Acadians.

In September 1755, all preparations had been made. Monckton was at Beausejour; Winslow was at Grand Pre; Murray was at Piziquid; and Handfield was at Annapolis. They seized or herded the inhabitants together and kept them prisoners awaiting the arrival of the transport and provision ships. These were delayed, and the final sailing did not take place until late December.

Several thousand Acadians escaped, and went to Prince Edward Island, Cape Breton Island, Chaleur Bay, France, and Quebec. The whole of the Acadian people were driven from their homes and the land of Acadia became a solitude.

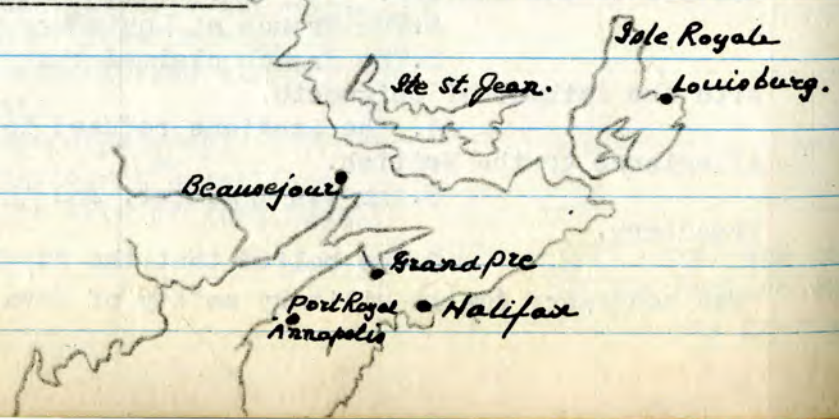
The exiles were scattered among the English Colonists on the Atlantic Sea-board, from Massachusetts to Carolina. In many cases families were separated. They were not welcomed by the Colonists, and many became objects of Charity. Some of the found their way back to Nova Scotia. Some went south to the Colony of Louisiana, some went to France, some went to Quebec; and some were absorbed in the New England colonies.

✓ The story of these unfortunate exiles has been movingly told by the American Poet, HENRY LONGFELLOW, in the famous poem, EVANGELINE.

The Expulsion of the Acadians is one of the Tragedies of North American History.

The British Conquest of Canada was marred by the harsh and cruel proceedings, and has always meant that the French in Canada held the treatment of the Acadians against the British.

(e) A SKETCH MAP OF ACADIA.



CAPREOL PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATE OR ABSENT

No.

Name

Class

Date

Days Half Days

Late

Reason

Principal

The acadians were herded together and kept prisoners until the vessels arrived to take them away. This represents the acadian women driven from their homes and Acadia laid waste.

In 1755 Gov. L issued an order for the deportation of 6000 Acadians. He did not consult the Home Government; and did not have the full support of his Officers; but it was felt that the refusal of the Acadians to take the Oath of allegiance warranted their deportation.

CAPREOL PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATE OR ABSENT

No.....

Name.....

Class.....

Date.....

Days..... Half Days.....

Late.....

Reason.....

.....

Principal.

The exiles were
recently removed
the English Colonists
on the attitude labour
Immigrants families
were prepared, and
they were
by the Colonists

CANADIAN HISTORY EASTER EXAMINATION OUTLINE.

I. THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT.

4. a. Two outstanding reasons for the struggle for Responsible Government.....
   1. The growth of democracy.
   2. The introduction of the democratic spirit into Canada.
   3. The repressive measures used by the government.
   4. The failure of the existing government to meet and satisfy the demands of the people.
   5. The attitude of the Colonial Office toward the demands for self-government.

2. b. The name given to the ruling class in Upper Canada was:-
   1. The Family Compact.

4. c. Two abuses that were charged to this class were:-
   1. Large tracts of land were granted to the friends of men in power.
   2. Corruption was allowed to go unpunished.
   3. Exorbitant salaries were paid to officials.
   4. The Anglican Church was favoured in the matter of the Clergy Reserves.
   5. The Family Compact was highly abusive in its treatment of its opponents.

2. d. The name given to the ruling class in Lower Canada was:-
   1. The Scotch Party.....The Family Clique.

2. e. The engagement in Upper Canada during the struggle of 1837-8 was:-
   1. Montgomery's Tavern.

6. f. Three engagements in Lower Canada during this struggle were:-
   1. St. Dennis.
   2. St. Charles.
   3. St. Eustache

6. g. Three results of this struggle for Responsible Government were:-
   1. The attention of the British Parliament was drawn to the defects or the abuses of the Government in Canada.
   2. Lives were lost and property was damaged.
   3. The British Government sent out Lord Durham as Governor-General to inquire into the causes of the rebellion, and to make suggestions for improving the government of Canada.
   4. The people were allowed a greater voice in the control of their own affairs and this paved the way for the establishment of Responsible Government.

6 h. Three recommendations made by Lord Durham in his report were:-
   1. The union of the two provinces of Upper and Lower Canada.
   2. The establishment of one parliament for the united provinces.
   3. The extinction of the French Nationality by Anglicizing them and making them forget that they were French by impressing upon them their Canadian Citizenship.
   4. The Granting of Responsible Government in all matters that did not conflict with imperial interests.
   5. The establishment of Party Government. (The Executive Council and the Cabinet was to be made responsible to the people, and was to hold office only so long as it had the support of the majority of the Legislature.)
   6. The Revenue was to be under the controlof the Assembly, and an amount voted to carry on the government--Estimates..A Permanent Civil List was to be established. The Assembly was to provide for the payment of judges and other officials.

7.Members were to be elected to Parliament according to population.
8.The establishment of Municipal Government which was to serve as a training school for future statesmen.
9.The building of highways, railroads, and canals. An Intercolonial Railroad that was to bind all parts of British North America together in commerce and ideals.
10.All of the provinces were to be united as soon as possible.
11.Educational institutions were to be encouraged.
12.Trade within the country, and with outside markets was to be encouraged.
13.English was to be the only official language.

6. i.Three importances of Lord Durham's Report were:-
1.It was the first report which spoke in glowing terms of Canada.
2.It ushered in a new era in Canadian History.
3.It is considered one of the great documents in Canadian Constitutional History.

6. j.Three results of the Act of Union Were:-
1.The Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united.
2.The defects of the Constitutional Act in-so-far as the government, land grants, division of the Clergy Reserves, and the Revenue were ~~concerned~~.remedied.
3.The Assembly gained control of the Revenue.
4. The First step toward Responsible Government was taken.

1. k.Responsible Government was finally established in:-
1.1849.

1. l.The Governor-General then was:-
1.Lord Elgin.

11.THE FIRST RAILROAD BUILDERS.

2. a.The pioneer Rairoad Builder in Canada was:-
1.Alexander Tilloch Galt.

2. b.The Land Company with which he was associated was:-
1.The British American Land Company.

6. c.Three of the later results of the building of railroads were:-
1.The railway made Canada a Nation.
2.It brought Canada out of the pioneer stage by opening up interprovincial and international trade on a scale not dreamt of before.
3.It broke down the barriers of distance between the British Provinces in North America, and thus made their union possible.
4.It made possible the acquisition and the settlement of the great North West, by Canada.
5.It enabled Canadians to grasp the vision of the present Dominion Of Canada.

LLL.THE GOLD COLONY.

4. a.Two other names for the Gold Colony were:-
1.New Caledonia.
2.British Columbia.

b

4 b.The Fur-trading Companies that were interested in the early development of the region were:-

1.The North-West Company.
2.The Hudson's Bay Company.

2. c.The first Governor of the Gold Colony after it was made a Crown Colony by Great Britain was:-
1.Sir James Douglas.

1V CONFEDERATION

10. a.Five Steps leading to Confederation were:-
1..1783-4..U.E.L...The United Empire Loyalists brought ideas of Responsible Government with them when they came to Canada..1783-4.
2..1791....The Constitutional Act..A Legislative Assembly was established. It was to represent the people.
3..1791-1840.....There was a demand for Responsible Government.
4..1840....The Act of Union.Responsible Government was established in name but not in actual fact.
5..1849.....Responsible Government was established by Lord Elgin by signing the Rebellion Losses Bill.
6.1849-1864.....The demand for representation in parliament according to population.(This caused a political deadlock and resulted in the formation of coalition governments.
7.1865-6.....The cancellation of the Reciprocity Treaty by the U.S.A. The Americans felt that Canada had reaped the greatest bene during the American Civil War. It then became necessary for Canada to look for other markets, and this resulted in the removal of the interprovincial barriers, and in the establishement of a COMMERCIAL UNION of the Canadian Provinces.)
8.1775...1866.....1775-6The Americans tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth Colony in the American Union. The war of 1812; The Rebellion of 1837-8; The American Civil War 1861-5; The Fenian Raids of 1866...showed the necessity of organized Military Protection.
9.1864.....The Charlottetown Conference where the question of Union was discussed.
10.1864.....The Quebec Conference where plans were made for the union of all of the Canadian Provinces.
11.1866.....The London Conference where the scheme of Union was drawn up.

6. b.Three of the leaders in the Confederation Movement were:-
1.Sir John A. Macdonald.
2.George Brown
3.George E.Cartier.
4.Leonard Tilley.
5.Dr. Charles Tupper.
6.Thomas D'Arcy McGee
7.Alexander Tilloch Galt.

3. c.The meaning of Confederation...
Confederation was a union of the individual Canadian Provinces under one Federal or Dominion Government for mutual support in connection with issues which concerned all of the provinces, and each province was to have a government to look after local or Provincial affairs.

4.

3 e. Three things under the control of the Dominion Government are:-

1.Tariffs
2.Postal Matters.
3.Militia
4.Criminal Law.
5.Penitentiaries
6.Trade and Commerce.
7.Navigatioha and shipping
8.Currency and coinage
9.Banking
10.Patents and Copyrights.
11.Naturalization
12.Indians
13.Weights and measures
14.App't Lieut-Gov.
15.App't of Judges.

3. f.Three things under the control of Provincial Governments. are:-

1.Education
2.Municipal Government
3.Jails and Asylums
4.Enforcement of Law.
5.Local affairs.
12.Sale of Liquor.
6.Direct taxation
7.Management and sale of lands.
8.Timber
9.Provincial hospitals
10.Administration of justice
11.Licenses

4 d.Two reasons for honouring the Fathers of Confederation are:-

1.They united the British North American Provinces into one permanent Dominion which is distinguished and prosperous self-governing state of the British Empire.
2.They formed the constitution which was unlike any that had been p previously organized, and which had solved the problem of a central government for the entire Dominion while each Province had a parliament to look after its local affairs.
3.They forsook strong party differences, and forgot personal ambitions while they worked in the interests of the Dominion and the welfare of the British Empire.
4.They showed a wisdom and a patriotism which was far in advance of the spirit of the day, and created a new state which was one of the most notable achievements of the nineteenth century.
5.They believed in the future of Canada and refused to listen to the pessimistic predictions of all who lacked faith and courage.

2. g.The leader of the Anti-Confederation League was:-

1.Joseph Howe.

h.The outstanding result of the British North America Act which resulted from the
3. agitation of George Brown was:-

1.Representation in Parliament according to Population was established.

"Canadian History"

Outline

Easter Examination

1936.

IV. THE HERO OF QUEBEC.

(A) THE DIRECTOR OF THE MOVEMENTS OF THE BRITISH ARMY IN AMERICA WAS:
William Pitt, The Great War Minister In England.

(B) HIS AIM WAS:
To launch an expedition against Quebec that would wrest Canada from the French.

(C) THE COMMANDER CHOSEN FOR THE TASK WAS:
James Wolfe.

He was a young man with a genius for warfare. He had entered the army, as a volunteer, at the age of thirteen. He saw service in Germany; in Scotland; in Holland; and in France. He rose rapidly in rank, and was well liked by his men. He became known as 'THE SOLDIER'S FRIEND'.

In 1758, he commanded ~~the~~ a brigade that was sen against Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island. It was chiefly as a result of his efforts that Louisburg was captured.

In 1759, he set sail from England with a free hand in choosing his brigadiers and staff-officers. His army consist ed of over 9000 picked men; and he was supported by the largest flee which had hitherto crossed the Atlantic.

The commander of the the fleet was Admiral Saunders.

On June 26, 1759, Wolfe with Admiral Saunders in charge of the fleet landed at the Island of Orleans with 170 ships in all. There were 125 large vessels, 152 small vessels, and 27,000 men.

(a) The Siege of Quebec: For the first two months he attempted to capture the city by shelling and local attacks. On July 30 a battle fought on the Beauport shore proved unsuccessful. Beginning on July 18, ship after ship ran the gauntlet of French shell fire from Quebec un til by September 6, Wolfe, with some 20 ships, 4000 men, and seven months provisions, was safely up the St. Lawrence.

On September 13 at two o'clock in the morning Wolfe and his army floated down the river from Cap Rouge to Wolfe's Cove. The men climbed the heights and by ten o'clock the Battle of The Plains of Abraham had begun.

Both Wolfe and Montcalm died of wounds.

The French retreated behind the walls of Quebec but on September 18, De Ramezay gave up the city.

(D) THE REASONS FOR WOLFE'S SUCCESS (IN PART) WERE:
The information relayed to him by MAJOR PATRICK MacKELLAR, the Secret Service man who had been in Quebec was such that Wolfe knew the particulars of the defence of the City.

The Orders given by Montcalm for a regiment of French Regulars to be stationed there had been countermanded by Vaudreuil.

France had neglected her navy to such an extent that it wa helpless in the struggle for Canada. The Fate of Canada was determine by the sea-power of Great Britain to a large extent. So long as the British fleet commanded the waters between Canada and the Old World it was sure to win sooner or later.

(E) MILITARY RULE.

For four years after the British Conquest, Canada was under the Military rule of Murray and the British officers who acted with sympathy and consideration. In the Districts of Three Rivers and Montreal justice was administered by the French-Canadian officers of militia.

In 1763, the Peace of Paris brought this undecided period to a close by formally ceding Canada to Great Britain.

(F) GENERAL JAMES MURRAY.

He was the commander of the garrison at Quebec after the capture in 1759, He led the forces against Montreal, in 1759, and captured it from Vaudreuil, the last Governor of New France.

In 1760, he was left in charge of Quebec, and defended it against the attack made by the French under Levis. The French withdre with the arrival of the British Fleet, and Quebec remained a British possession.

He was made Military Governor of Canada in 1760, and tried to protect the French Settlers from the aggression of the English Traders. He opposed a legislature that was entirely British, governing French Canada, and wished to give recognition to the French.

He favoured the soldiers in the quarrels between them and the civilian population..traders.

He was made civil Governor of Canada 1763-1766. His appointment as civil governor 1763 was opposed by the British Traders, and his recall was due to their demands..1766.

SUMMARY.

(A) THE DIRECTOR OF THE BRITISH ARMY IN AMERICA DURING THE CONQUEST WAS

William Pitt, The Great War Minister of England.

A.V (B) HIS AIM WAS:

To launch an expedition against Quebec that would wrest Canada from the French.

(C) THE OFFICERS SENT TO AMERICA WERE:

1. Amherst.
2. Wolfe.

(D) THE COMMANDER IN CHARGE OF THE CAPTURE OF LOUISBURG WAS:
Wolfe.

(E) THE COMMANDER CHOSEN FOR THE TASK OF CONQUERING CANADA WAS:
Wolfe.

(F) THE SIEGE OF QUEBEC 1759.

In 1759, Wolfe set sail from England with an army of over 9000 men. The fleet was in charge of Admiral Saunders. Reinforcements were obtained in America, and meant that his army consisted of 27,000 men.

The first two months of the siege were spent trying to capture the city by shelling and local attacks. An attack made on the Beauport Shore was unsuccessful, and the British suffered a defeat.

Under the protection of the cannonade from Point Levis, Wolfe moved some 20 ships, 4000 men, and seven months provisions up the St. Lawrence. These floated down to Wolfe's Cove under cover of the darkness. They deceived the sentinel; climbed the Height, and took possession of the Plains of Abraham. They were able to do this because Vaudreuil, the Governor, had countermanded Montcalm's order which had placed troops to defend that point.

The French under the leadership of Montcalm advanced to attack before reinforcements arrived to help them. The French were defeated in the Battle; both Wolfe and Montcalm were killed; and Quebec capitulated.

B✓ (G) THE REASONS (IN PART) FOR WOLFE'S SUCCESS WERE:

1. The information relayed to him by Major Patrick MacKellar the Secret Service agent who had been in Quebec, was such that Wolfe knew the particulars of the defence of the City.

2. The Orders given by Montcalm for a regiment of French Regulars to be stationed on the plains of abraham there had been countermanded by Vaudreuil.

3. France had neglected her navy to such an extent that it was helpless in the struggle for Canada. The fate of Canada was determined by the sea-power of Great Britain to a large extent. So long as the British Fleet commanded the waters between Canada and the Old World, it was sure to win sooner or later.

(H) MILITARY RULE IN CANADA. 1759-1763.

1. General Murray was placed in charge.
2. It lasted for a period of four years..1759-1763.
3. The interests of the French were protected.
4. He favoured giving the French a share in the government.
5. Quarrels were common between the soldiers and traders.

(I) CIVIL GOVERNMENT IN CANADA 1763-1766.

1. Murray was appointed Civil Governor 1763, and held office until he was recalled in 1766.

2. The British Traders opposed his appointment 1763.

3. He was recalled at their demand in 1766.

V. THE STRUGGLE FOR THE FOURTEENTH COLONY.

V. SIR GUY ~~CARLETON~~. CARLETON. -1766-1768 - 1774 - 1776 - 1783-4 - 1786 - 1796

He took charge of the Canadian Government on the withdrawal of General Murray in 1766, and was made Governor in 1768.

He was a fellow soldier, and an intimate friend of Wolfe. He was tolerant, honest, honourable; possessed of decision and a high sense of duty; and was stiff and formal.

His policy toward the French was such that (he tried to make them loyal British Subjects by fair and just treatment; by tolerance toward their religion; by payment for produce in gold and silver instead of worthless paper money; by preventing unworthy officials extorting unjust fees from the French; and by giving up his fees altogether.

His policy towards the traders was such that he despised them as inferior to soldiers and gentlemen; and objected to a legislature composed solely of British and Protestants.

His governorship was marked by the following important historical incidents and occurrences.

6. HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED.

DATE	OCCURRENCE.
1. 1774-----	(He was instrumental in having the Quebec Act passed) to please the French-Canadians so that they would become loyal British Subjects, and so that they would not join with the revolting Americans who were trying to gain their Independence. The Quebec Act allowed the French Civil Law, Religious Liberty, and extended the boundaries of Quebec
2.1775-6---	(He defended Canada against the attack made by the Americans during the Revolution). The Americans succeedded in capturing Montreal, but Carleton successfully defended Quebec.
3. 1776----	He destroyed the American Fleet on Lake Champlain
4.1783-4---	He assisted the United Empire Loyalists to come to Canada, and to settle in the country.
5.1791-----	He was instrumental in having the Constitutional Act passed). This Act granted special privileges to the English and the French.

Sir Guy Carleton was the gover
of Canada 1768 until 1777,
and was Gov. Gen. of Canada
1791 - 1796

His governorship was marked
by ~~the follow~~ numerous
important historical
incidents and occurrences

```
        69.86
75 ) 5240
     450 ×
     ----
      740
      675
      ----
       650
       600
       ----
        500
        450
        ---
```

```
        59.06
75 ) 4430.
     375 ×
     ----
      680
      675
      ----
        500
```

```
        76.66
75 ) 5750
     525 ×
     ----
      500
      450
      ----
       500
       450
       ---
        500
```

7. THE QUEBEC ACT.....1774.

(A) THE DATE WAS:
1774.

(B) THE REASONS FOR IT BEING PASSED WERE:-

1. The British wanted to please the French-Canadians so that they would remain in the country, and assist in the development of the country; and so that they would remain loyal to the British, and not join with the revolting Americans who were trying to get their Independence.

2 To remedy some of the existing conditions in Canada.

(C) THE PROVISIONS OF THE QUEBEC ACT WERE:

1. French Civil Law was established.
2. British Criminal Law was established.
3. Roman Catholics were permitted to hold public Offices.
4. The Roman Catholic Clergy were permitted to collect tithes and other accustomed dues from their own people.
5. The boundaries of Quebec were to be:-
   a. N.-The Hudson Bay Slope.
   b. E.-Labrador and the Atlantic Ocean.
   c. S.-The Ohio River.
   d. W.-The Mississippi River.
6. The Governor was to be assisted by a Council of from seventeen to twenty-three members, appointed by the British Crown; and the majority of them were to be of British Birth.

Teacher's note (D) EXPLANATORY NOTES REGARDING THE ABOVE PROVISIONS:

1. FRENCH CIVIL LAW WAS ESTABLISHED.

1. The seigneurs were allowed to hold their land under the old feudal rights, as they had before the conquest.

2. BRITISH CRIMINAL LAW WAS ESTABLISHED.

1. Torture was forbidden, and trial by Jury was granted.

3&4. THE ROMAN CATHOLIC CHURCH HAD THE SAME RIGHTS AS HAD BEEN CONCEDED BY FRANCE.

1. The priest could collect his tithe.
2. Money that was voted for church buildings in any Parish could be levied as a tax on all of the Parishioners.

5. THE BOUNDARIES OF QUEBEC.

1. The government of Quebec was given jurisdiction over the whole region north of the Ohio River, and as far west as the Mississippi River.

Teacher's note. (E) THE OPPOSITION TO THE QUEBEC ACT.

1. BY THE ENGLISH COLONISTS.

1. They did not want a Catholic country established.
2. They objected to the annexation of the Ohio region to Quebec.
3. They thought that a colony without self-government threatened their own rights in this particular

2. BY THE FRENCH HABITANTS.

1. They lacked enthusiasm in connection with the Act because it established the right of the seigneur, and the right of the church.

3. BY THE ENGLISH TRADERS.

1. It established French Laws and customs, and was too kind to the conquered people.

(F) THE RESULTS OF THE QUEBEC ACT WERE:

1. IT ESTABLISHED:

1. The Government of Canada under British rule.
2. The good-will of the French-Canadians.
3. The displeasure of the British conquerors.
4. An extension of the Boundaries of Canada.
5. The granting of important privileges to the Roman Catholic Church which resulted in its support of British supremacy in Canada.
6. "THE CHARTER OF LIBERTIES" for the French-Canadians people, because it placed the two races in Canada on an equal footing.

2. It did not establish - an assembly.

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING THE QUEBEC ACT.

From 1763 for over ten years the government of Canada was that of a ROYAL PROCLAMATION issued in 1763, but it was so indefinite, misunderstood or misinterpreted that much confusion and dissatisfaction arose.

The British merchants in the Colony were the most outspoken. The Royal Proclamation promised them English Laws, and institutions, and an Assembly similar to those in the English Colonies to the south. These had not been granted and the arbitrary power of the Governor was much disliked. These merchants wanted a parliament elected by about 400 English Protestants Voters but controlling the destinies of 60,000 French Roman Catholics.

Governor Murray opposed the demands of the minority--the British in Canada, and he was recalled. Governor Carleton was then appointed, but he too was of the same mind as Murray.

The French Habitants also had their troubles. No one knew what laws were in force, and their affairs became sadly confused. The Quebec Act was passed to remedy some of these conditions. Carleton's influence was strongly on the side of the French who became so well pleased with with the Act that from that day to this, though variously

tempted, they have adhered to British institutions and connections.

In 1774, the Quebec Act was passed. THERE WAS NO PROMISE OF AN ASSEMBLY. The arbitrary government by a governor and a nominated Council was to continue. Roman Catholics were then eligible for appointment to this council. English Criminal Law was introduced into Canada. French Civil Law was to continue. The Roman Catholic Church received power to collect tithes from the Habitants and the Peasants. The Boundaries of the Province were extended to include what is now known as Ontario, Ohio, Michigan, Wisconsin, Illinois and Minnesota. This was the only concession to the Canadian merchants engaged in the fur-trade, and gave them an advantage over the fur-traders to the south.

The English Colonists in America were on the eve of revolution and separation from Britain. They regarded the extension of the Boundaries of Quebec as a threat to them. It deprived them of their accustomed rights in the fur-trade in these productive territories, and an army might be recruited against them there. This was one of the causes of the American Revolution.

8. THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION. 1775-6...1783.

(A) THE CAUSES WERE.

1. The obstinacy and the stubbornness of George 111. King of England, and his Prime Minister, Lord North.

2. The imposing of the tax on the Colonies to help pay the debt that was incurred by the Seven Years' War. (England was deeply in debt after the long war, and the taxes there were high, and it was felt that the colonies should be taxed to help pay for the army that helped in America.)

3. The Americans objected to ~~pay~~ the tax because they did not have a representative in the British Parliament. (The tax was known as the Stamp Act. 1765) It was repealed.

4. The placing of Duties on commodities entering the American Colonies from Great Britain angered them as they knew that the Mother Country was trying to force them to trade with Great Britain only, and was trying to collect the tax in that way. (These were repealed with the exception of the duty on Tea.)

5. The feeling (on the part of the Americans) that the French-Canadians could be persuaded to join with them.

6. The refusal of the French-Canadians to join with them.

7. The objection on the part of by the Americans to the enlarging the territory of Quebec by the Quebec Act. (By this, the territory from the Ohio River to the Great Lakes was included with Quebec.)

8. The colonists no longer required protection, as the dangers of wars and raids from New France were over.

9. The Americans aimed to attack Great Britain through Canad

* The primary causes of the American Revolution could be attributed to :-

1. The conquest of Canada. 1768
2. The Quebec act. 1774
3. Taxes. 1765 - and Duties..

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING THE CAUSES.

1. THE QUEBEC ACT, 1774.

1. The American Colonists objected or disapproved of the enlargement of the boundaries of Quebec.

2. THE RESULT OF THE CONQUEST OF CANADA.

1. With the Conquest of Canada, 1763, the dangers of war and raids from New France were over. The Colonists no longer needed military protection provided by Great Britain.

3. TAXES.

1. The American Colonists were much benefitted by the Seven Years' War and the Conquest of Canada. The British Government felt that they should bear part of the cost, and taxed them in various ways. The Colonists admitted the benefits, but argued that they could not be taxed as they did not have a representative in the British Parliament. The British Government then repealed all taxes but that on tea. A ship load of taxed tea entered Boston Harbour and was thrown overboard by some colonists. One event led to another until fighting began in 1775. After many battles, some favourable to one side, and some to the other, The Peace of Versailles in 1783(just twenty years after the surrender of Canada) granted the Independence of the Thirteen Colonies later known as the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

(B) THE STAMP ACT.

1. This was an act passed by the British Parliament after the Seven Years' War, and stated that all documents, to be legal, must bear stamps sold by the British Officials to the Colony.

(C) THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 1775-6.

1. THE BATTLE OF LEXINGTON.

1. The Americans were collecting arms at Lexington, and the British troops were sent to arrest the agitators. They were attacked by the colonists.

2. The American Colonists then surprised and seized the Canadian forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on Lake Champlain.

3. Carleton's preparation against attack.

1. He had sent forces to help the British at Boston, and called for Volunteers in Canada. He found that the English Traders sympathized with the Colonies; the French Habitants were not very eager to fight for England; the Americans tried to rouse the French of Canada against England; and that the French Seigneurs and habitants were loyal to England because their rights had been upheld by the Quebec Act.

4. George Washington, the Colonial General was made the leader of the Americans, and conducted the war with great skill.

5. THE INVASION OF CaNADA.

1.A British force in Canada was dangerous to the Colonies, and the Americans believed that the French were eager for revolt.

2. An attacking party was sent against Canada under Montgomery, and an attack was made against Montreal. The Traders in Montreal favoured the Colonists; the Indians refused to join the English. On the way the Americans captured Chambly and St. John. Montreal was doomed, and Carleton left Montreal for Quebec He made his escape in disguise, and Montreal was captured by the Colonists.

3.Arnold's force reached Quebec. They had come through the forest by way of the Kennebec and the Chaudiere Rivers. He was joined by Montgomery's forces, and together they made an assault on Quebec. The siege lasted throughout the winter. Montgomery was killed, and in the spring the British fleet arrived, and the siege was raised when Arnold fled.

4. In the spring of 1776, Sir Guy Carleton retook Montreal, and then journeyed to Lake Champlain where he overtook and defeated Arnold's troops on Lake Champlain. Carleton decided not to continue to recapture Ticonderoga. For this he was censured and recalled-----1777.

5. The French in Canada had helped the revolting Americans by failing to take up arms for Great Britain, and by joining with them to a small extent.

6.THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

1. The Declaration Of Independence was declared in 1776.

7.THE CLOSE OF THE WAR.

1. The war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles (Second Treaty of Paris) in 1783, and the Americans Colonies were granted their Independence.

2. The Boundary line was traced as far west as the Lake of the Woods. (Through the Great Lakes.)

8. THE RESULTS.

1. The Americans gained their Independence.

2. The Americans did not force ~~the~~ Canada to become the fourteenth Colony in the American Union.

3. The Americans were driven out of Canada.

A GENERAL NOTE RE THE AMERICAN INVASION OF CANADA 1775-1776.

The purpose of the Americans was to attack Great Britain through Canada. The invaders thought that the French-Canadians might be persuaded to join their revolution against Great Britain.

Ethan Allen with the Vermont Militia seized Ticonderoga and Crown Point then Montgomery advanced up the Richelieu to attack Montreal. On the way he was halted by a spirited resistance on the part of the Canadians at ST. Johns and Chambly. After defeating the Canadians, he attacked Montreal. Carleton escaped only by the merest chance. Arnold advanced up the Kennebec and both of the American Generals laid siege to Quebec all through the winter. Montgomery was killed during one of the attacks, and the arrival of the British fleet in the spring put Arnold to flight.

In 1776, Montreal was retaken by Carleton, and Arnold's fleet was defeated by Carleton on Lake Champlain.

The war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles in 1783.

SUMMARY AND REVIEW OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

(A)CAUSES.

1.The narrow obstinacy and stubbornness of George 111. King of England and his Prime Minister, Lord North.

2.THE CONQUEST OF CANADA--1763.

a.As a result of the Conquest of Canada, the colonists no longer required protection as the dangers of wars and raids from the French were over, and the British Colonial Army was not needed.

b.The Conquest of Canada had incurred a considerable debt, and as England was just through with the Seven Years' War, she also had a large debt. This meant that Taxes had to be increased, and it was felt that America should help to pay at least a part.

3.TAXES.

a.It was very costly to assist in the protection of the colonies, and the British Parliament sought relief by taxing them to help pay for their own defence. The Br. Parliament requested the co-operation of the colonies in this matter, but it was impossible to get the THIRTEEN COLONIES to work together.The British Parliament then levied a tax on the Colonies.THE STAMP ACT---1765.

b.THE STAMP ACT 1765

This act was passed by the British Parliament, and stated that certain business documents, to be valid, must bear stamps that were to be sold by British Officials in all of the Colonies. The amount of taxes derived therefrom was not very great, but the Colonists objected to the Act because they did not have a representative in the British Parliament; and they felt that no legislature but their own would try to tax them. THE STAMP ACT WAS REPEALED.

c.THE DUTY ACT 1767.

This act was passed to relieve the taxpayer in England, and meant the taxing of the Colonies. By it, there were duties placed on commodities entering the colonies. The tax meant that at Boston, New York, and other places, the importers were to pay duties that were levied by the British Parliament. The colonies were angry, and this act was also repealed with the exception of the tax on tea...in order to show the colonies that the Br. Parl. had the right to tax them.

d. The above resulted in hostility between the British Parliament and the Colonies. The British Parliament were annoyed at the failure of the Colonies to assume a part of the cost of their defence; and the colonies were angry at being treated as though they had to obey a master.

e. The Tax on Tea brought matters to a head. The East India Company had a large surplus of tea which it wished to send to America for money that was urgently needed. England paid a duty of a shilling a pound on tea, but it was thought that a duty of only threepence would induce the colonies to buy heavily. In 1773 numerous ships were laden with tea, and sailed for America. The Americans decided to refuse landing to the cargoes, and upon arrival at New York, Charleston, and elsewhere, they were turned back, and were forced to put to sea. In Boston, there were complications, and it seemed likely that the tea would be landed, but some resolved to prevent it, and at night, disguised as Indians, a number of the colonists took possession of the tea ships, and emptied the tea-~~cha~~ chests into Boston Harbour. When the news reached England, a Bill was passed forbidding any trade going to Boston until amends were made. Boston refused to make amends. In a Congress at Philadelphia in 1774, the colonies agreed to work together.

4. THE QUEBEC ACT 1774.

1. In 1774, The Quebec Act was passed in Lomdon.

2. It established a Government in newly conquered Canada which denied votes to the people. The Americans felt that this was a threat that they would be governed in the same way.

3. It also annexed the Ohio region with Canada. This extension of the Boundaries of Quebec was a threat to them. It deprived them of their accustomed rights in the fur-trade, and also meant that an army might be recruited against them there.

4. It favoured the Roman Catholics.

5. The feeling the the French-Canadians could be persuaded to join the with them in their struggle against Great Britain, and their refusal to do so.

(B) THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION --1775-1783.

DATES	PARTICULARS.
1.1774---	General Gage was sent to Boston with an army. He quartered the men on the inhabitants much to their annoyance. The men of Massachusetts began to arm.
2.1775---	A British force marched out fromBoston to seize arms at Concord. The alarm was raised, and a bitter fight occurred at Lexington in which the colonists first faced British regulars.

DATES	PARTICULARS.
3.1775----	Gage was soon besieged in Boston by a Colonial Army. The Colonial Army occupied Bunker Hill overlooking Boston, and Gage recovered the position with difficulty.
4.1775---	The Congress at Philadelphia named GEORGE WASHINGTON as Commander-in-chief of the Continental Army. He desired to include Canada in the Continental Union.
5.1775---	The Colonial Army surprised and seized Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain. The Leader was Ethan Allen.
6.1775----	CARLETON'S PREPARATION AGAINST ATTACK. He had sent forces to help the British in Boston, and called for volunteers in Canada. He found that the English traders sympathised with the colonies, and that the French Habitants were not very eager to fight for England; that the Americans tried to rouse the French of Canada against England, and that the Seigneurs were loyal to England because their rights had been upheld by the Quebec Act. His force consisted of about one hundred regular soldiers, 400 bluejackets, and 35 marines. The rest was composed of 200 or more Royal Highland Emigrants, a newly organized Loyalist Regiment, and about 900 socalled militia, the majority of whom were French Canadians..These were merely the ablebodied male inhabitants of Quebec.
7.1775----	THE INVASION OF CANADA. It was felt that a British Force in Canada was dangerous to the Colonies, and the Americans believed that the French were eager for revolt. An attacking party was sent against Canada under Montgomery. On the way, the Americans captured Chambly and St. John, and then they proceeded against Montreal where the Traders were in favour of the Colonists. Carleton escaped from Montreal in a disguise shortly before the city was captured by the Americans. Arnold's force reached Quebec. They had come through the forest by way of the Kennebec and the Chaudier Rivers. He was joined by Montgomery's force, and together they made an assault on Quebec. The siege lasted throughout the winter. Montgomery was killed, and in the spring the siege was raised when the British Fleet arrived. Arnold fled, and retreated up the Richelieu in 1776.
8.1776---	Sir Guy Carleton retook Montreal, and then journeyed to Lake Champlain where he overtook Arnold's troops on Lake Champlain. He captured 12 of the 15 American ships, but

DATES	PARTICULARS.
8.Cont'd	decided against continuing to recapture Ticonderoga, and returned to Quebec. For this he was censured, and asked to be recalled in 1777. He returned to England. The Quebec Act succeeded in firmly attaching the clergy and the seigneurs to the British cause, but it failed to preserve the loyalty of the French Canadian Habitants During the crisis, the vast majority were neutral, but they sold supplies to the Americans when they received cash, but refused to sell for paper money. Their sympathies were on the winning side, and yet they were more loyal than the English at Montreal. about 300 habitants joined the Americans, and 300 the British.
9. 1776---	The Colonies renounced their Allegiance to George 111., and on July 4, 1776, the Congress made a formal Declaration of Independence.
10.1776--	The British refused to recognized the Declaration and the war continued with the British capturing New York.
11 1777--	Carleton was recalled to England.
11.1777--	The British captured Philadelphia.
12.1777---	General Burgoyne, a Britsih leader, marching south from Canada was surrounded and was obliged to surrender at Saratoga.
13. 1778--	France joined the American Colonies in their struggle against Great Britain, and later Spain and Holland also joined with them.
14.1781--	Lord Cornwallis was compelled to surrender Yorktown in Virginia, and Great Britain decided to acknowledge the Independence of the American Colonies.
15.1783--	The war was closed by the Treaty of Versailles, or the second Treaty of Paris.....1783. 1.The American Colonies were granted their Independence. 2. The Boundary line separating Canada and the United States of America was defined or fixed as follows- A line drawn along the middle of the St.Croix river from its mouth in the Bay of Fundy to its source, thence directly north to the Highlands, along the Highlands which divide those rivers emptying themselves into the St. Lawrence River from those which flow into the Atlantic Ocean, to the head of the Connecticut River, and along that river to the 45th. degree of Latitude, thence westward along the 45th degree to the St. Lawrence River, thence through the middle of the St. Lawrence, Lake

Ontario, Lake Erie, Lake Huron, and through Lake Superior to the North-western point of the Lake of the Woods, and thence west to the Mississippi River.

(C) THE RESULTS.

1. The Americans gained their Independence.

2. The Americans did not force Canada to become the Fourteenth Colony in the American Union.

3. The Americans were driven out of Canada.

4. The boundary line between the two countries was fixed, although its exact location was not definite. (It led to several disputes later.)

5. The failure of the Quebec Act was in part disclosed.

6. The revolution revealed that about one-third of the Americans were opposed to separation from the Empire, and they became known as UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS.

7. There was a depreciation in american currency.

9. THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS.

(A) THEY WERE:

1. American citizens who remained loyal to Great Britain during and after the American Revolution, and the granting of Independence to them by Great Britain.

2. About one-third of the colonists of the revolting colonies remained loyal to Great Britain during the American Revolution. Indeed large sections of the British forces were composed of these Loyalists.

3. After the Declaration of Independence in 1776, they were regarded as traitors to the Colonies, and were treated as such by the Colonists. Lord Dorchester..Sir Guy Carleton had forseen the ill-treatment to which they would be subjected and refused to leave New York State until all of the Loyalists were safely out of reach of the victorious Americans.

(B) THE TREATMENT ACCORDED TO THEM BY THE AMERICANS.

1. They were deprived of their civic rights.

2. Their property was confiscated.

3. They were watched and suspected by the American Government.

4. Many of them were tarred and feathered.

5. Many of them were ducked in horse-ponds.

6. Some of them were whipped through the streets.

7. Their houses were plundered and burned, and they were given no protection.

8. They were made to feel that they were outlaws and traitors.

9. Some of them were lynched.

They were banished from the U.S.A.

10.Some of them were punished by mobs.
11.They could not buy or sell land.
12.They could not collect debts.
13.A Constitutional Act was passed in the United States which took away their protection, and allowed that they could be assaulted.

(C) THE TIME OF THEIR COMING TO CANADA WAS:
1. 1783-4-----(1788)

(D) THEY SETTLED:
1.In the Maritime Provinces. about 35,000
2. In the Lowlands of the St. Lawrence. about 10,000
3.In Upper Canada.

Prince Ed. Is.
Nova Scotia
New Brunswick
E. Tps. of Quebec.
St. Lawrence R. U.C.
Bay of Quinte
Niagara pen
Detroit River
Brant Co.

a. A number of them went to Prince Edward Island.
b. About 25,000 went to Nova Scotia where a new Province..New Brunswick ..was created for them.
c. In the Lowlands of the St. Lawrence, in Quebec the Eastern Townships were set aside for their use.
d. In Upper Canada, they settled around the Bay of Quinte on the North Shore of Lake Ontario; in the Niagara Peninsula; and along the Detroit River. A tribe of the Iroquois, the Mohawks, under their chief Joseph Brant, were given a large reserve on the Grand River in the county of Brant for their staunch loyalty (Upper Canada became a newly created Province in 1791. On the St. Lawrence River.

(E) THEIR EMIGRATION TO CANADA WAS:
1. By Boat.
1.Most of the Loyalists left from New York by boat. Their emigration was superintended by Sir Guy Carleton.
2. Overland.
1.They travelled overland, through the wilderness and crossed into Canada at the St. Lawrence River, Lake Ontario, Niagara River, and at Detroit.

(F) THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT HELPED THEM...
1.A Provision of the Treaty of Versailles expressly stated that the Loyalists were not to be punished by the Americans for their loyalty to the mother country...Congress referred this matter to the individual states, and they refused to act in connection therewith.
2.The British Government insisted that their properties be restored to them...but this was ignored by the Americans.
4.In Upper Canada, three million acres were set aside for their use, and over sixteen million dollars was spent in providing them with seed, stock, and tools.
5. The British Government transported a great number of them to Canada, and encouraged others go to Canada.

5.Each Loyalist was given two hundred acres of land on his arrival.

6.Each son was given two hundred acres of land when he became of age, and each daughter received the same amount when she married.

7.Individual grants of money were made, and supplies of food, and clothing were given.

(G) THE HARDSHIPS OR SUFFERINGS ENDURED BY THE LOYALISTS WERE:

1.They left their possessions behind them. (carried a few with th

2.They had to make long journeys through the unbroken wilderne on foot.

3. No immediate provision was made for their arrival in Canada, and many of them had to spend the first winter in tents.

Log cabins oiled paper

4.They had to make clearings in the bush before they could build their new homes. Each Loyalist had to build house and barn.

5.The climate was more severethan that of the United States.

6. They were a long way from supplies, and often had to use skins for clothing.

7. Things that were needed had to be made by hand. chairs, benches tables, beds, chests.

8.They had to work very hard to make a living.

9.They did not have doctors and nurses.

10.There was a lack of schools, churches, and stores.

11.The Government discontinued giving support. Famine occurred and some of the people died of starvation. (1788) Hungry year.

* The family dinner Table was a huge stump, hewn flat on top, standing in the middle of the floor. Clothing of deerskin - calico

(H)THE VALUE OF THE LOYALISTS TO CANADA.

1.Before the coming of the Loyalists, it appeared as though Canada would be a purely French Colony, but with their coming, this was changed, and the foundations of a truly British Colony was established.

2. Canada was enriched by a population of good citizens. They were persevering, hardworking, fearless, and loyal. They were freedom loving, and had ideals of government.

3. They helped to open the country quickly.

4.They proved a strong defence to Canada in the War of 1812, and saved her from annexation with the United States.

5.They brought ideas of self-government to Canada as they were accustomed to self-government in the Colonies.

6. They were dissatisfied with a government in which they had no voice, and ultimately helped Canada to gain a government that was responsible to the people.

7. Fields were cleared 8. Roads were built 9. Schools and churches were planned. 10 The March of Civilization had begun

(I)ANOTHER NAME FOR THE U. E. LOYALISTS IS:

1. The Founders of Upper Canada.

(J)FACTORS THAT WERE DISLIKED BY THE U. E. LOYALISTS WERE:

1. The Quebec Act.

2.The French Method of holding land. (Seignorial Tenure).

3.Rule by the Upper Class. (Rule by a Council)

4.French favouritism.

5. The difference in Language.

(K) THE RESULTS:

1. Canada had a population of industrious British Patriots who struggled nobly to meet the hardships of pioneer life in the woods.

2. They sent a petition to the British Government to have the Quebec Act changed; the method of holding land changed; and the method of Government changed.

3. The French-Canadians petitioned the British Government to have them retained.

4. The British Government considered the petitions, and wanted to please both ...Loyalists and French..and as a result, a new Act, known as the CONSTITUTIONAL ACT was passed by the British Government.

10. THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT 1791.

(A) THE DATE:

1. 1791.

(B) THE REASONS FOR THE PASSING OF THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT WERE:

THE ENGLISH WANTED.	THE FRENCH WANTED.
1. Self-government, similar to that which was enjoyed in England.	1. Rule by the upper class--a Governor and council.
2. Freehold Tenure.	2. Seignorial Tenure.
3. Trial by Jury.	3. Trial by a judge.
4. The Habeas Corpus Act.	4. The Customs of Paris.
5. The repeal of the Quebec Act.	5. The Quebec Act retained.

2. The Quebec Act in many ways was no longer suitable as it did not provide for an Assembly.

3. The Loyalists had been accustomed to self-government and English institutions.

4. The English disliked French Civil Law.

5. The Loyalists were chiefly Protestant, and they thought the Catholic Church was favoured by the Quebec Act.

6. The British fur-traders in French Canada wanted a British form of Government.

7. The Population had changed from (there being) a majority of French speaking colonists to a majority of English speaking colonists (when the Loyalists came).

8. Lord Dorchester (Sir Guy Carleton) the Governor, advised the granting of separate governments to the French and the English settlements.

9. The Br. Govt. wanted to please both - the Loyalists and the French.

(C) THE PROVISIONS WERE.

1. The territory was divided into two provinces, and named Upper and Lower Canada. (The Ottawa River being roughly the dividing li

2. Each province was to have a government consisting of:-

1. A Governor.....appointed by the king.
2. A Lieutenant-Governor ...appointed by the king.
3. A Legislative Council appointed by the Gov. for lif
4. An Executive Council appointed by and holding offic at the Governor's pleasure.
5. * A Legislative Assembly elected by the people for a term of FOUR YEARS.

3. British Criminal Law was to be established in both provinces.
4. British Civil Law was established in Upper Canada, and French Civil Law was to be continued.
5. Duties and customs were to be levied by Great Britain, and collected by Lower Canada.
6. One-eighth of the duties were to go to Upper Canada.
7. Taxes in each province were to be levied by each parliament and were to be controlled by the Governor and the Executive Councils.
8. Land tenure in Upper Canada was to be Freehold, and in Lower Canada it was to be Freehold or seignorial tenure.
9. Previous guarantees of religious freedom were renewed..the Roman Catholic Clergy could collect tithes and othe accustomed dues from their own people.
10. The CLERGY RESERVES were established in Upper Canada, and allowed that one-seventh of the crownlands of Upper Canada was set aside for the support of the Protestant Clergy.
11. The Quebec Act was to remain in force until repealed by either province.

(D) THE RESULTS OF THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT WERE:-

1. The boundary line between Upper and Lower Canada caused hardships.
2. The duty collected at Montreal was not fairly apportioned between the two provinces. (This was remedied by the passing of the CANADA TRADE ACT in 1822.)
3. The new system of government was supposed to be an exact copy of the British. (It gave REPRESENTATIVE GOVERNMENT, but not RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT.) It was not true representative government because...
   a. The Legislative and executive Councils were not responsible to the people.
   b. The governor and the council controlled the revenu and the crown lands.
   c. Great Britain decided on the duties levied.
   d. It led to a rebellion in 1837.

4. The Clergy Reserves gave rise to bitterness as all of the Protestant denominations claimed a share, and their location separated and hindered settlement.

5. A FAMILY COMPACT arose in Upper Canada, and a SCOTCH PARTY arose in Lower Canada. These practically ruled the country in their own interests.

6. The French went their own way, and the English went their s without an opportunity of working together and gradually becoming a distinct and united people. The result was much discord and distrust between the two races due to differences of language, customs, laws, religion, and ideals.

7. The English in Upper Canada, and the French in Lower Canada were temporarily satisfied, and the British lost a golden opportunity of thoroughly uniting the two people, and the Act of 1791 contained many seeds of serious trouble.

(omit) (E) THE DEFECTS OF THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT WERE:-

1. The Assembly which represented the people was not given control of the revenue.

2. The Executive Council and the Legislative Council were appointed, not elected.

3. The Executive Council could not be removed for wrongdoing.

4. The division of the country into a French and a British Province gave rise to many jealousies.

5. The way in which the Clergy Reserves were selected hindered the opening up of the Country, and the making of roads.

6. The largeness of the grant of land (ONE SEVENTH), and the fact that there was State support to the Church of England were opposed by many.

7. Lower Canada had the ports of entry, and therefore the collection of the customs and the control of trade.

8. The allowing for the creation of the Family Compact in Upper Canada, and the Scotch Party in Lower Canada gave rise to considerable opposition when reforms were presented.

11. THE RESULTS OF CARLETON'S WORK WERE:-

1. The good-will of the French was secured by the Quebec A.

2. The attempt to force Canada to become the fourteenth colony in the American Union failed.

3. The Americans were driven from Canada.

4. The French became loyal British Subjects.

5. The United Empire Loyalists were induced to come to Can and the population was considerably increased.

6. An Assembly was established.

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

The French Revolution broke out when the Constitutional Act was being drafted. One of the most striking features of the French Revolution was its opposition to clericalism. This forever fixed a gulf between New and Old France, because New France was loyal and faithful to the church. Henceforth French Canadians attached themselves to the principles of English toleration and freedom, and protected these cherished privileges against all of the world.

VII. THE FATHER OF UPPER CANADA.

12. JOHN GRAVES SIMCOE.

He was a British officer who had fought in the American Revolution 1775-83, and was promoted to lieutenant-colonel. Upon his return to England after the war, he was elected to parliament in 1790. In 1791 he was appointed the FIRST LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR OF UPPER CANADA, the newly created province under the Constitutional Act.

He was honourable, energetic, persistent, intensely loyal to Britain and to Canada, and unyielding and overbearing. He was opposed by Lord Dorchester (SIR GUY CARLETON) who was the Governor of Lower Canada, because he wanted a governor in Upper Canada who was willing to follow his lead.

HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED:

1. The organization of the government of Upper Canada. (When he opened the first Assembly only five out of sixteen attended)(He was accompanied however by the guard of the fort...some fifty men.)(He had called together its Executive Council.)
2. The assisting the agricultural communities of Upper Canada.
3. The promotion of trade between Canada and the U. S. A.
4. The provision of an adequate currency.
5. The building up of a system of education.
6. The supplying a means for the enforcement of law and order.
7. The care of the Indians in Upper Canada.
8. The division of the province into counties, and naming them.
9. The arrangement for the election of members to the legislature
10. The making of the first laws of the province.
    a. English law was established.
    b. The right to collect tithes was annulled.
    c. Slavery was abolished.
    d. Bounties were to be paid on wolves and bears.
    e. Courts were established.
11. The choosing of a site for the provincial capital.(He felt that Newark at the mouth of the Niagara River was too close to the Americans in case of war.)(His choice was that of the present city of London, but it was later changed to York (Toronto).

12. The making of journeys of exploration to provide him with first hand information in connection with the needs of the province.

13. The building of roads..(Yonge Street, Kingston Road, and the Governor's Road...now Highway number 2.

14. Increasing the population of Upper Canada.

His chief defect was in supporting the Family Compact and the Anglican Church so strongly. He considered all of those who opposed his views as being disloyal.

He was recalled to England in 1796 after having spent but five years in Canada. He laid the foundation of the Province of Ontario, and for the service rendered, he received the names "FATHER OF UPPER CANADA" and " FOUNDER OF UPPER CANADA".

GENERAL NOTE REGARDING SIMCOE....THE FOUNDER OF UPPER CANADA.

He was appointed the first Governor of Upper Canada 1791 under the Constitutional Act. Upon his arrival in Canada, he found that the principal settlements were along the St. Lawrence, around the Bay of Quinte, in the Niagara Peninsula, and along the Detroit River. The Loyalists in these settlements were very poorly equipped for Pioneer life. In many cases they had little more than the clothing that they wore, and a few household untensils that they had brought with them.

The ideas of Simcoe were unsuited for the government of a pioneer country; but he speedily learned that it would be impossible for him to establish an aristocracy of military officers and landed proprietors, who could constitute the government.

The first session of the Parliament consisted of seven members of the council and sixteen members of the assembly, and lasted a month. Act were passed establishing ...

1. Trial by Jury.
2. British Laws as the laws of the Province.
3. Bounties for the destruction of wolves and Bea
4. The abolition of slavery from Canada.Upper.

(The loyalists had adopted the practice of holding negroes as slaves, as was done at that time in the U.S.A Slavery was abolished in Canada more than seventy years before it was abolished in the neighbouring republic.

5. Free Grants of land to settlers from the U.S.A but required that each settler should take the oath of Allegiance to the British Crown.

He made three journeys to ascertain the needs of the Province. The first journey was made on foot from Newark to the head of Lake Ontario, and was but a hundred mile expedition.
The second journey was a more extended journey to the west, crossing the western half of the province. He went by way of Brantford, London, Chatham and Detroit. He came upon what he believed would be an excellent site for the Capital of the Province at the fork of the Thames River, where the city of London now stands. To Simcoe, this point had several important advantages.....1.It was away from the International Boundary line.2. It was on a navigable river.3. It was surrounded by a fertile and a well-wooded country. He recommended that the provincial capital be established at that point, but Lord Dorchester at Quebec disapproved of the plan. He had a road built through from the head of Burlington Bay to the forks of the Thames River, and named it Dundas Street, in honour of a British ~~Officer~~ Minister at that time.Henry Dundas. It has also been known as THE GOVERNOR'S ROAD? AND "THE KING'S HIGHWAY NUMBER2".
The third journey was made to the north, by way of Lake Simcoe, which was so named by him after his father, to Penetanguishene on Georgian Bay.

The present site of the City of Toronto was finally chosen as the site for the Provincial Capital, and it was named York, after the Duke of York, the son of George the 111. Some time later the name was changed to Toronto, which means THE MEETING PLACE. The land on which the present city of Toronto now stands was purchased from the Indians for the sum of $85. Council meetings were held in York in 1793.

In addition to the Governor's Road mentioned above, he had a road built from York to Lake Simcoe, and named it Yonge Street after Sir George Yonge, an English statesman who was then secretary of state for war and the colonies. Plans were also made for the building of the Kingston Road which was to continue from Kingston to Detroit. The only part completed was that part from Lake Ontario to London.

He did not get along well with Carleton, the Governor of Lower Canada because Carleton was the commander-in-chief of the Canadian militia, and resented Simcoe's interference in military matters.

He endeavoured to increase the population of Upper Canada, and issued a proclamation inviting the people from the United States to settle in Upper Canada. He offered them free lands, and many of the Americans accepted the offer.A large part of western Ontario was settled by these late loyalists who proved to be excellent settlers. A few of them were republican rather than loyalists, and were attracted merely by the offer of free land.

The name of the first Governor of Upper Canada is borne by a lake, a county, a town, and many streets and public buildings.

XII. JOHN GRAVES SIMCOE.

(A) THE DATES.

1791-1796.

(B) HE WAS.

1. A British officer who had fought in the American Revol.
2. A member of the British Parliament in 1790.
3. Appointed Governor of Canada, Upper, in 1791.
4. Honourable, energetic, persistent, intensely loyal to Great Britain and to Canada, unyielding and over-bearing.
5. The first Governor of Upper Canada, the new Province, created by the Constitutional Act 1791.
6. Opposed by Sir Guy Carleton, the Governor of Lower Can. because he wanted a governor in Upper Canada who was willing to follow his lead, and to take his advice.

(C) HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED:-

1. Abolition of Slavery. (The Loyalists had adopted the practice of holding negroes as slaves, as was done at that time in the U.S.A. Slavery was abolished in Canada more than seventy years before it was abolished in the neighbouring Republic.)

2. Assisting the Agricultural Communities of Upper Canada. (These were along the St. Lawrence; around the Bay of Quinte; in the Niagara Peninsula; and along the Detroit River.)

3. Arranging for the election of members to the Legislature (Prior to this, the people did not have the privilege of electing representatives to the Government.)

4. Building up of a system of Education. (At first this was on a small scale, but in time a Classical school was established at Kingston; a school at Newark; the first Public school at Toronto and Grammar Schools or High Schools were established in U.Canada.

5. Building of Roads. (Yonge Street, from Toronto northward, Kingston Road from Kingston to Toronto; and The Governor's Road now Highway Number Two from Toronto to Windsor; and other less important roads were opened.

6. Care of the Indians in Upper Canada. (Reservations were established, and the Government looked after the Indians.)

7. Choosing the site for the provincial Capitol . (Before sailing from England, he had considered calling the capitol of U.C. GEORGINA after the reigning sovereign, George 111, but this name was never actually given. On first surveying the situation in U.C. his intention was to locate the capital where London now stands, but owing to obstacles, chiefly the difficulty of transportation he later relinquished the plan. The site was at the forks of the Thames River, and had numerous advantages..it was away from the International Boundary Line, It was on a navigable river, It was

surrounded by a fertile and well-wooded country. Carleton disapproved the plan and it was dropped.)(It was finally decided to establish the New Provincial Capital at York, now Toronto. It was named York after th Duke of York, the son of George the 111. Some time later the name was changed to Toronto which means THE MEETING PLACE. The land on which th present city of Toronto now stands was purchased from the Indians for the sum of $85. Council meetings were held in York in 1793. The change was made because it was felt that Newark at the mouth of the Niagara R was too close to the Americans in case of war.)

8. Dividing the province into counties and naming them. (In 1792, he divided the province into nineteen counties and named them Glengarry Stormont, Dundas, Grenville, Leeds, Frontenac, Ontario, Addington, Lenno Prince Edward, Hastings, Northumberland, Durham, York, Lincoln, Norfolk Suffolk, Essex, and Kent. With the exception of Suffolk, these names al survive. The counties from Northumberland to Kent were named after the shires and counties along the east coast of England.

In addition to the above, other place names are due to Simcoe London received its present name sometime previous to September 179 Earlier in the year, the river La Tranche, on which London stands, had become the Thames, and Chatham had been selected as the name of the cit which was to be established 18 miles from its mouth.

Simcoe was no respecter of Indian names, and under date of July 24, 1793, the name York was given to the site of the New Capital. Toronto was named in honour of Prince Frederick, Duke of York, and the Indian name was not restored until 1834.

Other place-names in the vicinity of Toronto due to Simcoe ar the Humber River and the Don River, named after the rivers of the same names in Yorkshire in England.

Yonge Street, 32 miles long was named after Sir George Yonge Secretary of State for war, a neighbour.

Dundas Street, from Burlington to Detroit was named after Henry Dundas, Viscount Mellville, Secretary of State.

Lake Simcoe was named after his father, Captain John Simcoe, of the Royal Navy, who was killed in action at Quebec in 1759. Two bays Kempenfelt and Cook were named after Admiral Richard Kempenfelt and Captain James Cook, both of whom served with Simcoe's Father.

Holland River was named after Surveyor-General Samuel Holland and Matchedash Bay in Georgian Bay was renamed Gloucester Bay after William Henry, son of George 11, the first Duke of Gloucester.

Simcoe County was named after John Graves Simcoe..in 1798, two years after he had returned to England.

9. Increasing the population of Upper Canada. (A Proclamation was issued inviting the people from the U.S.A. to settle in Upper Canada. He offered them free lands, and many of the Americans accepted the offer. Each settler had to take the oath of Allegiance to the British Crown. A large part of western Ontario was settled by these late loyalists who proved to be excellent settlers. A few of them were republican rather than loyalists, and were attracted merely by the offer of free land.

Settlements were encouraged by Simcoe...Earl of Selkirk's settlers at Baldoon near Lake St. Clair; Alexander MacDonnell's settlers in Glengarry County; and Colonel Talbot's settlers along Lake Erie.

10. Making the first Provincial Laws. (Trial by Jury was established; British Laws became the Laws of the Province; The right to collect tithes was annulled; Bounties were to be paid on wolves and bears; and courts were established.)

11. Making of journeys of exploration to provide him with first hand information in connection with the needs of the Province. (a) JOURNEY NUMBER ONE

This was made on foot from Newark to the head of Lake Ontario, and was but a one-hundred mile expedition.

(b) JOURNEY NUMBER TWO

This was a more extended journey to the west, and crossed the western half of the province. He went by way of Brantford, London, Chatham, and Detroit. He came upon what he believed would be a excellent site for the capital of the Province at the forks of the Thames River, where the city of London now stands. This point had several advantages..it was away from the International Boundary line; it was on a navigable river; and it was surrounded by a fertile and well-wooded country. He recommended that the Provincial Capital be situated there, but Carleton disapproved the plan. He had a road built through from the head of Burlington Bay to the forks of the Thames River and named it Dundas Street, in honour of Henry Dundas. It has been known as DUNDAS STREET, GOVERNOR'S ROAD, AND HIGHWAY NUMBER TWO.

(c) JOURNEY NUMBER THREE.

This journey was made to the north, by way of Lake Simcoe, and covered a distance ~~of~~ from Toronto to Georgian Bay to Penetanguishene.

12. ORGANIZING THE GOVERNMENT OF UPPER CANADA. (The first Parliament was but small. It was in session for a month, and numerous important duties were performed by it.)

13. Promoting trade with the U.S.A. (One of the needs of the province was a market for produce, and a place from which necessary goods could be obtained.)

14. Providing ~~an~~ adequate currency.

15. SUPPLYING A MEANS for enforcing law and order.

His chief defect was in supporting the Family Compact and the Anglican Church so strongly. He considered all of those who opposed his views as disloyal. He disagreed with Carleton because he was the commander-in-chief of the Canadian Militia, and resented Simcoe's interference in military matters.

He was recalled to England in 1796 after having spent but five years in Canada. He received the names..FATHER OF UPPER CANADA, and FOUNDER OF UPPER CANADA. He laid the foundation of the Province of Ontario.

8. THE HERO OF UPPER CANADA.

13. SIR ISAAC BROCK.

(A) THE DATES.

(1796)----1802-1812.

(B) HE WAS

1. Born in the Island of Guernsey, and entered the army at the age of fifteen.

2. Made Captain of a company in 1791, and was quartered in the West Indies in 1792 and 1793.

3. A member of an expedition to Holland, and later was second in command of the land forces in the Baltic Expedition in 1801.

4. Sent to Canada in 1802.

(C) HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED:

1. Promptly and decisively putting down a mutiny at Ft. George

2. Commander of Ft. George 1803-1804.

3. Recommending the establishment of a corp of veterans who, aft their term of service, should be given land and furnished with farming implements and rations for a certain period, to offset the influence of the disloyal settlers.

4. Being stationed at Quebec 1805, where he was promoted to Colonel.

5. Returning to England and submitting a report to the Duke of York who was Commander-in-chief, in which a suggestion was made for improving the efficiency of the army in Canada.

6. Returning to Canada in 1806, and being placed in command of the troops in both Provinces.

7. Strengthening the fortifications at Quebec.

8. Ordering the building of vessels for service on the Great Lak

9. Calling out volunteers for training in 1807.

10. Going from Quebec in 1808 to take charge in Montreal.

11. Being appointed Brigadier-General.

12. Going to Upper Canada in 1810, and making his head-quarters at Fort George.

13. Trying to prevent war between the Indians and the U.S.A.

14. Being promoted to Major-General in 1811.

15. Being appointed PRESIDENT AND ADMINISTRATOR OF UPPER CANADA in 1811 during the absence of the Governor..(Gore)

16. Sending a plan of Campaign to Prevost who had been made Governor of Canada, and commander of the military forces in Canada 1812

17. Recommending an aggressive policy...the taking of Detroit and Michilimacinac, and strengthening the naval forces on the Lakes.

18. Making the best of the failure of the Home Government to send either men or supplies or money, and the hostility of the Assembly of Upper Canada.

19. Placing Major-General Shaw in command of the communications between Kingston and Cornwall.

Note Book for
Pioneer Settlement

20.Taking charge of the western district between Niagara and Amherstburg.

21.Securing the support of the Indian Tribes.

22.The making of special Bank Notes to meet the need.

23.Hearing of the declaration of war 1812; making his headquarters at Fort George; placing his small force along the frontier, and sending instructions to capture Fort Michilimacinac.

24. Issuing a tactful general order to the Militia, and keeping up the courage of his men.

25. Replying to Hull's Proclamation, and upholding his stand in connection therewith.

26. Proroguing Parliament, and going to the western frontier, where he met Tecumseh for the first time.

27. Organizing his men into three brigades and attacking Detroit to which Hull had retreated.

28. Gaining a victory over Hull, and consequently winning the entire state of Michigan.

29. Returning to York where he learned of the Armistice arranged between Prevost and Dearborn.

30.Leading his men against the invaders at Queenston Heights where he was wounded, and died as he was leading his men in the hour of victory....as Wolfe had done.

13.SIR ISAAC BROCK.

(A)THE DATES.

1802-1812.

(B)HE WAS:

1.The president and administrator of the Province of U.C. with the rank of major-general in the army when the War of 1812 broke out.

2.A soldier who was skilled in military tactics, and had the (acted as) commander-in-chief of the British forces in North America in 1806-7.

3. A successful organizer, and one whose administration put the province in a good state of defence.

(C)HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED.

1. Marching against Detroit in 1812, where General Hull was trying to win the Canadians to the side of the Americans by Proclamation.

2.Becoming allied with Tecumseh and his Indians, and going against Detroit, which was captured without a struggle, and gaining thereby control of the state of Michigan...This inspired the Canadians and gave them more confidence in themselves.

3. Hurrying from Detroit to the Niagara Frontier where the

Americans were prepared to attack Queenston Heights. (The Americans had crossed the river and gained the Heights.

4.Leading his men from Fort George to repel the invaders, and being killed as he led his men in the attack, but his successor General Sheaffe drove the Americans from the Heights.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.His death deprived Canada of her most capable leader, and his loss was keenly felt.

2. The American attempt to hold Queenston Heights was unsuccesful. He gained control of the State of Michigan.

3.In 1816 a coin was struck by the Royal Mint in his memory.

4.In 1820 a stately column was erected on Queenston Heights in his honour by the Canadian People....In 1840 the monument was blown up, but it was later rebuilt, and still stands on the Heights.

5.He won for himself..the title..THE HERO OF UPPER CANADA.

14.THE WAR OF 1812-1814.

(A) THE CAUSES.

1. The statesmen of England were suspicious of the Americans and tried to hamper trade.

2. The Americans hated the British.

3. Great Britain refused to give up a number of Western Posts which controlled the fur-trade because the Americans had broken the terms of the Treaty of Versailles by persecuting the Loyalists.

4. The Americans were in sympathy with the French in France in their attempt to set up a republic, and Britain was at war with France.

5. The Americans wanted to Capture Canada, and out of the combined territories to make one vast republic extending from the Gulf of Mexico to the Arctic Ocean.

6. Napoleon issued the BERLIN DECREES forbidding any nation to trade with Britain.

7. England then issued the ORDERS-IN-COUNCIL forbidding any nation to trade with France or any of her Allies. This injured the Trad of the United States.

8. British sea-men deserted to American ships because they wer better fed, better paid, and more humanely treated. England claimed the RIGHT OF SEARCH to search American vessels for sailors who had deserted The Americans resented this.

9. The Americans claimed that the Governor of Canada had sent spies into their country to ascertain the condition of the country.

10. The Americans were angry because they believed that the British in Canada were secretly encouraging the Indians against them.

11. The publication of the secret correspondence of a Captain Henry ~~that~~ who had reported that New England was ready to secede from the Union.

(B) THE CHIEF EVENTS OF THE WAR OF 1812-1813-1814.

1812-----1. Early in July 1812, an American force of 2000 men under General Hull crossed from Detroit into Canada. He tried to win the Canadians to the side of the Americans by issuing a proclamation which promised peace, liberty, and security to those who joined; and war, slavery, and destruction to those who refused. General Brock with the assistance of the Indians under Tecumseh, marched rapidly to meet the invaders. Hull was forced to fall back to Detroit, and was compelled to surrender Detroit to the Canadians. This victory gained control over the state of Michigan and encouraged the Canadians. Proctor and Tecumseh were left in charge.

2. Brock hurried from Detroit to the Niagara Frontier to meet the Americans invaders. They had been gathering troops and supplies in preparation for making a decisive attack. On the night of October the 12th., near the village of Queenston, 1300 Americans crossed the river and gained a foothold on Queenston Heights. Brock led a party against the invaders but fell mortally wounded. General Sheaffe succeeded him and later in the day drove the foe into the River.

1813-----1. On Sept. 9, 1813, The Americans won a naval battle over the British on Lake Erie at PUT-IN-BAY, and as a result, the Canadians were compelled to retreat from Detroit, and to fall back to Amherstburg, and later to the ThamesValley. The Americans overtook them at Moraviantown and defeated the British. Proctor fled, and Tecumseh was slain. General Proctor had 850 men, and General Harrison his pursuer had 3500. At Moravaintown Proctor's force was reduced to 500.

2. The Americans practically captured the entire Niagara Peninsula, and a naval victory on Lake Ontario enabled them to seize York. The Americans started to march from Niagara towards Hamilton. They were halted at Stoney Creek by Sir John Harvey. At Beaver Dams, Lieutenant FitzGibbon was warned by Laura Secord and set an ambush by which he captured 500 Americans. The invaders never reached Hamilton. In the same year both York and Newark were burned by the Americans, and in revenge, the Niagara Frontier from Lewiston to Buffalo was swept with fire and sword.

3. About 3000 Americans tried to take Montreal. They were opposed byless than 1000 on the CHATEAUGUAY RIVER below Montreal and failed in their attempt.

4. About the same time the Americans crossed the St. Lawrence at PRESCOTT. and were defeated at CHRYSLER'S FARM by 800 Can.

1814.....1. The Americans defeated the British at CHIPPAWA..July 5.

2. On July 25, the American's were defeated at LUNDY'S LAN and the Americans retreated in disorder.

3. The wars with Napoleon were now ended, and as both

sides had grown tired of the struggle, hostilities ceased. The TREATY OF GHENT brought peace..1815.

FOR FURTHER PARTICULARS REGARDING THE CAMPAIGN OF 1814 IN WESTERN U. C. SEE THE ATTACHED NOTE REGARDING "THE CROOKED TREE".

GENERAL NOTES.

(A) THE OUTSTANDING CAUSES WERE:-

1. The Berlin Decrees.
2. The Orders-in Council.
3. The American desire to have Canada.

(B) THE PLAN OF THE AMERICANS WERE:-

1. To direct their campaign against Canada in such a way that the Canadian Forces would be scattered. This was attempted by the Americans sending three Armies against Canada..The Army of the West.. attacking Canada along the Detroit River; The army of the Centre..attacking Canada in the Centre; along the Niagara Frontier; and the Army of the North, or East which was directed against Montreal, by way of Lake Champlain.

(C) THE INCIDENTS OF THE WAR

THE CAMPAIGN OF 1812.

NAME OF ENGAGEMENT	CANADIAN LEADER.	AMERICAN LEADER.
1. Capture of Mackinaw.	Roberts V.	Hancks.
2. Surrender of Detroit.	Brock and Tecumseh V.	Hull.
3. Queenston Heights.	Brock and Sheaffe. V.	Van Rensselaer.
4. Lacolle	Salaberry V.	Dearborn.

THE CAMPAIGN OF 1813.

1. Frenchtown	Proctor V.	Winchester.
2. Capture of Ogdensburg	McDonald V.	----------
3. Capture of York	Sheaffe	Pike V.
4. Capture of Fort George	Vincent	Dearborn V.
5. Attack on Sackett's H.	Prevost	Brown V.
6. Stoney Creek	Harvey V.	~~Brown~~. Chandler
7. Beaver Dams	FitzGibbon V.	Boerstler.
8. Defeat on L. Erie.	Barclay	Perry V.
9. Moraviantown	Tecumseh and Proctor	Harrison V.

NAME OF ENGAGEMENT	CANADIAN LEADER		AMERICAN LEADER.	
10.Chateauguay	Salaberry.	V.	Hampton.	
11.Burning of York and Newark	----------		Americans	V.
12. Burning of Amer. Villages.	Canadians	V.	----------	
CAMPAIGN OF 1814.				
1.Lacolle Mills	Handcock	V.	Wilkinson.	
2.Capture of Oswego	Yeo	V.	---------	
3.Capture of Ft. Erie	-------		Brown.	V.
4.Chippewa	Riall		Brown.	V.
5.Lundy's Lane	Drummond	V.	Brown.	
6.Attack on Plattsburg	Prevost		Macomb.,	V.
7.Capture of Washington	Ross	V.	-------	
8.New Orleans	Packenham		Jackson.	V.

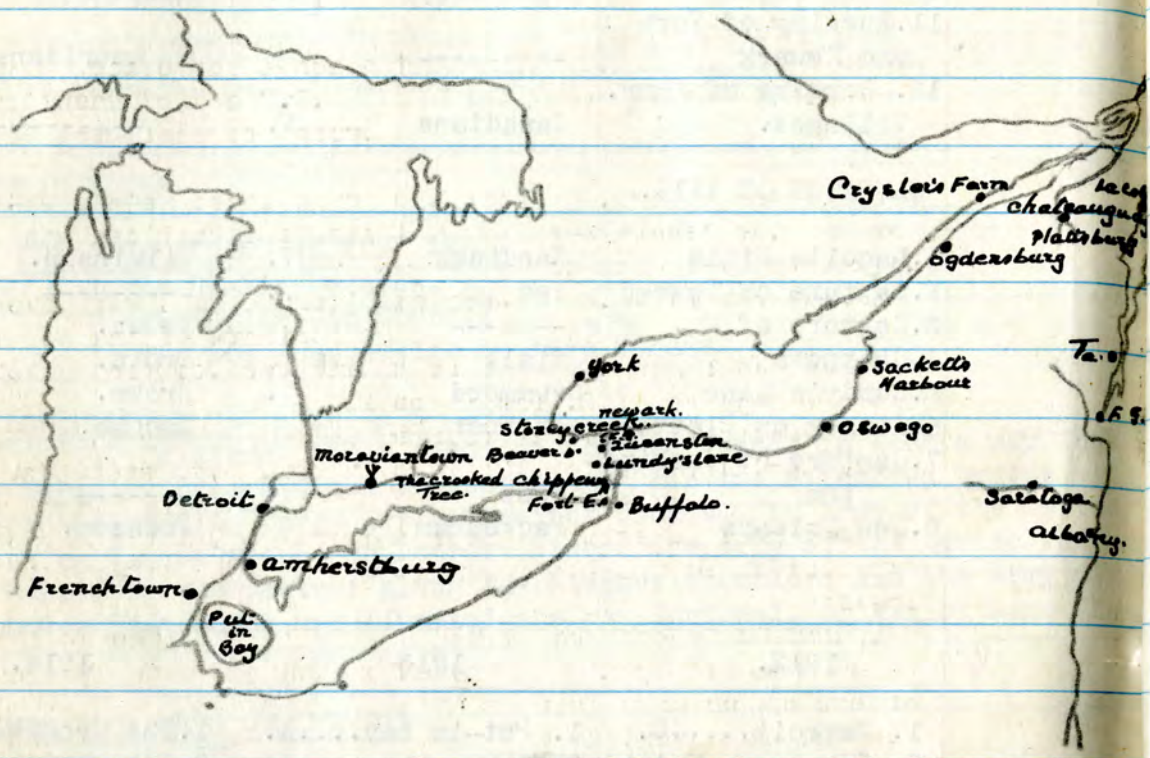
B.

1812.	1813	1814.
1. Detroit.....C.	1. Put-in Bay....A.	1.The Crooked Tree. C.
2. Queenston Heights	2. Amherstburg ..A.	2.Chippewa..... A.
3. Lacolle.....C.	3. Moraviantown..A.	3.Lundy's Lane..... C.
	4. York.....A.	4.Fort Erie..... A.
	5. Newark.....A.	5.Plattsburg.....A.
	6. Stoney Creek..C.	6.Washington.....C.
	7. Beaver Dams...C.	7.New Orleans.....A.
	8. Ogdensburg....C.	
	9. Chateauguay...C.	
	10.Crysler's FarmC.	

CAUSES ...FROM THE AMERICAN VIEWPOINT.

1.Non-revocation of the Orders-in-council.
2.Interference with American Trade.
3.Practical Blockade of American Ports.
4.Impressment of American seamen.
5.Instigation of Indian hostilities against the U.S.A.
6. The American desire to capture Canada.

A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE SCENES OF FIGHTING IN THE WAR 1812-1814.



(C) THE CLOSE OF THE WAR.

1.The War was closed by the Treaty Of Ghent. 1814.

2.Canada gave back her conquests.

3 3.The points in dispute were left unsettled.

2 4. All territory taken from either country was to be restored.

5. All of the American claims that led to the war were left unsettled, right of search; control of the boundary forts, etc.

(D) THE REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE AMERICANS.

1.Canada was at that time a country almost without roads, and as a result the invading armies found it difficult to penetrate it.

2.Canada was defended by tried British Regulars, whereas the American soldiers were but half-trained (militiamen).

3.The Indian Allies of the British hated the (Stars and Stripes), and respected the Union Jack. Bw.

4.Canada had been settled by the United Empire Loyalists who had been driven from the U.S.A., and they were not easily to be driven from their new homes.

5.The Canadian border was defended in the early stages of the war by Sir Isaac Brock who had a genius for war-fare.

(B) THE RESULTS OF THE WAR.

1. It did more than any other event could have done to show that Colonial Liberty and Colonial Patriotism did not leave the British Empire when the U.S.A. left it.

2. It determined that North America should not belong exclusively to the American people of the Republic.

3. It determined that Great Britain should keep her place on the North American Continent through this new community which was already on the high-road to legislative independence.

4. The Canadian people were united for a time.

5. They were given confidence in themselves.

6. Numerous lives were lost and considerable property was destroyed, and damaged.

7. The land was neglected owing to the fact that the men were away fighting.

8. The government had to help because there was a scarcit of crops.

9. The Canadian people were embittered against the Americans.

10. The Canadians passed laws excluding the Americans from Canada.

11. The French-Canadians and the British-Canadians had fought side by side, and it tended to promote a better feeling in Canada between the two races.

12. This resulted in the birth of a strong national sentiment which has bound all elements together.

13. There was a financial depression.

15. TECUMSEH.

(A) THE DATES.

1768-1813.

(B) HE WAS.

1. A chief of the Shawnee Tribe.

2. Born near the site of Springfield, Ohio.

3. A brave in the battle with the Kentucky soldiers. 1788.

4. In the campaign of 1794-5 between the American troops and the Indians, and came into prominence as a daring warrior.

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED.

1. Forming an alliance which planned to unite all of the Western Indians in a war against the Americans.. 1805, because the Americans were forcing them to move farther and farther west by defeating them at TIPPECANOE.. (General Harrison). (They tried to obtain redress from the Americans but failed.)

2. Becoming allied with the British against the Americans in the war of 1812-14, and bringing about a thousand Indians to Proctor's Camp at Sandwich, Ontario.

3. Meeting Sir Isaac Brock, becoming his friend, and

joining with him in the siege of Detroit, where General Hull was in command.

4.Helping to win Detroit, and control of the entire State of Michigan. (He drew a map of the city and advised attacking it.)

5. Being left with Proctor in charge of Detroit, and the State Michigan when Brock hastened to the Niagara Frontier.

6.Making a hasty retreat with Proctor when the Americans won a Naval Victory at Put-In-Bay on Lake Erie 1813, ~~and~~ cutting the Canadian off from their base of supplies in the East.(They were followed by the Americans under General Harrison)

7.Facing the Americans in the Battle of the Thames or the Battle of Moraviantown when Proctor fled in shameful retreat.(He was killed in this engagement.(A small cairn has been erected to commemorate his bravery, and to mark the site of the combat.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.He was given the rank of Brigadier-General in the British Army in 1812.

2. He was killed on the field of Battle in the Battle of the Thames at Moraviantown. 1813

3. A small cairn has been erected to commemorate his bravery and to mark the site of the Combat.

16.LAURA SECORD.

(A)THE DATES.

1.1775-1868. (1813)

(B)SHE WAS.

1.The daughter of Major Thomas Ingersoll,(who was persuaded to come to Canada, by the Proclamation of Governor Simcoe, which offered tracts of land to settlers on easy terms.) He had met Joseph Brant, the famous Indian Chief in New York, and he had promised to show him the best land for settlement if he would come to Canada. He advised him to select lands on the La Tranche River (The Thames River). He sent six of his best young men to show Major Ingersoll the lands most suitable for settlement. He was selected as the agent of the Settlement, which was established on the present site of the town of Ingersoll.

2.The wife of James Secord, a merchant of Queenston, who entered military service in 1812.(He was one of those who helped to carry the remains of Sir Isaac Brock from the Battle Field. He was wounded late in the afternoon of the same day. He was carried to his own house in Queenston by some American Soldiers, and was considered a prisoner of War.

3.A quiet and eager listener to the plans of the Americans who were billeted in her house.(Some of the American Officers were dining there in the company of the American General..Boerstler.

They talked freely of their plans, and of the importance of securing Beaver Dams as a base of operations from which a large force could be organized to advance against Burlington Heights. When Boerstler returned to Niagara to assume command, and the other Officers had left her house to perform their allotted duties, she consulted with her husband on the best course to pursue. It was impossible for Mr. Secord to go, and there was no one else to send. She s

4. The carrier of the message to FitzGibbon at Beaver Dams.

(C)HER WORK INCLUDED.

1.Leaving her house before daylight. (The cow and the Milk-pail are a fable), and journeying to St. Davids which she reached as the sun was rising.(To see her wounded brother). Passing the sentry,

2. She rested at ~~her~~ Mrs Stephen Secords for a few minutes, and then left.

3.Elizabeth Secord accompanied her as far as St. Catherines..then called Shipman's Corners.

4. She then went on alone, ever alert, and fearing that she would meet and be taken prisoner by the Americans or Indians before she reached the British lines, and had given the information to FitzGibbon.

5.Making her way through the forest; across streams that were swollen by the heavy rains, and over which she had to crawl on hands and knees on fallen trees, when she found that the rude bridges had been swept away; She travelled about twenty miles. She felt that the highway was too dangerous.

6.Being taken by some (Caughnawagas) Indians (who did not understand a word of English), to FitzGibbon to whom she delivered her message

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.FitzGibbon placed his men in preparation for an ambush.

2.He surrounded the Americans and forced them to surrender

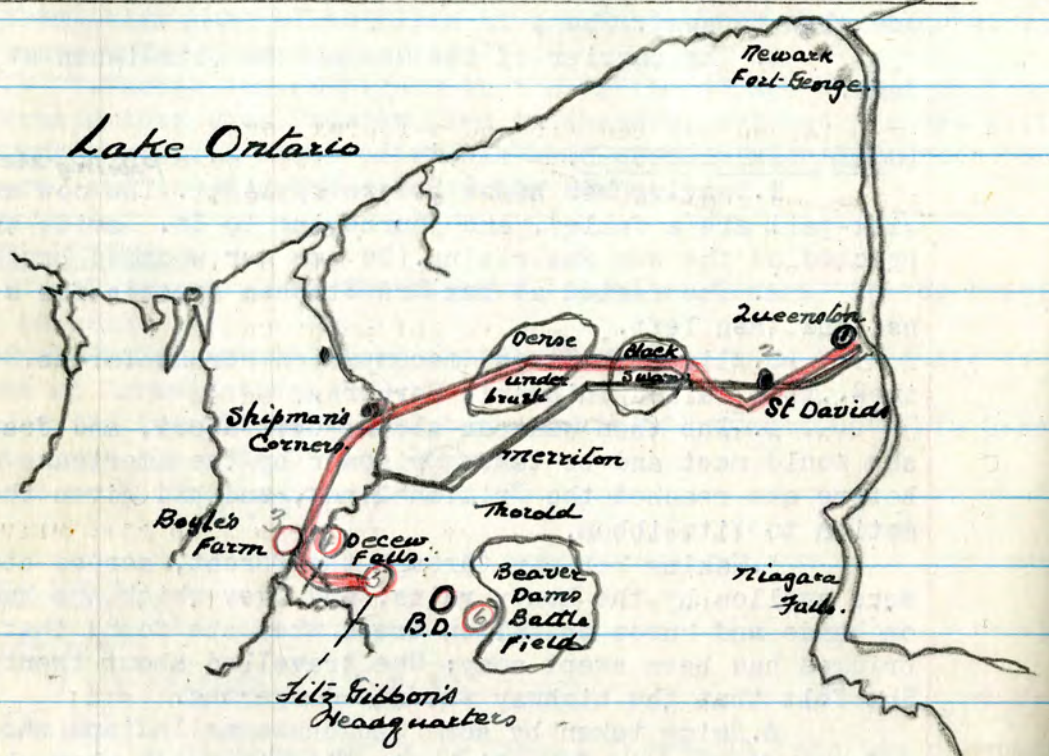
3.She had performed a sacred duty for her country, but did not attach the importance to her exploit that it merited.

4.A monument has been erected on Queenston Heights to commemorate her valour.

Note.....On one occasion three Americans called at her house in Queenston to ask for water. One of them said,"When we come for good to this country we'll divide the land, and I'll take this her for my share." Mrs. Secord was so nettled by the thought expressed that, although the men were civil and respectful, she replied sharply,"You scoundrel, all you'll ever get here will be six feet

of earth." When they were gone her heart reproached her for her heat, because the men had not molested her property. Two days after, two of t men returned. They said to Mrs. Secord, "You were right about the six feet of earth, missus." The third man had been killed.

(E) A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE COURSE FOLLOWED BY LAURA SECORD.



General Note. THE GROWTH OF CANADA AFTER THE WAR OF 1812-14.

Gradually Canada recovered from the effects of the war. Settlers from England, Ireland and Scotland began to flock to Canada. The soil was fertile; the people were industrious; religious liberty was asserted; schools and colleges were established; steamboats were built, and canals were made; banks were founded, and commerce and manufactures increased.

Upper Canada grew faster than Lower Canada. In 1804, Upper Canada's share of the revenue which was derived from the customs, excis and sale of lands and licenses, was increased to ONE-FIFTH. In 1822, THE CANADA TRADE ACT made a new division of the revenue, and awarded £30,000 as back dues to Upper Canada.

IX. THE LORDS OF THE LAKES AND THE FORESTS.

17. THE INDEPENDENT FUR-TRADERS.

(A)THE DATES.

1730-1783.

(B)THEY WERE:-

1.French fur-traders from Montreal from 1730 to 1763.

2.English and American Traders from Montreal after the conquest of Canada 1763.

3.Thomas and Joseph Frobisher.

4. Montreal Traders.

(C)THEIR WORK:-

1.They had pushed up into the western country beyond Lake Superior, and had covered the western prairies with fur-trading posts.

2. In 1772, the Frobishers, two of the Montreal Merchants built a log fort at Sturgeon Lake on the Saskatchewan River, in such a position that it intercepted the Indians as they were going down to the Hudson Bay by way of the Churchill River.

(D)THE RESULTS:

1.The Hudson's Bay Company discarded its traditional policy of confining its activities to the shores of Hudson Bay, ~~and~~ to begin the establishment of posts in the interior, because their supply of furs was being cut off at its source.

2. The H. B. Co. sent Samuel Hearne inland to establish a rival post on Sturgeon Lake..only 500 yards from the fort established by the Frobishers. It was named Fort Cumberland.

3.The building of these two posts ushered in half a century of conflict between the traders from ~~the~~ Hudson Bay and the traders from Canada.

4. The Hudson Bay Co. established a net-work of posts from the Athabasca Country to Minnesota, and from Hudson Bay to Oregon

5. The Montreal Traders joined forces, and formed the NORTH WEST COMPANY in 1783.

18. THE NORTH WEST COMPANY.

(A)THE DATES.

1783- 1821.

(B)IT WAS :

1. A Company of Montreal Traders who joined forces in 1783 to meet combat the influences of the Hudson Bay Company.(The first partners of the Company were Simon McTavish, Joseph Frobisher, John Gregory, William McGillivray, Angus Shaw, Rhoderick McKenzie, Cuthbert Grant, Alexander McLeod and William Thorburn. Most of them had previously been in the North-west as independent fur-traders. In 1802, a new agreement was entered into by the partners; and in 1804, the company absorbed its vigorous rival,

the X. Y. Company, and in 1821, it was itself absorbed into the H.B. Co

(C)ITS WORK INCLUDED:

1.Taking over the old posts of the French at Detroit, Michilimacinack, Sault Ste Marie, Grand Portage, and on the rivers south of the Great Lakes.

2.Establishing its headquarters at Grand Portage (Fort William) on Lake Superior.

3.Extending into the west by way of Rainy Lake, Lake of the Woods, and Lake Winnipeg, and gradually spreading out throughout the vast interior of the continent; building trading posts on the Red, Assiniboine and Saskatchewan Rivers; then on the Churchill and the Athabasca, the Peace and the Mackenzie, and west of the mountains throughout most of what is today British Columbia and the states immediately to the south of it.

4. Sending out explorers...Alexander Mackenzie, David Thompson, and Simon Fraser.(Peter Skene Ogden, Alexander Henry, and Daniel William Harmon).

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.A search was made for new and untapped sources of the fur-trade,and the traders kept pushing farther and farther west...

2. The Geography of the Canadian West was laid bare.

3. The barrier of the Rockies was pierced, and the Pacific slope was visited. (The aim of the early explorers had been achieved... an overland route to the waters of the Western Sea had been discovered.)

4.Maps of Western Canada were drawn by the fur-traders, and considerable was contributed to the discovery and exploration of the W.

19.THE HUDSON BAY COMPANY.

(A)ITS CLAIM TO THE COUNTRY.

1.In 1670, a royal charter gave the H.B.Co., sovereignty over all the territories watered by the rivers flowing into Hudson Bay.

(B)ITS EARLY WORK INCLUDED.

1.Establishing forts on Hudson Bay, and trading with the Indian of the Interior who took their furs to the H.B. posts.

2.Allowing the early Independent Traders to trade in the Interior without opposition.

(C)THE REASON FOR ITS CHANGE IN POLICY, AND ITS LATER WORK.

1.The establishment of the trading post on Sturgeon Lake by Hearne on the Saskatchewan River intercepted the Indians who usually went down to the H.B.Trading Posts by way of the Churchill River, and deprived them of numerous furs.

2.A rival post was established on Sturgeon Lake by Samuel Hearne, only five hundred yards from the Frobishers' Fort..It was named Fort Cumberland. This resulted in open rivalry.

3.Establishing a network of posts from the Athabasca Country to Minnesota, and from Hudson Bay to Oregon.

4.Sending out

Samuel Hearne

4. Sending out explorers....Joseph Howse.

5. Becoming almanganated with the North West Company in 1821.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.The Two Companies were united in 1821, and became known as THE HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY.

2.It gave Western Canada the only Government that it had for a number of years.....Its sovereignty continued until 1867 when the Dominion of Canada was formed.

3. It continued to enjoy a commanding position in the Canadian Fur-trade.

4. The Nor'-Westers....the Lords of the Lakes and Forest passed away,but the memory of the pathfinders such as Sir Alexander Mackenzie, David Thompson, and Simon Fraser is written forever in the Map of the Dominion of Canada.

5. It Governed Western Canada until 1867.
6. It protected the Indians who were their chief source of wealth. 7. It discouraged settlers.

20.SAMUEL HEARNE.

(A)THE DATES.

1745-1792.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A member of the H?B. Co., who came to Fort Prince of Wales on the Hudson's Bay Company's ship Prince Rupert.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1.Making a journey of exploration to the mouth of the Copper-mine River 1770-1.

2. Returning by way of Great Slave Lake, and arriving at the Fort in 1772. He wrote an account of his journey, and it is the basis of our knowledge today of the country visited.

3.Journeying to the Sturgeon Lake in 1774, and establishing Fort Cumberland five hundred yards from Frobisher's Post.

Being appointed Governor of Fort Prince of Wales in 1775

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.Rivalry was established between the Independent Traders and the H.B.Co., and considerable fighting later occurred.

21 JOSEPH HOWSE:

(A)THE DATES.

1773-1852.

(B)HE WAS:

1. An employee of the Hudson's Bay Company.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Crossing the Rocky Mountains in 1810 by the Pass that bears his name; and travelling down to Kalispell, Montana, where he built a trading post....the only post west of the Rockies constructed by the Hudson'S Bay Company prior to the union of

the two companies in 1821.

2. In 1814, he took part in the conflict with the North West Co on the Red River. He was captured and was held prisoner for a time.

3. In 1844, his Grammar of the Cree Language was published, and he was elected a fellow of the Royal Geographical Society. He died at Cirencester, England..1852.

22.HOWSE PASS.

It is in the Rocky Mountains, and is the source of the North Saskatchewan River.

2. It was discovered by Duncan McGillivray in 1800.

3. It was first traversed by David Thompson in 1807.

4. It was subsequently named after Joseph Howse, of the Hudson' Bay Company, who is sometimes confused with Jasper Hawse, or Howse of the North West Company, after whom Jasper House was named.

5. Howse Pass was for some years the thoroughfare of the fur-trade through the Rockies, until Piegan interfered and forced Thompson to open up the more northerly route by Athabasca Pass.

23.SIR ALEXANDER MACKENZIE.

(A) THE DATES.

1755..1788..1820.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A Scotsman who was born at Stornoway..on the Island of Lewis, Scotland, and emigrated to Canada in 1779, where he entered the employ of the Montreal Fur-trading merchants of Gregory & McLeod, and after spending several years with them, he was sent up to Detroit, then one o the distributing centresof the fur-trade.

aim (C)HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED.

1.Being a partner of an opposition company to the North West Company, and pushing into the far west to take charge of the trade in the Athabaska country.(Rivalry between the two groups of traders led to their amalgamation in 1787, and his responsibilities were correspondingly increased.

2. Deciding that Lake Athabasca was the strategic centre of his field of operations, and sending his cousin Rhoderick to build a Post there known as Fort Chipewyan.

3.Being loyal to his associates in the fur-trade, but feeling the call of the Pathfinder, which he followed as soon as the opportunity presented itself. To him the work of exploration was more congenial.

4. Starting from Fort Chipewyan in June 1789, and pushing his way north to Great Slave Lake, and down the great river that now bears his name to the Arctic. He had hoped and expected that it would lead him to the Pacific, but in this he was disappointed.

5. Returning to England to prepare for further exploration by perfecting his knowledge, and securing the necessary instruments. He intended to make another effort to reach the Pacific.

6. Sending men to build a Post on the Peace River in 1792; and wintering there so that he might set out early in the spring, and have as much time as possible for his expedition.

7. Setting out to the westward early in the spring of 1793, accompanied by Alexander McKay and a party of Voyageurs. and making their way up the Peace through the mountains, and then up one of its principal tributaries to the Parsnip.

8. Going from the headwaters of the Parsnip to the Fraser which they descended to a point where Alexandria was later built. Following the Blackwater, a western tributary of the Fraser, to its upper waters, and then crossing over the mountains to the Bella Coola which he descended until he reached salt water.

9. Overcroming the opposition of the natives, and continuning until he arrived at the rock on which he painted "Alexander MacKenzie from Canada by land, the twenty-second of July, one thousand seven hundred and ninety-three.

10. A momentous journey was completed, and the dream of an overland route to the western sea was accomplished, so he returned without incident to Chipewyan.

11. Preparing the narrative of his two journeys.

12. Representing a constituency in the Canadian Legislature. ~~13.~~

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. In 1808, he returned to Scotland where he spent the remainder of his life.

2. In 1802, he received a knighthood for the services rendered as an explorer.

A RESUME OF AN ARTICLE APPEARING IN THE CANADIAN MAGAZINE. OCT/33

The story of Fort Chipewyan is a thrilling narrative of far reaching exploration; an unending search for furs; of hardy and grim-featured adventurers, of toil and suffering, and of stern conflicts that often stained the northern snows with blood.

Soon after the conquest of Canada in 1763, swarms of adventurers, and adventurous traders swept westward like a tide. Undismayed by the two hundred portages, fierce rapids, and three thousand miles of wilderness, they paddled their loaded bark canoes to the north and west in search of new tribes with whom to trade. Many of these traders were never heard of again; others were robbed by the Indians, while many fell victims of the painted warriors, unleashed by Pontiac, and scoured the trails in search of Englaish scalps and plunder.

In 1767, Thomas Currie reached the Saskatchewan River, and upon his return to Montreal, he cleared $50,000 on his venture, and retired. This encouraged a number of hardy Scotch Highlanders, discharged English Soldiers, and others. They folcked westward and years of ceaseless activity and commercial warfare followed. Lawlessness spread rapidly, and the sale of rum demoralized the savages, so that they were near the point of open revolt.

The scourge of small-pox spread through out the land. Terrified natives scattered in all directions to avoid the plague, and within two years the Indian population was reduced to almost half of its forme numbers. The effect of the epidemic was threefold...

1.An Indian war was averted.

2.Most of the traders were brought to the verge of ruin.

3.The disreputable element was practically eliminated.

As a result, the rival traders appeared to realizethe folly of cutting each others throats, and they commenced the practice of pooling their goods and their profits.The results proved far more lucrative, and soon most of the prominent traders..Alexander Henry, The Frobishers, Peter Pond, and others considered, and consolidated their efforts in an attem pt to cut off the trade of the Indians of the Saskatchewan and the Nort west from the Hudson's Bay Traders at Fort Prince of Wales. In their effort they continued to push ever westward, intercepting the Indians enroute to Hudson Bay. In the spring of 1776 Henry and Frobisher traded over 12,000 beaver and other skins with the Chipewyan Indians whom they met on the Churchill River.

In 1778, Peter Pond visited the Athabasca Valley...He was the first white man to gaze upon that territory. Soon a suitable site for a trading post was selected about thirty miles from the place where the river enters Athabasca Lake. A rude log building was erected and was th nucleus of the future Fort Chipewyan..the cradle of exploration in the then unknown west. News of the arrival of the white trader soon spread to the surrounding Indians, and the red men soon gathered from far and near. The Beavers from the Peace River; the Caribou Eaters from the end of Lake Athabasca; the Slaveys from the Great Slave region; the Pointed Shirts or the Chip-wau-wans from the surrounding territory. With each new tribe, the calumet was smoked and Pond explained that he had established the trading post so that they would not have to journey so far with their furs..to the far off Hudson Bay, and the Indians were agreed that it would please them to have the shorter journey to make. Trade quickly flourished, and at the end of the season Pond had to leav over half of the furs behind as there wasn't room for them all in the canoes.

PETER POND

He ran away from home in Milford, Connecticut in 1740, when he was eighteen years of age. He entered the British Army and fought at Ticonderoga and Niagara against the French. In 1760 he enlisted for the fourth time and at the end of the war, he made a journey to the West Indies, in search of adventure. His first appearance in the fur-trade was at Detroit. He engaged in a duel and his opponent was unfortunate. Others who opposed this pirate and freebooter later were also unfortunate. He was thirty-eight years of age when he first sighted the Lake of Athabasca. He visited the lower reaches of the Peace River, and later penetrated to the land of the Dog-Rib and the Yellow-Knife Indian around Great Slave Lake. He was the first Geographer of the North West Company...preceding David Thompson. His maps were crude but they furnis

ed an excellent idea of the unexplored country to the north and west.

In 1783 the North West Company was established, and by 1785 most of the independent traders had been consolidated under the virile rule of a number of shrewd and aggressive Scotchmen...the McGillvrays; the McLeods; and the McTavishes. Their headquarters were at Montreal, and each Spring they went to Fort William to meet their wintering partners there. That marked the occasion for the assembling of the Scotch Factors; the French-Canadian Voyageurs; the Iroquois Canoe-men and the clerks of the North West Company. Feasting, drinking, merry-making allowed them to forget for a brief spell the toil, adversity and isolation of the life. Peter Pond and Pangman met McTavish at Fort William and expressed dissatisfaction with the existing arrangement. They announced their intention of returning to the west as rivals of the North West Company.

That summer, the firm of Gregory and McLeod was created, and Pond left for the Indian Country accompanied by Alexander Mackenzie who had been for five years in Gregory'y Counting house in Montreal. That winter there was a battle royal for furs on the shores of Lake Athabasca. Feeling became bitter, and in a fight that followed, a trader by the name of Ross was killed, and many others were injured. There was fear that the British Government would interfere, and as a result the two concerns united. The next year Pond left the north for good. He had killed Etienne Warden in 1780, and he was held largely responsible for Ross's death.

The ability of Alexander Mackenzie was recognized by the North West Company, and he was given charge of their interests in the entire region opened up by Pond. Rhoderick, his cousin, was immediately sent to Lake Athabasca to build a Post. and Fort Chipewyan was established. The life was lonely, and there was a craving for white company.

He had spent a winter in the region with Pond, and ever afterwards, he was filled with a desire to explore. It was felt that the Great Slave Lake was near the Pacific Ocean, and that its outlet followed the Rockies to the sea.

In 1789, he set out on his first journey of exploration which took him down the river that now bears his name to the Arctic Ocean. The entire journey occupied 102 days. The Mackenzie river was referred to in some of his letters as a RIVER OF DISAPPOINTMENT.

He was determined however to find the Pacific, and in preparation for his next trip, he visited England and took a course in mapmaking and surveying.

In 1792, he set out from Fort Chipewyan. He spent the winter trading with the Beaver Indians where the Smoky River enters the Peace near the present site or the town of Peace River.

In the spring of 1793, he commenced his arduous journey to the westward. Determination and cool courage overcame all obstacles, ar at last he was able to scrawl in vermillion paint upon a rock overlooki the Pacific....ALEXANDER MACKENZIE,FROM CANADA BY LAND THE 22ND OF JULY ONE THOUSAND SEVEN HUNDRED AND NINETY THREE. Thirty-three days later h was back at his starting place.

In 1802, the Hudson Bay Company sent Peter Fiddler to establish Nottingham House opposite Fort Chipewyan, in an effort to regain some of their lost trade. Fiddler was an unsuccessful factor, and the post was abandoned in 1806. In 1815 the H.B.Co. sent John Clarke to For Chipewyan. He establishe Fort Wedderburn and attempted to wrest from the North West Company some of the trade, but witout success. Fierce fightin g and rivalry continued until the two companies were united in 1821.

A SUMMARY OF ALEYANDER MACKENZIE'S WORK.

2#.ALEYANDER MACKENZIE.

(A)THE DATES

1788-1820

(B)HE WAS

1.A Scotsman who came to Canada in 1779 and entered the employ of the Montreal-Trading Company.He spent several years with them, and was sent to Detroit which was one of their trading posts.

2.The factor at Fort Chipewyan 1787.

(C)HIS AIM WAS

1.To establish a strong Fur-trading Post in the region of Lake Athabasca, for the N.W.Co.

2.To discover an overland route to the Pacific Ocean.

(D)HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1.Making two journeys of exploration.

On Journey Number One, he went down the Mackenzie R. to its mouth in the Arctic, and later called it THE RIVER OF DISAPPOINT MENTAbecause he had failed to find the Western Sea. 1789 (102 days)

33 days to return to F.C.

On Journey Number Two, he set out in 1792, and winter ed on the upper Peace River. In the spring of 1793, he set out to the westward. He visited the Parsnip River, the Fraser, the Blackwater, and the Bella Coola Rivers, and finally reached the Pacific where he painted on a rock..A.M. overland from Canada, July 22, 1793. (33)days. 4 return. His dream was accomplished, and he returned to Fort Chipewyan.

2.Preparing a narrative of his two journeys.

3. Representing a constituency in Lower Canada in the Parliamen

(E)THE RESULTS.

1.He solved the problem of reaching the Pacific by travelling overland.

2.The holding of vast areas of W Canada for The British Empire.

3. In 1801, he had his narrative published.

4. In 1802, he was knighted by George 111 in recognition of the service rendered as an explorer.

5. In 1808, he returned to Scotland where he died in 1820.

23

24. SIMON FRASER.

(THE DATES)

1776-1862

(B) HE WAS

1. Born in the State of Vermont.

2. Brought to Canada by his widowed mother and settled at Three Rivers, and later near Cornwall.

3. A Scot from Glengarry who entered the service of the North West Company in 1792.

4. A partner in the Company, and agent at Grand Portage 1797, and agent at Fort Liard in 1804.

5. Put in charge of the new field of New Caledonia, in 1805.....(west of the Mountains)

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Crossing the Rockies by the Peace River Pass, and ascending the Parsnip which was named McLeod, after Archibald Norman McLeod. (a Lake), and established a small post there.

2. Crossing over to the headwaters of the Fraser in 1806 with John Stuart, and descending it to a small tributary, up which he travelled to a lake which was named Stuart, and near the outlet he built Fort St. James.

3. Building Fort Fraser on Fraser Lake 1806.

4. Building Fort George in 1807.

5. Making his most important journey down the Fraser in 1808. The extraordinary dangers and difficulties, and the indomitable pluck with which it was pushed through to a successful completion has few parallels in the history of exploration. He followed the river practically to its mouth, and only then discovered that it was not the Columbia as he had supposed. On his journey down the Fraser he crossed the mouth of a large tributary which he named the Thompson in honour of his friend David Thompson.

6. Being promoted in 1811 to the Red River Department and being offered a knighthood as a recognition of his services in the cause of exploration...He declined the honour. He was present at the Seven Oaks affair, when Governor Semple of the Hudson Bay Company lost his life. He was also at Fort William when Lord Selkirk captured that post.

7. Retiring from the Fur trade about the time of the coalition of the North West Company and the Hudson'S Bay Company

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. He added materially to the knowledge of the West.

2. His explorations played a conspicuous part in the History of exploration.

3. He died at Cornwall, Ontaio,; and the Hudson's Bay Company placed a memorial over his grave in 1921.

23 A SUMMARY RE SIMON FRASER.

1.He was a Scot from Glengarry who entered the service of the North West Company, and later became a partner.

He crossed the Rockies by the Peace River Pass in search of the Columbia River whose mouth had been discovered by some American Explorers. He gave the name NEW CALEDONIA to the country now known as British Columbia, and it retained it until 1859. In 1808, he explored the Fraser River to its mouth, and was disappointed to discover that it was too far north to be the Columbia. On his way back he explored the Thompson River which he named in honour of his Friend David Thompson.

He added materially to the knowledge of the West, and his expedition played a conspicuous part in the history of exploration. The Hudson's Bay Co erected a memorial over his grave in 1921.

THE FRASER RIVER

It rises in the Rocky Mountains with one branch arising near Mount Robson, and the other near Mount Brown. It flows into the Strait of Georgia.

Its upper waters were discovered by Alexander Mackenzie,1793 and it was first explored down to its mouth by Simon Fraser, 1808. It was named Rio Blanca in 1791 by the Spanish explorer, Eliza. He had learned of its existence from the Indians. Vancouver passed its mouth in 1792 without discovering the river. James McMillan, of the Hudson's Bay Company, explored the mouth of the river in 1824.

The total length of the river is 695 miles. It has many tributaries, the principal ones being...the Nechaco, Stuart, Thompson, Chilcotin, and the Blackwater.

25.DAVID THOMPSON

(A)THE DATES

1770-1857

(B)HE WAS

1. A Welshman wh was born at Westminster, England.
2.An employee of the Hudson's Bay Company 1784-1797.
3.An employee of the North West Company from 1797-1812.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED

1.Exploring and surveying the Nelson, Churchill, and the Saskatchewan, and the intervening territory, and north by way of Reindeer River, Reindeer Lake, and Black River to Lake Athabasca.

2.Leaving the H.B.Co. because the officers were unsympathetic towards his plans for making a comprehensive survey of the immense territory, and turning with relief to their rivals who gave him practically a free hand and ample facilities for exploration.

3. Exploring the upper waters of the Assiniboine, making a journey overland to the Mandan Villages on the Missouri; and another to the headwaters of the Mississippi; and surveying portions of the upper waters of the Saskatchewan, Athabasca, and Peace Rivers.

4.Exploring the entire systems of the Columbia and Kootenay Rivers from their sources to their mouths from 1807 to 1811.

5.Leaving the employ of the North West Company 1812.

6.Surveying and defining the International Boundary line from 1816 to 1826.

7.Preparing his great map of the North West, which hung for many years in the hall of Fort William, and is now preserved in the Ontario Archives.

8.Carrying out several minor surveys in what is now Eastern Canada.

(D) THE RESULTS.

1.He is considered the greatest land geographer ~~that~~ who ever lived.

2.His explorations and surveys opened up and revealed the vast area of western Canada.

24 A SUMMARY RE DAVID THOMPSON.

He was a Welshman who was the astronomer for the North West Company.

He explored the Bow River Pass, and in 1811 traced the Columbia to its mouth. He spent the rest of his time at Kootenay House making maps for the traders going into the interior. His maps of the mainland of British Columbia and the North West are monuments to his industry and skill.

In 1812, he settled near Montreal. He died in 1857, and was the greatest land geographer who ever lived.

X. THE SILVER CHIEF.

26.LORD SELKIRK.

(A)THE DATES.

1771-1820

(B)HE WAS

1. A wealthy Scotchman who took a keen interest in the state of the Highlands, and the sufferings resulting from the policies of the great landlords or landowners who were consolidating small crofts into great sheep runs.

2. An advocate of emigration.

3.An advocate of Parliamentary reform.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED,

1.Advocating the establishment of schools in which the young Indians of North America might be taught useful occupations; the establishment of Indian Reservations; and the total suppression of the liquor traffic among the Indians.

2.Broaching the idea of establishing a colony on the Red River in 1802.That was thought too remote, and he turned his attention to the eastern coast, and took out a party of 800 Highlanders to Prince Edward Island in 1803.

3. Travelling through Lower and Upper Canada to decide on a sit for the establishment of another settlement. He Bought a tract of land near Lake St. Clair and named it Baldoon. This settlement for various reasons did not survive or thrive.

4. Offering to build a road from York to Amherstburg, taking in payment grants of land on either side of the road. This offer was rejected. 5.He went back to his original scheme...in 1810...regarding the establishment of a settlement in the Red River region.

6.Securing a large block of stock in the Hudson's Bay Company, and proposing to purchase from the Company a tract of land on either sid of the Red River...over one hundred thousand square miles. This was agreed to, and Selkirk threw himself into plans for securing his colonists, transporting them to the remote banks of the Red River, and establishing them there.

7. Putting a young Canadian, Miles Macdonell, in charge of the expedition which finally entered Hudson Bay in September 1811, wintered at York Factory, and in 1812 reached Red River.

8. Having additional settlers come out in 1813, 1814 and 1815. Robert Semple brought out a hundred Highlanders, mostly from Kildonan.

9.Coming out to Canada in 1815 because of the difficulties and the determined opposition on the part of the North West Company. These had caused a very serious situation, and the existence of the infant colony was in jeopardy.

10.Failing to enlist the active support of the Government of Canada, he collected a number of disbanded Swiss soldiers and took them out with him to the Red River in 1817.

The early years of the colony were filled with trials and tribulations; conflicts between fur-traders and settlers; charges and counter-charges, and cases in courts which usually came to nothing.

11. Returning to England in 1818, disillusioned and dispirited.

12 His health failed and he was driven to southern France where he died in 182o.

A SUMMARY OF LORD SELKIRK.

Lord Selkirk was a wealthy Scottish Nobleman who played a conspicuous part in the settlement of Canada. During his attendance at the Edinburgh University he became interested in social and political questions, and unpon completing his studies, he wished to assist the poor Highlanders in the north of Scotland.

The conditions in Scotland at that time were far from ideal. The Landlords began to turn their estates into sheepfarms. The poor tenants were in many cases driven from their homes; and those who remained found it difficult to make a living from the barren soil.

In 1803 he transported a number of them to Prince Edward Island. He also established a colony at Baldoon near Lake St. Clair in upper Canad, in 1803, but this settlement did not thrive. He offered to build a road from Baldoon to York but his offer was not accepted.

In 1811, he bought a controlling interest in the Hudson Bay Company, and secured a tract of land on either side of the Red River and embracing 116,000 square miles or 45 million acres. His reason for doing this was to overcome the opposition of the Fur-traders to colonization of the west.

Settlers were brought to western Canada by way of Hudson Bay. They arrived at York Factory on H.B., and found that there was no accommodation for them. They had to spend that winter of 1811-12 in tents or huts built by themselves. In the spring they had to make the journey from York Factory to the Red River by the lakes and rivers. Upon their arrival at the junction of the Red and the Assiniboine Rivers they established a settlement under the leadership of Captain Miles Macdonnell. They had to build houses for themselves; break the soil with hoes and spades, and sow the seed for their first crop of grain

The traders of the North West Company regarded them as interlopers and adopted a hostile and threatening attitude against the colonists. They had attacked the colony, and blood had been spilled..shed. The H.B. Post on the Red River was captured by the North West Traders; the settlement had been broken up; and the settlers had been driven to Lake Winnipeg, or had been persuaded to leave the Red River and settle in Upper Canada. These were promised money and land.

Those who had fled northward met a party of colonists under Captain Robert Semple, who had been sent out by Selkirk to act as the governor of the colony. They returned to the Red River and re-established the colony. In 1816, the French-half-breeds in the Red River valley, instigated by the N.W.Co attacked Governor Semple and his men, shot them down almost to a man, captured Fort Douglas, and forced the settlers to flee once more to Lake Winnipeg. This engagement was known as the MASSACRE OF SEVEN OAKS, and was little less than cold-blooded murder.

Lord Selkirk arrived in Canada and was on his way to his colony when he heard of the Massacre. He took a company of soldiers with him, and upon his arrival at Fort William, he captured the Headquarters of the North West Company. In the spring of 1817 he continued to the Red River where he retook Fort Douglas, brought back the colonists, re-established the colony, and restored order. He made a treaty with the Indians under which they agreed not to molest the settlers. His generosity earned for him the title...THE SILVER CHIEF.. He named the colony KILDONAN, and it continued to flourish.

Selkirk was the pioneer of settlement in Western Canada, but upon his return to Canada, he was prosecuted by the North West Company because he had conspired to ruin the trade of the company. Owing to the influence of the N.W.Co. in the Government of Canada, he was found guilty, and was ordered

to pay heavy damages. He then appealed to the Prime Minister of Great Britain, Lord Liverpool, against the decision of the Canadian Courts, and while waiting for the investigation, his health failed, and he went to southern France. He died in 1820.

The Red River Settlement continued to grow under the direction of the Hudson's Bay Company. The population was increased by some of the soldiers who remained to farm, to hunt, and to trap. The city of Winnipeg is a living memorial to his foresight and determination. The whole Canadian West is included in this memorial.

A SUMMARY RE LORD SELKIRK.

(A)THE DATES.

1771-1820

(B)HE WAS

1. A wealthy Scotsman who took a keen interest in the suffering of the poor tenants of the Scotish Highland; and who played a conspicuous part in the settlement of different parts of Canada.

(C)THE REASONS FOR THE EXISTING CONDITIONS IN SCOTLAND WERE:

1.The landowners began to turn their estates into sheepfarms.

2.The poor tenants were in many cases driven from their homes.

3.Those who remained were unable to make a living from the barren lands, of northern Scotland.

(D)THE SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED BY SELKIRK IN CANADA WERE:

1.Prince Edward Island.....1803

2.Baldoon..Upper Canada near Lake St. Clair...1803

3.The Red River Settlement , or the Selkirk Settlement..1811-1

*(E) Prince Edward Island Settlement.

1. It was established in 1803.

2. He took out a party of eight hundred highlanders, and once the colony was fairly well established, he left it and travelled through Lower and Upper Canada.

* (F)Baldoon ,

1.It was asettlement near Lake St. Clair in Upper Canada, made by Lord Selkirk in 1803, and named after one of his own estates.

2.Some of the highland settlers that he brought out to Prince Edward Island moved to Baldoon.

3. It was situated in a swampy district, and the colony did not thrive.

4. The war of 1812 added its hardships to those of fever and ague. 5.Baldoon Street was built by Selkirk Settlers, from Baldoon to Chatham on the Thames River early in the nineteenth century.

(G)THE RED RIVER COLONY.....LORD SELKIRK'S SETTLEMENT...KILDONAN.

(1.In 1810, Lord Selkirk secured a large block of stock in the

omit.

1. In 1811, Lord Selkirk bought (from the Hudson's Bay Company) a controlling interest, and obtained a grant of forty-five million acres in what are now Manitoba and Minnesota. His object was to establish a colony there, and took this method of overcoming the objection of the H.B.Co., and the N.W.Co., to the colonization of the west.

2. He recruited a party of emigrants in the north of Scotland and in Ireland, and sent them out to Hudson Bay, as an advance guard to the colony that was to be established in the Red River Valley.

3. Upon their arrival at York Factory, they found that no provision had been made for them, and they had to spend the first winter in huts and cabins ~~for~~ built by themselves. In the spring of 1812 they journeyed by way of the lakes and rivers to the junction of the Red and the Assiniboine Rivers where they established a settlement under the Governorship of Captain MILES MACDONELL. They had to build houses for themselves, break the soil with hoes and spades, and sow the seed for their first crop of grain. In 1813, another party of colonists went through a similar experience; and the North West Company made it clear to the settlers that they were not welcome. They adopted a hostile and threatening attitude toward them, and persecuted them through the traders, Indians and half-breeds.

(4. In 1814, Macdonnell issued a proclamation prohibiting the export of provisions for one year.)

4. The Nor'-Westers attacked the colony, (and blood was shed.) The Hudson's Bay Company's post on the Red River, FORT DOUGLAS was surrendered, and the colony was broken up. Some of the settlers were driven north to the shores of Lake Winnipeg, and others were induced by promises of land and money to leave the Red River and settle in Upper Canada.

5. Those who had fled north-ward met a party of colonists under the leadership of GOVERNOR SEMPLE who had been appointed by Selkirk to act as Governor. They returned to the Red River and reestablished the colony.

6. In 1816, the French Half-breeds, encouraged instigated by the Nor'Westers, attacked Governor Semple and his men. They shot them down almost to a man, captured Fort Douglas, and forced the settlers to flee once more to Lake Winnipeg. This engagement was known as the MASSACRE OF SEVEN OAKS, and was little less than cold-blooded murder.

7. Lord Selkirk had arrived in Canada, and was on his way to the colony when he heard of the massacre. He took a company of soldiers with him, and upon his arrival at Fort William, he captured the head-quarters of the North West Company. In the spring of 1817, he continued to the Red River where he retook Fort Douglas, brought back the colonists,

re-established the colony, and restored order. He made a treaty with th Indians under which they agreed not to molest the settlers. His generos ity earned for him the title..THE SILVER CHIEF. He named the settlement KILDONAN, and it continued to flourish.

8. Selkirk was the pioneer of settlement in Western Canada, bu upon his return to Canada, he was prosecuted by the North West Company. The Charge was that he conspired to ruin the trade of the Company.... the counter-charge was that the N.W.Co. did commit murder; and owing to the influence of the N.W.Co. in the Government of Canada, he was found guilty, and was ordered to pay a heavy fine. He felt that justice had miscarried, and appealed to Lord Liverpool, Prime Minister of Great Britain against the decision of the Canadian Courts. While waiting for the inquiry to be made, his health failed, and he went to Southern Fran where he died in 1820.

(H)THE RESULTS.

1.The first permanent settlement was established in W. Canada.

2.The settlement continued to grow under the direction of the HudsOn's Bay Company.

3. The population was increased by the soldiers who remained t farm, to hunt, and to trap.

4. The City of Winnipeg is an outgrowth of the Selkirk Settlement.

5.The City of Winnipeg, and the whole Canadian West is a living memorial to his foresight and determination.

6.Some years after his death, the land was sold back to the H.B.Co., and for fifty years the settlement did not progress very rapid but it gradually grew and became the door-way ~~to the~~ of the western Canada

XI.SOME PIONEERS OF UPPER CANADA.1791-1850.

27.Pioneer Life in Upper Canada 1791-1850

1.The life of the pioneers of Upper Canada was marked by numerous attractions, and numerous drawbacks.....

1.Attractions.....Large grants of land were an inducement to numerous settlers.The country was beautiful, and there was plenty of food..game and fish; and plenty of fuel.

2.Bread.....Baked from ground grain in fireplaces or in ashes.

3.Clothing.....Homemade from homespun wool and linen.

4.Education.....Schools and churches were few...Education wa neglected.

5.Flour.....Made from grain that was ground in the homin block or coffee-mill.

6.Furniture.....Homemade.

7.Farming.....Crude..numerous stumps..Seed sown by hand... The grain was harvested by the sickle,or cradle, and it was threshed with a flail.

8.Homes.....They were located in the unbroken f
forests, at a distance from each other
9.Houses.....Logs..and of one room.
10.Light.....Blazing pine-knots and candles.
11.Markets.....From 50 to 100 miles away..and trade
was carried on by barter.
12.Medicine.....Fresh Air; plain food; hard work and
herbs.
13.Roads.....Few and poor. In 1820 improved.Simcoe.
14.Recreation... Bees; visiting settlements and familie
15.Soap.....From Wood ashes.
16.Work.....Hard..in order to clear the land.Crops
were sown by hand. Implements were cru
de.
17.Summary.....Some of the early pioneers had to
undergo more suffering than others.The
majority underwent hardships of a half
civilized life, but as time passed
improvements slowly appeared.

28.SOME PIONEERS OF UPPER CANADA.

PIONEER LIFE IN UPPER CANADA 1791-1850.

The early settlers were compelled to suffer many hardships. Their homes were situated in the wilderness, far from settlements, and far from each other. There was plenty of land available, and an abundance of fish and game. Much toil was necessary before the land was cleared. Crops were sown when space was cleared. Implements were crude. Roads were poor and few until Colonel Simcoe had them improved in 1820. The houses were built of logs, and were chinked with mud. They usually consisted of only one room. The furniture was home-mad Linen and wool were hand spun, and the people made their own clothing and boots. Generally they had to cut the roots of trees out with mattocks. Seed was scattered by hand, and the grain was garnered with a sickle or cradle. Threshing was done with a flail. The grain was ground in a hominy-block or coffee mill. They baked their bread over a fire-place or in hot ashes Soap was made from wood-ashes. Light was often a Pine Knot. Later, they made their own tallow candles. Their medicine was fresh air, work, plain food, and a few herbs. For recreation they visited neighbours or settlements. Often it was necessary for the pioneers to travel fifty or even a hundred miles to sell their produce or to buy supplies. Schools and churches were few so that it was difficult to educate their children.

Harvest

Some of the people had to suffer more than others but the majority of them had to undergo the hardships of a half-civilized life. As time went on improvements slowly appeared.

28. SOME PIONEERS OF UPPER CANADA.

(A) THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS.

The first settlers of Upper Canada were the United Empire Loyalists who came after 1783. They settled along the north shore of the St.Lawrence River; around the Bay of Quinte; in the Niagara Peninsu and along the Detroit River. Joseph Brant, a chief of an Iroquois Tribe brought a number of Loyalists to U.Canada and was established on a reservation in Brant County.

The Late Loyalists established a colony at Long Point on Lake Erie, and also settled in various parts of western Upper Canada. These late Loyalists included a number of Americans who were induced to come to Canada by offers of very cheap land...during the Governorship of John Graves Simcoe. They were obliged to take the Oath Of Allegiance to the British Sovereign. Between 1791 - 1796 Gov. Simcoe welcomed many settl

x. The war of 1812 discontinued the tide of immigration from the U.S.A. for some years.

x In 1791 the population of Upper Canada was 6000.

(B) THE BRITISH IMMIGRANTS.

After the War of 1812, immigrants began to arrive in Upper Canada from the British Isles. These increased in volume year by year and finally outnumbered the original American Loyalist Element, and gave th Province of Upper Canada its distinctively British Character.

Some of the leaders of the settlement movement in Upper Canad were:-Lord Selkirk, Peter Robinson, Colonel Thomas Talbot, John Galt, an Colonel By. Archibald McNab.

(C) THE SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED IN UPPER CANADA WERE:

1. Baldoon, near Lake St. Clair.....1803.
2. Glengarry, on the St. Lawrence River.
3. Lanark, on the Ottawa River.
4. x McNab settement on Ottawa. Zorra, near Woodstock.
5. Oro, on Lake Simcoe.
6. Peterborough.....1825.
7. Talbot Settlement in the County of Elgin.
8. Huron Tract...in the County of Huron.
9. Kitchener...German settlers from Pennsylvania..1806
10. Bytown on the Ottawa River..1826.

(D) LORD SELKIRK'S SETTLEMENT.

A settlement was established at Baldoon in Upper Canada near Lake St.Clair by Lord Selkirk in 1803. He named it after his own estate The number of settlers there was swelled by a number of those who had been brought to Prince Edward Island in the same year, marched and later moving to Baldoon It was situated in a swampy district, and the colony did not thrive. The war of 1812 added its hardships to those of fever and ague. The settlers built Baldoon Street from the settlement to the present city of Chatham on the Thames River.

(E)THE GLENGARRY SETTLEMENT. 1804-5.

Numbers of Highlanders from Glengarry in Scotland came to Upper Canada and joined their fellow-clansmen in the county of Glengarry on the north shore of the St.Lawrence River. Several grants of land were obtained for the disbanding Glengarry regiment. Bishop McDonell promoted the interestsof the colonists.

(F)THE LANARK SETTLEMENT.

Numbers of Lowlanders came from Lanark in Scotland and settled in Lanark County on the Ottawa River in Upper Can.

(G)THE MacNAB SETTLEMENT. 1825.

This settlement was established by Archibald MacNab, the last of the chiefs of the MacNab Clan. It was situated on the Upper Ottawa River, some distance above the present city of Ottawa. MacNab's feudal control was so extreme that there were constant quarrels between the Laird and his tenants which became so troublesome that the Government in 1842 finally bought out his rights for $16,000. (MacNab moved to Hamilton where he lived until 1852, when he returned to Scotland to take over a small estate left to him in the Orkneys.)

(H)THE ZORRA SETTLEMENT.

A Scotch settlement was established in the western part of Upper Canada in the district known as Zorra near Woodstock.

(I)THE ORO SETTLEMENT.

This settlement was established on Lake Simcoe.

GENERAL NOTE RE SCOTCH SETTLEMENTS.

One outstanding result of this early Scotch immigration, a very large proportion of the people of Ontario bear Scottish names. Of the Prime Ministers of Canada, three have been of pure Scottish descent. They settled in groups or blocks

(J)THE PETERBOROUGH SETTLEMENT. 1825.

The country of Ireland had experienced a rebellion in 1798, and shortly afterwards, a number of Irish immigrants came to Upper Canada. The first notable Irish settlement was founded by Peter Robinson in 1825 at Peterborough.

(At the time of the great Irish Famine in 1847, a great number of Irish peasants came to Upper Canada. They became established in numerous centres...and many of the most famous families of Ontario include such names as..Baldwin, Blake, and Meredith.)

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING THE ENGLISH IMMIGRANTS.

They did not settle in groups or blocks as the Scotch, but in the majority of cases they settled here, there and everywhere. Some of the disbanded soldiers settled in groups after the Napoleonic Wars. The immigrants were retired naval and military officers who took up lan in the backwoods, and they tried to supplement their pensions by farmin They did not always make a success of their farms, but they contributed a valuable element to the life of the province. Their high standards and superior education marked them off from many of the immigrants, An example of this class of settler was COLONEL SAMUEL STRICKLAND, a membe of a family notable in the history of early Canadian Literature.

COLONEL SAMUEL STRICKLAND wrote "Twenty-seven years in Canad West". It is the best account of the early experiences of the early settlers. His sisters...MRS MOODIE AND MRS TRAILLE also contributed considerable to the literature and the history of the time.

Settlers of the above type helped to lift life in Upper Cana out of the level of a mere struggle for existence.

(K)THE TALBOT SETTLEMENT.

(A)THOMAS.TALBOT 1771-1853. and his settlement

He was born at Malahide, in the County of Dublin, Ireland. H entered the army, and obtained a commission in 1782. He spent some tim with Sir Arthur Wellesley,THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON, and was for a time aide-de-camp to the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland. In 1790, he joined the 24th regiment as a lieutenant at Quebec, and later became attached to staff of Governor Simcoe. He accompanied Simcoe on his tour of western Upper Canada; and he seems to have conceived the idea of founding a se settlement on the shores of Lake Erie.

He returned to Europe when war broke out with France. Upon the signing of the Treaty of Amiens, he resigned and obtained in 1801 a grant of 5000 acres on the north shore of Lake Erie for the purposes of establishing a settlement, and devoted himself to its development.

He built a log cabin of three rooms at Port Talbot, and from there directed the settlement of the neighbouring townships. The progre of the settlement was at first slow. By 1809, only twelve families had settled along what was known as "the Talbot Road". Gradually the number settlers increased. By 1831, there were 40,000 settlers, and before 1853, there were about 75,000 settlers, including the people of London and St. Thomas.

Port Talbot became the centre of an ever-widening region of cultivated land, and twenty-eight townships were settled as a result of his efforts, before he died.

He was characterized by his pride in his birth, his military and court training, his domineering temperament, his isolation, and his desire to accululate a great landed estate. Talbot Road and settlement were merely incidental to his main object. He was unflinchingly loyal to his settlers, and always welcomed them in his own home.To religious

political and moral reform he was blindly opposed or contemptuously indifferent.)

He was a familiar figure throughout the entire settlement over which he ruled like a mediaeval baron. He gave no title-deeds to his settlers, but he merely entered their names in pencil on a large map in his office, and if the land changed hands, the name was erased, and the new one substituted.

He was responsible for the building of the Talbot Road; laying the foundations of the county of Elgin; and laying the foundations of the city of London.

(L)THE HURON SETTLEMENT.

(A)THE CANADA COMPANY.

The Canada Company was founded in London, England, in 1824, by John Galt, as a colonizing scheme. A large tract of land was purchased in what is now western Ontario. Dunlop, Talbot, Strickland, and other pioneers of Upper Canada were associated with Galt in the enterprise.

The tract of land secured by this company was known as THE HURON TRACT.The superintendent of the Company was John Galt, the Scottish novelist.

He was instrumental in having the towns of Guelph and Goderich established...(1827..Guelph).The name of Shade's Mills was changed to Galt in honour of his work.

The Canada Company built a road through the forest of the Huron Tract and established a communication by land between Lake Ontario and Lake Huron. Settlers poured into the counties of Waterloo, Perth, Huron and Bruce.

In 1829, the town of Goderich, on Lake Huron only had four families, but in less than ten years it was a prosperous town of five thousand persons.

For years the Canada Company was hampered by lack of funds, but in 1833, the Governor of Canada, LORD DALHOUSIE, was able to congratulate John Galt on the success of his colonizing scheme. The settlers brought to Canada by this company were almost all of a high type.

Western Ontario owes a debt of gratitude to Galt as well as to Talbot.

(M) THE KITCHENER SETTLEMENT.

In 1806 a number of German settlers came from Pennsylvania and founded the present city of Kitchener in Waterloo county. It was then known as the Berlin settlement.

(N)THE BY SETTLEMENT.

In 1826, Colonel John By, an English Engineer officer was in charge of the building the Rideau Canal. He chose Bytown, the present city of Ottawa, as the headquarters for

his men. The Rideau Canal extends from Ottawa to Kingston, and the first steamer passed through it in the spring of 1832. The name Bytown was changed to Ottawa in 1854.

Between 1791 and 1796 Governor Simcoe welcomed to Canada many settlers from the U.S.A. who caused the government much justifiable anxiety during the war of 1812.

In 1791 the population of Upper Canada was 6000, and in 1850 it had increased to 800,000. This was a greater population than that of Lower Canada. Most of the British Immigrants were voluntary and unaided. They saw no future in the Old World and came out to the New to secure for themselves and their children a better chance. Apart from the trading professional and official classes, the basic industries were fishing, lumbering and agriculture. Fishing and lumbering were followed chiefly in the Maritime Provinces, and in the rest of Canada it was Agriculture.

(C) THE SETTLEMENTS ESTABLISHED IN UPPER CANADA WERE:

SETTLEMENT	LOCATION	LEADER
1. Baldoon Settlement.	near Lake St. Clair	Lord Selkirk...1803 Sc
2. Glengarry Settlement	In Glengarry C., on the North Shore of the St. Lawrence River.	Bishop McDonell 1804-5 Highland Scotch.
3. Kitchener Settlement	In Waterloo County at the City of Berlin.....	Germans from Pennsylvania U.S.A. 1806
4. Talbot Settlement	In the Counties of Elgin and Middlesex, N of Lake Erie.....	Colonel Thomas Talbot Irish 1809.
5. Huron Tract	In the Counties of Waterloo, Perth, Huron and Bruce.....	John Galt.. Scot. 1824...
6. MacNab Settlement	North of the present city of Ottawa on the Ottawa River.....	Archibald MacNab 1825 Scot.
7. Peterbourough S't.	In the present county of Peterborough.....	Peter Robinson 1825 Irish
8. Bytown Settlement	At the present site of the City of Ottawa.....	Colonel John By; 1826 English
9. Zorra Settlement	Near Woodstock in O.C.	Scotch----------
10. Oro Settlement	On Lake Simcoe---------	Scotch----------
11 Lanark Settlement	On Ottawa River	Lowland Scotch.

JANUARY EXAMINATION.....1934.

1. AN ENGLISH EXPLORER.

2. a. The discoverer of Hudson Bay was:
Henry Hudson.

1. B. The date was:
1610

2. THE FOUNDING OF THE GREAT COMPANY.

a. The two men directly associated with the founding of the Hudson's Bay Company: were:

2. 1. Pierre Esprit Radisson.

2. 2. Medard Chouart des Groseilliers.

3. The Acadians

9. a. Three reasons for the expulsion of the Acadians were:

3x3 1. Agents from France and Quebec kept the Acadians hostile to the English.

2. The French at Louisburg paid for English Scalps.

3. The French claimed that the ceded Acadia ended with the Isthmus of Chignecto.

4. The Acadians refused to take the Oath of Allegiance to the British.

5. War war imminent, and the English feared treachery.

6. The belief that the expulsion of the Acadians was necessary for the military safety of Nova Scotia.

4. THE HERO OF QUEBEC.

9. a. Three reasons for the success of Wolfe in the siege of

3x3 Quebec were:

1. The information relayed to him by Major Patrick MacKellar, the Secret Service Agent or Spy who had been in Quebec, was such that Wolfe knew the particulars of the defence of the city.

2. The Orders given by Montcalm for a regiment of French Regulars to be stationed on the Plains of Abraham had been countermanded by Governor Vaudreuil.

3. France had neglected her navy to such an extent that it was helpless in the struggle for Canada. The fate of Canada was determined by the sea-power of Great Britain to a large extent. So long as the British fleet commanded the waters between Canada and the old world, it was sure to win sooner or later.

5. THE STRUGGLE FOR THE FOURTEENTH COLONY.

15. a. The dates, and the historical incidents or occurr-

3x5 ences that marked the Governorship of Sir Guy Carleton, were:

1. 1774...He was instrumental in having the Quebec Act passed.

2. 1775-6. He defended Canada against the attack made by the Americans, during the American Revolution.

3.1776...He destroyed the American Fleet on Lake Champlain.
4.1783-4.He assisted the United Empire Loyalists to come to Canada, and to settle in the country.
5.1791...He was instrumental in having the Constitutional Act passed.This act gave special privileges to the English and the French. It established the Assembly in the Government.

6. THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS

a.The places where they settled in Upper Canada were:

4. 1.Along the north shore of the St. Lawrence River.
2.Around the Bay of Quinte.
3.In the Niagara Peninsula.
4.Along the Detroit River.
x A loyalist Indian Tribe under Joseph Brant settled on a reservation in the present county of Brant, on the Grand River

9. b.Three values of the Loyalists to Canada were:

3x3 1.The coming of the U.E.Loyalists changed the colony from a purely French Colony to a colony in which the British predominated.
2.Canada was enriched by a population of good citizens. They were persevering, hardworking, fearless, loyal freedom-loving, and had ideals of government.
3.They helped to open the country quickly.
4.They proved a strong defence to Canada in the war of 1812, and saved her from annexation with the United States.
5. They brought ideals of self-government to Canada as they had been accustomed to self-government in the Colonies.
6.They were dissatisfied with a government in which they had no voice, and ultimately helped Canada to gain a government that was responsible to the people.
7. Fields were cleared.
8. Roads were built.
9.Schools and churches were planned.
10.The march of civilization had begun.

7.THE FATHER OF UPPER CANADA.

a.Five things included in the work of John Graves Simcoe were:

15 1.Abolition of Slavery.
3x5 2.Assisting the Agricultural communities of Upper Canada.
3.Arranging for the election of members to the legislature.
4.Building up a system of education.
5.Building of Roads...Yonge Street; Highway Number two; Kingston
6.Care of the Indians of Upper Canada.
7.Choosing the site for the Provincial Capital.
8.Dividing the Province into counties and naming them.
9.Increasing the population of Upper Canada.
10.Making the first Provincial laws.
11.Making journeys of exploration to provide him with first-hand information in connection with the needs of the province.

12.Organizing the Government of Upper Canada.
13.Promoting trade with the U.S.A.
14.Providing an adequate currency.
15.Supplying a means for enforcing law and order.

8.THE HERO OF UPPER CANADA.

2. a.The Indian Chief who was associated with Brock in the siege of Detroit 1812 was:

Tecumseh.

9. 3x3 b.THREE REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE AMERICANS IN THE WAR OF 1812-14 were:

1.Canada was at that time a country almost without roads and as a result, the invading Armies of the Americans found it difficult to penetrate it.

2.Canada was defended by tried British Regulars, whereas the American Soldiers were but half-trained .

3.The Indian Allies of the British hated the Americans, and respected the British.

4.Canada had been settled by the United Empire Loyalists who had been driven from the U.S.A.; and they were not easily to be driven from their new homes.

5.The Canadian border was defended in the early stages of the war by Sir Isaac Brock who had a genius for warfare.

9.THE LORDS OF THE LAKES AND FORESTS.

6. 2x3 a.Three explorers sent out by the North West Company were:

1.Alexander Mackenzie. 1789-1792-3
2.Simon Fraser. 1805-1808
3.David Thompson. 1807-1811

2 2x1 b.One explorer sent out by the Hudson's Bay Company was:

1.Samuel Hearne. 1770-2

1. c.The year in which the North West Company and the Hudson's Bay Company united was:

1.1821

10.THE SILVER CHIEF.

6 2x3 a.The reasons for the existing conditions in Scotland were:

1.The landowners began to turn their estates into sheep farms. 2.The poor tenants were in many cases driven from their homes. 3.Those who remained in Scotland were unable to make a living from the barren lands of northern Scotland.

3 1x3 b.The settlements established by Selkirk in Canada were:

1.Prince Edward Island .....1803.
2.Baldoon, Upper Canada near Lake St.Clair...1803.
3.The Red River Settlement or the Selkirk Settlement1811

11. SOME PIONEERS OF UPPER CANADA.

3. a. Three of the pioneers in establishing settlements in Upper Canada wer

1x3. x. Lord Selkirk.

1. Archibald MacNab.....	The MacNab Settlement. Ottawa R.
2. Peter Robinson.....	The Peterborough Settlement.
3. Thomas Talbot.....	The Talbot Settlement....L. Erie
4. John Galt.....	The Huron Tract..Canada Co.
5. Colonel John By.....	Bytown..later named Ottawa.

100

THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT.

1791- 1849

THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT.

1. THE GROWTH OF DEMOCRACY.

1. Democracy is the Government by the people collectively by elected representatives; and political or social equality.

This was manifest in the United States, and in the British Isles, especially among the Scotch and Irish, and among some classes of the English.

2. THE INTRODUCTION OF THE DEMOCRATIC SPIRIT TO CANADA.

It was brought to Canada by the Emigrants from The U.S.A., and by those who came to Canada from England. Although they found condition better in Canada, they introduced a feeling of discontent..(Oppressed)

3. THE REASONS FOR THE REPRESSIVE MEASURES OF THE CANADIAN GOVERNMENT WERE

1. The Canadian Government was afraid of disturbances after the war of 1812-14.

2. It was afraid of the introduction of the Democratic Spirit because of the extremes that were evidenced as a result of the French Revolution; and because of the condition of the Canadian People. (They were scattered; mainly uneducated as there were no schools or colleges, and there was no political education or experience provided for them. Some of the Canadians were advocating annexation with the United States. Some of them cared little for dignity and culture; and some of them were opposed to having any form of government.

3. It was afraid of the traditional loyalty of the United Empire Loyalists to the King, and to established institutions.

(There was a lack of sympathy between the Government and the people.)

4. THE GOVERNMENTS OF UPPER AND LOWER CANADA.

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA.
THE FAMILY COMPACT. This was a group of Tory leaders in Upper Canada, so nicknamed by their political opponents because they held power as a distinct group, allied by bonds of political, social and religious sympathies. Lord Durham characterized it as being fortified by family connection, and the common interest felt by all who held, and all who desired subordinate offices. It was thus erected into a solid and permanent power that was controlled by no responsibility, subject to no serious charge, and exercising an independent authority over the Government representatives. and considerable influence	THE SCOTCH PARTY. This was a group, somewhat similar to the Family Compact in U. and was composed of public officials merchants, lawyers, and judges, who assumed control of the government. This group included the leaders of the commercial life of Quebec, and Montreal where the Scottish element was prominent, and for that reason was sometimes called the Scotch Party. From its ranks were drawn mo of the members of the Executive and Legislative Councils.

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA.
WITH THE Government at home, or the colonial representatives of the crown.	
The Family Compact came into power during the governorship of John Graves Simcoe.	The Scotch Party came into power during the early days of British rule after the conquest.

Both parties disappeared as political forces when responsible government was established in 1849.

The Government was not responsible to the people.	The Government was not responsible to the people.
1.The Governor was a new-comer to Canada and knew little about the country.	1.The Executive Council was appointed by the Governor, and held office at his pleasure.
2.The Executive Council was appointed for life, and was not responsible to the people.	2.The Legislative Council was appointed by the Governor, and held office for life.
3.The Legislative Council was appointed for life, and was not responsible to the people.	3.Judges and other salaried officials were members of the councils.
4.The officials..judges, etc. whom they appointed were usually from among their own friends.	4.The Assembly, representing the people had no voice in the government.

THE COLONIAL OFFICE WAS UNSYMPATHETIC BECAUSE THEY DID NOT WISH TO GIVE THE COLONY THE RIGHT OF SELF GOVERNMENT.

5. THE LEADERS IN PROTEST AGAINST THE EXISTING CONDITIONS WERE:

1.Robert Gourlay	1.Louis Joseph Papineau
2.William Lyon Mackenzie	2.Lafontaine
	3.Morin
3.Lount.	4.Cartier
4. Matthews	5.Dr.Wolfred Nelson
5. Van Egmond	

*6.THE REBELLION OF 1837-8.

(A)CAUSES

1.The Growth of democracy.

People entering the country brought with them a democratic spirit.

2.The repressive measures of the Canadian Government

1.There was a lack of sympathy between the government and the people.

2.The Canadian Government was afraid of the after disturbances of the War of 1812-14.

3.They were afraid of the democratic spirit because of the extremes in the French Revolution; and because the Canadian people were scattered, mainly uneducated, desirous of annexation with the U.S. and opposed in some cases to any form of government.

4.The loyalty of the United Empire Loyalists.

3.The defects of the Constitutional Act.

1.The Assembly which represented the people did not hav control of the revenue.

2.The Executive Council and the Legislative Council wer appointed, not elected.

3.The Executive Council could not be removed for wrongdoing.

4.The division of the Country into a French and a Briti Province gave rise to jealousy.

5.The selection of the Clergy Reserves in Upper Canada, hindered the opening up of the country and the making of roads.

6.The largeness of the grant of land--one-seventh, and the fact that there was state support to the church were opposed by many.

7.The fact that Lower Canada had the ports of entry, an the collection of the customs, and the control of trade.

4.The political abuses in Upper and Lower Canada.

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA.
1.The Family Compact was formed. Members of the government and their friends joined together to secure all public offices.	1.The French elected the majority of the members of the Asse bly, but they had very little to sa in the affairs of the province.
2.The F.C. had control of the making and administering of the laws, control of the Revenue, control of Crown Lands.	2.The Executive and Legislat councils were appointed by the crow They were composed chiefly of Brit h.
3.The F.C. abused their power by giving large tracts to their friends at low prices.	3.The S.C. often acted in opposition to the wishes of the peo and their representatives.
4.They gave church grants to the Anglican Church, and refused other Protestant denominations.	4.The British Government refused government reform wherein the Assembly was to control the revenue and the councils were to be responsible to the people.
5 The F.C. hindered government reform for many years.	

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA
5.EFFORTS IN PARLIAMENT TO SECURE REFORM.	
1.Leaders of the Reform Party 1.Baldwin - moderate Ref. 2.William Lyon MacKenzie 3.Robert Gourlay 4.Lount 5.Matthews 6.Van Egmond	1.Leaders of the Reform Party. 1.Louis Joseph Papineau 2.Lafontaine 3.Morin 4.Cartier 5.Dr. Wolfred Nelson.
2.The Assembly 1.The Assembly tried to have the defects of the Constitutional Act, and the abuses of the government removed.	2.The Assembly 1.The Assembly tried to have the defects of the Constitutional Act, and the abuses of the government removed.
3.Their efforts were fruitless because:- 1.The Assembly had no means of controlling the Governor and the Executive Council.	3.Their efforts were fruitless because:- 1.The Assembly had no means of controlling the Governor andthe Executive Councils

6.There was a desire by a few to make Canada a copy of England with a state Church. (Anglican..leader Dr. John Strachan (Presbyterian..Established Church of Scotland)(Methodists were not recognized);having an aristocracy: having large land estates Officials, and wild lands were not taxed. This hindered opening of the country.

THE REBELLION OF 1837-8.	
1.Maitland as Governor of U. C. was afraid that the people would over-throw order and culture. 2.Colborne as governor was persuaded by the Family Compact that agitators for reform were traitors and rebels. 3.Bond Head as governor quarrelled with the council and assembly, and determined to rule alone.	1.The Government took a conciliatory attitude; offered to redress grievances; asked for a definite statement of grievances were afraid to grant control of the public revenue to the Assembly.; and were hampered by the colonial secretary. 2 The colonial secretary was willing to grant minor concessions but refused to grant Responsible Government; and control of the rev. by the Assembly.

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA
4.The assembly demanded government reforms, but these wereerefused by Bond Head, and the assembly dissolved.	3.French-Canadians were killed by troops in election riots. 4.This incited the French against the government.
5.In the elections, Reform agitators were charged with treason and rebellion; the governor and the F.C. used every influence; and many of the liberals were alarmed by MacKenzie's extreme language.	5.The French sent NINETY/TWO RESOLUTIONS to Wm 1V.King of England. 6.The threatened rebellion if their demands were not granted. 7.They spoke af American Annexation.
6.The new Assembly was favourable to the Governor and the F.Compact.	8.A commission of three was sent to Canada to investigate and to report conditions. 9.Gosford, the new Governor, was at its head, and he was friendly to the French. He promised that the French would have a share in the offices; that French was to be the official language as well as English; and that the Legislative Council was to be elective.
7.The Governor ignored orders received from the Colonial Secretary. 8.He dictated to the Colonial Secretary and was recalled. 9.Reform agitators became desperate, and MacKenzie talked of annexation with the U.S.A.	10.The agitators learned that the Colonial office had not granted their requests through a report made by Bond Head.
10.The reformers then planned a Rebellion.	11.The Assembly refused to vote supplies to pay judges and other officials.
11.This commenced with secret drilling, and the withdrawal of the moderate reformers under Baldwin. 12.The Governor sent regular troops to Montreal and tried to provoke Mackenzie to action. 13.The rebels met in Toronto 1837	12.The Governor had other money at his disposal and kept up their pay. 13.The Colonial Secretary granted power to pay officials out of public funds without the consent of the Assembly.
14.Mackenzie planned to seize the Governor; to establish a Provisional government; to insist on a free election for a new Assembly; and to proclaim Independence if this could not be obtained.	14.Papineau urged an armed rebellion; was promised help from the U.S. and denounced the action of the Colonial Secretary, and praised the American Revolutionists.
15.The above plans were voted down, but a plan was adopted to seize the governor, and the Government, and toronto.	15.The Governor forbade meetings but they were carried on.

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA.
16.Fitzgibbon was appointed by the government to defend Toronto.	16.The Roman Catholic Bishop and the Parish Priests tried to bring about peace.
17.MacKenzie's arrest was ordered.	17.The government gathered troops to quell the disturbances
18.The date of the attack on Toronto was changed so that some of the rebels were not acquainted with the activities.	18.At a meeting at St.Charles Dr. Wolfred Nelson was the chair man, and Papineau was the speak er.
19.The rebels became discouraged because the men had not all been on hand; the movement in Lower Canada was a failure; and one of their leaders was killed.	19.An oath was taken to win the rights of the people or die. Many arrests were made.
20. MacKenzie marched into Toronto, but retreated to Montgomery's Tavern. The rebels were dispersed by Fitzgibbon's troops.	20.At St.Denis, Dr. Nelson and 500 rebels fought with great courage, and the government troops were defeated.
21.MacKenzie escaped to the U.S.A. and set up a Provisional government on Navy Island in the Niagara River. He obtained supplies by the Caroline.	21.At St. Charles, the defend ers were put to the bayonet, and the village was burned.
22.The Caroline was cut from under the guns of the Americans Fort, was set on fire, and was allowed to drift over the Falls.	22.At St. Eustache, the rebels made their last stand in a churc This was burned, and those within to the number of 75 perished.
23.An apology was made later regarding this lawless act.	23.Papineau fled to the U.S.A at the first move to arms, and claimed that he went for help.
24.MacKenzie was allowed to return to Canada later but he did not take an active part in politics.	24.Nelson and seven others were exiled by their own consent and without a trial.
25.The rebel leaders Lount and Matthews were hanged; Van Egmond was allowed to die in a Toronto Jail; and others were exiled.	25. The rebellion in Lower Canada led to a report which was sent to the British Government by Lord Durham.
26.The rebellion in U.C. paved the way for securing Responsible Government.	26. It led to Responsible Government.
	27.It led to a union of the Canadas.
	28.The regular government was suspended,and a special committe was appointed to govern the Prov.

IN UPPER CANADA	IN LOWER CANADA.
THE SECOND REBELLION 1838.	
1.Mackenzie and other exiled rebels were in the U.S.A appealing to the Americans for help.	1.Papineau and other exiled rebel were in the U.S.A appealing to the Americans for help.
2.Hunter's Lodges were formed in the American Border districts.	2.The French in Canada planned a new rebellion, and an armed revolt broke out in Montreal.
3.In these, 40000 men were prepared to invade Canada.	3. This was frustrated by Colborn
4.At Prescott, 500 men crossed into Canada, and were defeated by the Canadians. 45 Canadians were killed; 100 prisoners were taken; and 4 of these were hanged.	4.The rebel sympathisers from the U.S.A. entered Canada led by Robert Nelson, a brother of Dr. Nelson. These proclaimed Lower Canada a republic.
5.At Sandwich, a Canadian steamboat was burned; the barracks was set on fire, and two soldiers were burned to death. The invaders were driven out, and six were killed.	5.The Laws of the new republic all ed--a Free Press; manhood suffrage; vote by ballot; religious equality; and freehold tenure.
6.	6.The rebels were joined by thous nds of peasants who were armed with pitchforks and rakes.
	7.They were defeated by Colborne 800 prisoners were captured; 12 were executed; and others were banished to Australia.

THE RESAONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE REBELLION OF 1837-8.

1.The leaders, Papineau and MacKenzie misjudged the feelings of the people regarding reform.

2.In Lower Canada, the church and the Seigneurs sided with the ruling faction.

XIII. THE LITTLE REBEL

1. WILLIAM LYON MACKENZIE.

(A) THE DATES WERE:

1795--1820--1824-1837-1838-1861.

(B) HE WAS:-

1. A young Scotsman who came to Canada (Upper) in 1820

2. One of the most famous figures in the history of Upper Canada, and one who exerted a profound influence on the course of events in Upper Canada during the struggle for Responsible Government.

3. A shopkeeper or general merchant who settled in York, and later moved to Dundas, near Hamilton; and then to Queenston near Niagara.

4. A newspaper editor and proprietor of the Colonial Advocatewhich was started in 1824, and was later moved to York.

5. An opponent of the Family Compact in Upper Canada for over twenty years.

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Opposing the rule of the Compact by two different methods;;;;;;a, He edited the Colonial Advocate in which he exposed the abuses of the Government, and at the same time he educated the people.

b. He sat in the Assembly and did what he could to lessen the control of the Executive Council.

2. Taking an active part in drawing up the "Seventh Report on Grievances", which was sent to London, England.

3. Going about the country making speeches and exposing the abuses as he saw them.

4. Corresponding with the reform leaders in Lower Canada and in England. (Papineau) and (Hume)

5. Trying to gain for the people of Upper Canada,-

1. Responsible Government.
2. Control of official salaries.
3. Control of Public Lands;
4. Abolition of the Clergy Reserves.
5. Reforms in the banking law.

6. Leading a rebellion in Upper Canada against the Government when Bond Head became the Lieutenant Governor, and he was defeated in the election..1837. The rising failed, and he was forced to flee from the country.

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. The attack on the established Government failed, but the work of Mackenzie resulted in the Canadian people gaining a voice in the control of their own affairs.

(B)1. WILLIAM LYON MACKENZIE.

(A) THE DATES:/

1820-1824-1831-1835-1836- 1837-1838-1849-1861

(B) HE WAS:-

1. A young Scotsman who came to Canada in 1820.
2. One of the most famous figures in the History of Upper Ca
3. A Shopkeeper, and later the Editor and proprietor of a Ne Paper, the Colonial advocate.
4. An opponent of the Family Compact in Upper Canada.
5. An agitator, and leader of the extreme reformers.
6. The chief champion of the popular rights of the people in Upper Canada against the governing class.
7. A member of the Legislative Assembly who attacked the adm istration of the Province so that he was expelled from parliament.

(C) THE CENTRES IN WHICH HE WAS ESTABLISHED WERE:

1. York.
2. Dundas near Hamilton.
3. Niagara) Queenston on the Niagara
4. York.

E. (D) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Attacking the government of Upper Canada in the columns the Colonial Advocate, and exposing the abuses of the Family Compact.
2. Being elected to the Legislative Assembly for York, and taking an active part in the Parliament.
3. Attacking the administration of the Province...(He was expelled from the Assembly in 1831. He was re-elected by his constituents and was again expelled. This time he was declared incapable of sitting in the House. Five times in all he was expelled, and five times he was re-el ed.)
4. Being elected the first mayor of the newly-incorporated city of Toronto.
5. Taking an active part in drawing up the SEVENTH REPORT ON GRIEVANCES, which was published in 1835. This embodied the platform of the Reformers.
6. Organizing an uprising against the government.
7. Leading the rebels against Toronto. (They were turned back by a small number of Loyalists, and a day or so later, they were routed in a sham fight near Montgomery's Tavern, on Yonge Street. Numbers of th rebels were captured and thrown into prison where some of them died. In the spring of 1838, two of Mackenzie's Lieutenants..Samuel Lount and Peter Matthews were hanged in Toronto as traitors.
8. Fleeing from Canada, and setting up a provisional Governme on Navy Island in the Niagara River. (He enlisted the aid of the America in an attempt to capture the government of Canada. He was arrested by the Americans as a menace to the peace of Great Britain and the U.S.A.
9. Being allowed to return to Canada, in 1849, and entering politics. He was no longer a popular hero, and later retired.

D. (E)THE OBJECTS OF HIS REFORMS WERE TO GAIN:

1. Responsible Government.
2. Control of salaries, of officials.
3. Control of Public Lands.
4. Abolition of the Clergy Reserves.
5. Reform in the banking law.

(F)THE RESULTS WERE:

1. The rebellion was a failure, because the majority of the people of Upper Canada were loyal and law-abiding. They believed that they were fighting for their rights, and had been led astray.

2. Attention was drawn to the abuses of the government.

3. The people of Upper Canada were allowed a greater voice in the control of their own affairs.

2. The Members of the Government at the time 1824-1836. were,

1. REV. JOHN STRACHAN.

He was a Scots Schoolmaster who had come to Canada in 1799, and who ultimately became the First Anglican Bishop of Toronto.

2. JOHN BEVERLY ROBINSON.

He was the able and high-minded son of a distinguished Loyalist Family. He later became the Chief Justice of the Province.

3. SIR PEREGRINE MAITLAND. 1824-1836

He was the Lieutenant-governor in 1824.

He had commanded the first division in Wellington's Army at the battle of Waterloo, and was a man of High character and principles.

He and his advisers held views that were unpopular with many of the people of Upper Canada. They looked with distrust on modern tendencies, and did not believe that it was advisable to let the people at large have too much to say in the government of the Province. (They were practically all member of the Church of England, which they regarded as the established Church of Upper Canada, even though the majority of the people belonged to other churches.

4. SIR FRANCIS BOND HEAD. 1836—

He was the Lieutenant Governor of U.C. in 1836.

He believed that the attitude of the Assembly was disloyal. He entered the election as though he were a candidate for election, and played a conspicuous part in it.

His attitude frightened the people of U.C. into thinking that MacKenzie and the Reformers were working for the separation of Canada from Great Britain. This resulted in the defeat of Mackenzie and most of his friends, and led to the rebellion of 1837.

3/ 2. THE FAMILY COMPACT.

1. The Family Compact was the ruling class in Upper Canada under the Constitutional Act, and came into being during the Governorship of John Graves Simcoe. It consisted of the Governor, the Legislative Council and the Executive Council. The members (of the above) were appointed, and could not be removed for wrong-doing, even though they administered the affairs of the Province as they pleased, and in their own interests.

The members of the Compact and their friends were bound close together by race, religion, and kinship or relationship.

The definite abuses which were charged to the Compact were:-

1. Large tracts of land were granted to the friends of men in power.
2. Corruption was allowed to go unpunished.
3. Exorbitant salaries were paid to officials.
4. The Anglican Church was favoured in the matter of the Clergy Reserves.

*The methods of the Family Compact was one of the chief causes of the Rebellion of 1837-8.

5. It was highly abusive in its treatment of opponents (John Gourlay, the first leader of the Reform Party, was persecuted until his mind gave way; and William Lyon MacKenzie, his successor, was five times expelled from the Assembly though legally elected).

X JOHN GOURLAY.

He was a Land Agent who came to Canada from Scotland in 1817. He attacked the method of granting lands because of the Clergy Reserves, and the large areas held for speculation by the members of the Family Compactas they hindered settlement.

A Convention was called to discuss this matter. This was declared unconstitutional by the Government. Gourlay then gave his opinion regarding the government's decision in the Niagara Spectator. The Editor was arrested, fined, and imprisoned for a year and a half.

Gourlay was also arrested and imprisoned. His mind gave way, or became unbalanced, and he was ordered to leave the country. He had been the first leader of the reform Party in Upper Canada, and upon his removal, he was followed by William Lyon MacKenzie

XIII. THE TRIBUNE OF THE PEOPLE.

4. LOUIS JOSEPH PAPINEAU.

(A) THE DATES

1. 1786- (1812 - 1815 - 1822 - 1834 - 1837-8 - 1844 - 1854 - 1871

(B) HE WAS:

1. The son of Joseph Papineau, a French-Canadian Seignior who had helped Carleton defend Quebec against the Americans in 1775-6.

2. An admirer, in his younger days, of British rule and British Institutions.

3. An officer on the British side in the War of 1812.

(4. A born leader of men. Erect, tall, well-built, with fine features and a commanding presence. An eloquent speaker which enabled him to sway the sympathies of his fellow-men.)

4. 5. The unrivalled leader of the great mass of French-Canadians, (and) who became known as "the tribune of the people", because he championed the rights of the French people in Lower Canada.

5. 6. The leader of the Reform Party in the (Legislative) Assembly, and the leader in the struggle for Political Reform. in Lower Canada

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED.

0 1. Serving as an Officer in the British Army during the War of 1812-14.

3 2. Praising the benefits of British rule in Canada in 1820.

4 3. Learning of a plot, in 1822, on the part of some of the British in Lower Canada to bring about a union of Upper and Lower Canada, with a view to submerging the French in a larger English-speaking population; and then turning against the British Government in Canada. He became a bitter antagonist of the governing class in Lower Canada.

1 4. Being elected to the Assembly in 1812.

2 5. Being chosen speaker or chairman of the Assembly 1815 (He held this position in successive Assemblies for over 20 years) and became the unrivalled leader of the French-Canadian People. He became known as "THE TRIBUNE OF THE PEOPLE" because he championed the rights of the French People.

5 6. Criticising the Government, the Governors, and the attitude of the ruling faction toward the French.

6 7. Introducing in 1834, into the Assembly the famous NINETY-TWO RESOLUTIONS, and threatening that Lower Canada might break loose from the British Empire.

7 8. Inducing the Assembly to withhold the voting of money to carry on the government, and thereby forcing the British parliament to authorize the government of Lower Canada to pay money out of the Provincial Treasury without the approval of the assembly.

8 9.Advocating:---

1.An Elective Legislative Council.

2.That no Government official could sit in the Legislative Council.

3.That judges were to remain out of Politics.

4.That the Assembly was to have control of the revenue and thereby make all salaried officials, including the Governor, dependent on Parliament for their salaries;(The governing body was afraid to grant this, lest they would be cut off without their salaries if they offended Papineau and his friends.)

9. 10Organizing his friends into a group known as "the PATRIOTS".

10. 11.Becoming an extreme reformer, and favouring a rebellion.

11. 12.Allowing "THE SONS OF LIBERTY," as some of the young French-Canadians called themselves, to come into conflict with members of the "DORIC CLUB" formed by the sons of the English and Scottish families in Montreal.

12. 13.Being advised by the French Clergy to leave the city. He accepted the advice, and left for the Country. The English thought that he had left Montreal to rouse the parishes in revolt, and ordered his arrest, as well as the arrest of a number of other Patriots.

13. 14.Fleeing to the U.S.A. when fighting commenced, where he tried to induce the American Government to interfere in Canada. He failed in this, and went to France where he remained for six years.

14. 15.Returning to Canada after the general amnesty was granted to the rebels.(in 1844)

15. 16.Re-entering the legislature; and finally retiring from political life in 1854.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.The rebellion failed.

2.The attention of the British Parliament was drawn to the defects of the Government in Lower Canada.

3.The People were allowed a greater voice in their own affairs.

4. Numerous lives were lost.

5. Considerable property was destroyed.

(E) THE ASSOCIATES OF PAPINEAU IN THE REBELLION OF 1837-8.

1. Papineau, Louis Joseph...was the chief figure.
2. Wolfred Nelson.
3. Dr. Chenier.
4. Lafontaine.
5. Morin.
6. Cartier.
7. Girod.
8. Robert Nelson.

P 124

5. THE SCOTCH PARTY OR THE CHATEAU CLIQUE. Introduced in Canada shortly after the Conquest. 1759

This was a group, somewhat similar to the Family Compact of Upper Canada, and was composed of public officials, merchants, lawyers,

and judges who assumed control of the government. (The governing class in Lower Canada was nicknamed "THE CHATEAU CLIQUE"). It included the leaders of the commercial life of Quebec and Montreal where the Scotch element was predominent, and for that reason it was sometimes called the SCOTCH PARTY. From its ranks were drawn most of the members of the Executive and the Legislative Councils, and as a whole the government took no pains to conceal their belief that the French Canadians were an inferior race, and were fit only to be governed, but not to govern.

There were those among the official class who frankly avowed that the language, the religion, and the ancient laws of the French in Canada should be suppressed or abolished.

6. THE REBELLION OF 1837-8.

(A) THE CAUSES WERE:

1. The growth of Democracy.
2. The occurrence of Democracy in Canada.
3. The repressive measuresof the Canadian Government in regard to Democracy. The refusal of the C. G. to consider reforms.
4. The defects of the Constitutional Act.
5. The Political Abuses in Upper And Lower Canada.
6. The desire to make Canada a copy of England.
7. The lack of sympathy between the Government and the people. (racial jealousy). (Race, Language, Religion.)
8. The fact that the government was not responsible to the people.
9. The failure of the efforts in Parliament to secure reform.
10. The unsympathetic attitude of the Colonial Office.

THE ABOVE CAUSES FULLY EXPLAINED.

(1) THE GROWTH OF DEMOCRACY.

1. Democracy is the government by the people collectively by elected representatives, and portrays political and social equality.

2. This was manifest in the United States, and in the British Isles, especially among the Scotch and Irish; and among some classes of the English.

(2) THE OCCURRENCE OF DEMOCRACY IN CANADA.

1. It was brought to Canada by the emigrants from the U.S.A., and by those who came to Canada from The British Isles. Upon their arrival in Canada, they introduced a feeling of discontent, even though they found conditiond more agreeable than they had had in their home-lands, where they had been oppressed.

(3)THE REPRESSIVE MEASURES OF THE CANADIAN GOVERNMENT REGARDING DEMOCRA
WERE CAUSED BY:

1.Fear of disturbances after the War of 1812.

2.Fear of the Democratic spirit, because of the extremes of th French Revolution; and because of the condition of the Canadian People. (They were scattered; mainly uneducated as there were no schools or colleges, and there was no opportunity for political education; some of them wished to join the United States; Some of them cared little for dignity and culture; Some of them were opposed to any ordered governmen

3.The traditional loyalty of the United Empire Loyalists to th king, and to established institutions.

(4)THE DEFECTS OF THE CONSTITUTIONAL ACT.

Although the British Government took great pains to make a thorough enquiry before passing the Constitutional Act, it had many defects;-

1.The Assembly which represented the people, was not given control of the revenue.

2.The Executive Council and the Legislative Council were appoi ed, not elected.

3. The Executive Council could not be removed for wrong-doing.

4.The division of the country into a French and a British province gave rise to many jealousies.

5.The way in which the CLERGY RESERVES were selected hindered the opening up of the country and the making of roads. The largeness of the grant of land--one-seventh of the land--and the fact that there was state support to the church weeopposed by many.

6.Lower Canada had the ports of entry, and therefore the collec ion of the customs and the control of trade.

(5)THE POLITICAL ABUSES IN UPPER AND LOWER CANADA.

1.IN UPPER CANADA.

1.The members of the government and their friends joined toget to secure for themselves all of the public offices. They were called t FAMILY COMPACT, and had control of the making and also the administeri of the law. They had control of the revenue and also of the crown land and they abuses their power by giving large tracts to their friends at low prices. They gave many grants from the Clergy Reserves to the Chur of England, and for a time refused other Protestant denominations. The strength of the Compact was shown by their success in hindering all reforms in the government for many years.

2IN LOWER CANADA.

The French people of Lower Canada elected the majority of the members of the Assembly, and yet they seemed to have but little voice i controlling and directing the affairs of the Province, as the Executive Council and the Legislative Council were appointed by the Crown, and we composed mostly of persons of British Origin, who often acted in oppos ion to the wishes of the people and their representatives.

The Legislative Assembly wished to secure control of the revenue, and to have the Councils responsible to the people; but the British Government refused to grant these reforms.

(6)THE DESIRE TO MAKE CANADA A COPY OF ENGLAND.

There was the desire on the part of those in power to have a State Church. According to the Constitutional Act, land was set aside for the support of the Protestant Clergy. It was claimed for the Church of England by Dr. John Strachan who was the leader in this claim. The Presbyterians claimed a share, as that was the established Church of Scotland. The Methodists were not recognized. Their ministers could not perform the marriage ceremony until 1824. This land hindered the opening of the country.

There was to be an Aristocracy; and there were to be large landed estates. The officials held great areas of wild lands which they had received free or for very small payments. These lands were not taxed, and they hindered the opening of the country

(7)THE LACK OF SYMPATHY BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENT AND THE PEOPLE.

The people in Lower Canada were French in manners and language. The people were Roman Catholic in faith, and the governing body was Protestant. The British adopted British customs and Language.

(8)THE FACT THAT THE GOVERNMENT WAS NOT RESPONSIBLE TO THE PEOPLE.

The Executive Council was appointed by the Governor, and held office at his pleasure. The Legislative Council was appointed by the Governor, and held office for life. Judges and other salaried officials were members of the councils. The Assembl which represented the people had no voice in the Government.

(9)THE UNSYMPATHETIC ATTITUDE OF THE COLONIAL OFFICE.

The Colonial Office did not wish to give the Colonies the right to self-government, and knew little of the conditions in Canada.

(10)THE FAILURE OF THE EFFORTS IN PARLIAMENT TO SE CURE REFORM.

The reform party in Lower Canada was led by Papineau and Dr. Nelson, while Rolph, Baldwin and MacKenzie were the leaders in Upper Canada. Efforts were made in the Assemblies of both Provinces to have the defects of the Constitutional Act remedied, and the abuses of the government removed, but as the Assembly had no means of controlling the Governor and the Executive Council, little could be done.

* SOME ADDITIONAL NOTE REGARDING THE CAUSES OF THE REBELLION.

The Constitutional Act gave the greater part of the financial control to the governor and council. This made it possible for them to ignore the wishes of the assembly.

2.By degrees the Councils were selected from small groups of men who became known as the Family Compact, and the Scotch Party or th Chateau Clique. They prided themselves on being English-born and Angli and Scotch-born and Presbyterian. They branded the Assembly as disloya and American. As there was at that time no municipal government, the Family Compact and the Scotch Party controlled the appointment of all officials in the provinces, however humble.

3.The quarrel over the Clergy Reserves in Upper Canada became acute. Although an arrangement had been made whereby the Anglican Chur received slightly more than one-quarter, the Presbyterian Church, sligh ly less than one-quarter, and the other churches the remaining half, th retiring governors had the habit of leaving the distribution of the re ve land till the last minute before leaving Canada, and then distribut only the Anglican share.

4.The Compact was highly abusive in its treatment of its oppone ts. John Gourlay, the leader of the Reform Party in Upper Canada, was persecuted until his mind gave way, and William Lyon Mackenzie, his successor, was five times expelled from the Assembly though legally elected.

5.In 1836, Sir Francis Bond Head came to Canada(Upper)as the Lieutenant-Governor. The Assembly disagreed with him and refused to vote supplies. Then the governor dissolved it and ordered a new electi He went into the election like a candidate at the polls. He persuaded people that the imperial tie was at stake. The result overwhelmed the reformers, most of whom went down to defeat, including MacKenzie. Constitutional methods were then abandoned and preparations were made for rebellion.

XXXXXX 6.In both Upper and Lower Canada the Governor was appointed by the British authorities. He was responsible for his actions only to them. He chose his advisers to carry on the business of the country, a they were responsible for their actions only to him. They controlled most of the revenue and could therefore appoint and pay officials, mak and execute laws regardless as to whether anyone objected or not.

The Legislative Assembly representing the people objected to the arbitrary power of the governor and his council.

In Lower Canada, racial jealousy was added to the political discord, while in Upper Canada, the Clergy Reserves and the status of the Anglican Church embittered the conflict.

Certain definite abuses were charged to the group of office-holders known as the Family Compact...

1.Huge tracts of land were granted to friends of the men in power.

2.Corruption was allowed to go unpunished.

3.Exorbitant salaries were paid officials.

4. Canada did not have Responsible Government.

(B)THE REBELLION

1.IN UPPER CANADA.

1.The leader was ...

William Lyon MacKenzie.

2.The engagement was...

Montgomery's Tavern, north of Toronto.

A few hundred rebels gathered there and made an unsuccessful attempt to capture the seat of government. One man was killed, and the rebels were scattered. MacKenzie escaped to Navy Island where he and his followers set up for a tim a provisional government. The American Authorities put MacKenzie in jail and the trouble died down.

2.IN LOWER CANADA.

1.The leader was...

Louis Joseph Papineau.

2.His Lieutenants were...

Dr. Wolfred Nelson

Dr. Chenier.

Lafontaine.

Morin

Cartier

3. The engagements were...

St.Denis...Rebels defeated British Troops.

St. Charles.British troops dispersed rebels.

St. Eustache.British troops dispersed rebels.

At St.Denis, 500 rebels under Dr. Nelson held a stone house. The rebels were badly armed but fought with great courage, and the British troops were defeated.

At St. Charles, the British Troops attacked the Village. The defenders were put to the bayonet, and the Village was burned.

At St. Eustache, the rebels were led by Dr. Chenier. They made their last stand in a church which was burned. The rebels lost thier lives in the fire or in trying to escape. Some 70 were killed.

(C)THE FATE OF THE LEADERS.

1.William Lyon Mackenzie.

He fled to the U.S.A., and later set up a Provisional Government on Navy Island in the Niagara River. He obtained his supplies by the Caroline which was cut from under the guns of the nearby American Fort, set on fire, and allowed to drift over the Falls. An apology was later made for this act. Mackenzie was allowed to return to Canada some years later, and he again entered politics.

2..3 Samuel Lount, and Peter Matthews.

Although they were men of good families and unimpeachable characters, they were hanged.

4. Van Egmond.

He was an old soldier, but was allowed to die of hardship in the Toronto Jail.

5. Other Leaders.

They were exiled to Van Dieman's Island.

6. Louis Joseph Papineau.

He fled to the U.S.A. at the first move to arms, and claimed that he went for help. He was exiled from Canada, but was later allowed to return , and again he entered the field of politics.

7 Nelson and seven other leaders.

They were exiled without a trial, and with their own consent.

8. Less important leaders.

These were pardoned.

(D) THE REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE REBELLION

1. The majority of the people in Upper Canada were Loyal and law-abiding, but had been misled by Mackenzie.
2. The leaders, Mackenzie and Papineau misjudged the feeling of the people regarding reform.
3. In Lower Canada, the rebels were opposed by the French Clergy
4. They were limited to a few districts.
and 5. Few men of prominence took part in it.

(E) THE RESULTS.

3. ~~1~~. The British Government sent out Lord Durham as Governor-General to inquire into the causesof the Rebellion. etc 2 Property was damaged lives were lost.

1. ~~2~~. Attention was drawn to the abuses of the Government. or the attention 3 of the British Parliament was drawn to the defects or the abuses of the Government in Canada.

4. The people were allowed a a greater voice in the control of their own affairs, and it paved the way for the establishment of Responsible Government.

(C) THE PATRIOTS' WAR. 1838.

1. Exiled ~~America~~ rebels were in the U.S.A. appealing to the Americans for help. Hunter's Lodges were formed in the American border districts of Upper Canada. In these, some 40,000 men were preparing to

invade Canada.

2.At Prescott.

500 men crossed into Canada and were defeated. 45 Canadians were killed; 100 prisoners were taken; and 4 of these were hanged.

3.At Sandwich.

A Canadian steamboat was burned; the barracks was set on fire; and two soldiers were burned to death. The invaders were driven out, and six of them were killed.

4.In Montreal.

The French were planning a new rebellion, and an armed revolt broke out. This was frustrated by Colborne.

5.The rebel and sympathisers from the U.S.A. entered Canada under the leadership of Robert Nelson, a brother of DR. Nelson. These proclaimed Lower Canada a Republic, and posted the following notices....There was to be a Free Press; Manhood suffrage; Vote by Ballot; religious equality; and Freehold tenure.

The rebels were joined by thousands of peasants who were armed with pitchforks and rakes. They were defeated by Colborne, and 800 prisoners were taken. 12 of these were executed and others were banished to Australia.

(E) IN THE OTHER PROVINCES.

1.In Nova Scotia.

Joseph Howe, an editor, became a member of the Legislature and led the people of Nova Scotia with wonderful ability along the path of constitutional reform without violence.

2.In New Brunswick.

A similar agitation was successfully led by Lemuel Allan Wilmot.

XIV. THE LORD HIGH COMMISSIONER.

A. LORD DURHAM. (John George Lambton.)

(A) THE DATES.

1830-1832-1835-1838.

(B) HE WAS:

1. A son-in-law of Earl Grey..Prime-minister of England.
2. A strong Liberal..popularly known as "Radical Jack".
3. Haughty and arrogant, with a love of pomp, and display.
4. A Champion of the common people, with a regard for their welfare.
5. A statesman who had radical views, and an English politician.
6. The Governor-General of British North America, and Lord High Commissioner for Her Majesty Queen Victoria, who was appointed to conduct a thorough investigation of the situation in Canada after the Rebellion of 1837-8.

(C) HIS WORK BEFORE COMING TO CANADA INCLUDED:

1. Being a cabinet minister in 1830, in the government formed by his father-in-law.
2. Helping to frame the First Reform Bill in 1832. (In this he had taken a leading part.)
3. Being sent as ambassador to Russia in 1835. He returned in 1

(E) THE REASONS FOR HIS HESITATING TO ACCEPT THE APPOINTMENT TO CANADA:

1. Canada had been for many years, a graveyard of reputations.
2. His health had not been of the best.
3. He felt that he could do more in England to help Reform.

(D) THE REASONS FOR HIS APPOINTMENT ~~WERE~~: to Canada were -

1. His colleagues found him difficult to work with, and found that his radical ideas were distasteful to them; they had frequent disagreements with him, and as a result tried to persuade him to accept the appointment to Canada.
2. Queen Victoria appealed to him to accept the post.
3. It was felt that his radical leanings would make it certain that he would deal sympathetically with the Canadian reformers; that his lordly manners placed him on a pinnacle above the strife of the Canadian parties; and that his clear and powerful mind would enable him to penetrate to the heart of the problem of British Government in Canada, and to devise remedies.

(F) HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED:

1. Taking over the government of Lower Canada, and appointing a new executive, chiefly from his own staff because the legislature that had been suspended. This meant that he held all of the governing power there.
2. Visiting Upper Canada where he acted as Governor and restrained the (retailatory) legislation of the Family Compact. He stopped some of the revengeful doings of the Family Compact.

3. Finding certain conditions existing in the provinces, and dealing with the rebel leaders. ① The French in Lower Canada were in sympathy with the rebels, while the British were clamouring for the extreme punishment. ② There was no intercourse or sympathy between the races. ③ The jails were full of rebels. He was determined that none of them should be sent to the scaffold. This was hard to accomplish because the French Juries only acquitted; the English Juries only condemned to death; and public trials stirred up strife between the French and English. Durham had been granted unlimited power to pardon, so he promptly released from prison nearly all of those who had been arrested. He was afraid of rousing the antagonism of the English by pardoning indiscriminately, so he banished Nelson and seven other rebel leaders to Bermuda. He forbade fifteen others permission to return to Canada, and granted full pardons to a number of others. *His dealing with the situation as he did was considered a ~~xxxx~~ measure of wise clemency. But he had exceeded his powers in sentencing the rebel leaders without a trial, and the British Government disallowed them because no one could be sentenced without a trial, and because no authority had been given him pertaining to Bermuda. He considered himself discredited, and promptly resigned.

The reasons for the Br. revoking the sentences passed by Lord Durham.

4. Remaining in Canada, even after resigning, to complete his survey of the situation; (and to) making a thorough investigation; and finding certain well-defined grievances, pertaining to:-

a. Racial Jealousy.
b. Government.
c. Land Grants.
d. Suppression of Free Speech.
e. Management of the Clergy Reserves.
f. The revenue.

(G) THE RESULTS.

1. He returned to England in November 1838; prepared and submitted a report, to the British Parliament and died shortly afterwards.

2. His report to the British Government ushered in a new era in Canadian History.

9. LORD DURHAM'S REPORT.

(A) ITS IMPORTANCE. THE IMPORTANCE OF HIS REPORT.

1. It was an impartial statement and a complete summary of the situation found in Canada, and contained suggestions for remedying the existing abuses.

2. It was the first report which spoke in glowing terms of Canada, and portrayed a dependent colony a daughter nation growing up beside the Mother Country.

3. It is considered one of the great documents of Canadian Constitutional History.

4. It ushered in a new era in Canadian History.

8. THE GRIEVANCES FOUND BY LORD DURHAM WERE:-

(A) RACIAL JEALOUSIES. One-Br, the other-Fr.

The division of the country into two provinces by the Constitutional Act of 1791 caused jealousy because there was a difference in race, language, and religion.

(B) THE GOVERNING BODIES..(THE FAMILY COMPACT AND THE SCOTCH PARTY.)

These bodies, consisting of the Governors and the Councils ruled the country in their own interests. They ruled autocratically, controlled the revenue, and could not be removed for wrong-doing as they were appointed, not elected. They did not favour the establishment of responsible government, and would not allow the representatives of the people to gain their ends, or desires.

(C) LAND GRANTS.

Large grants of land had been given by the ruling classes to their friends. These lands were held for speculation, and paid no taxes. They also hindered the opening up of the country.

(D) SUPPRESSION OF FREEDOM OF SPEECH.

Freedom of speech in the Press and from the platform was rigidly suppressed, as was evidenced by the arrest of the Editor of the Niagara Spectator, and John Gourlay; the destruction of Mackenzie's press; and his being expelled from parliament.

(E) MANAGEMENT OF THE CLERGY RESERVES.

The division of land of these reserves was unfairly and carelessly done. The Anglicans received their share, but the other Protestant denominations were neglected.

(F) THE REVENUE.

The people who supplied the revenue had no control over the spending of it.

10. THE RECOMMENDATIONS MADE BY LORD DURHAM WERE:

1. The union of Upper and Lower Canada under one Parliament. (It was felt that the English-speaking inhabitants of both provinces should join hands to cope with the racial ambitions of the French in Lower Canada; members were to be elected to parliament on the basis of population.; and English was to be the only official language.; The French would be outnumbered and overwhelmed.)

2. The granting of Responsible Government in all matters that did not conflict with strictly imperial interests.

3. The extinction of the French nationality by Anglicizing them and making them forget that they were French; and impressing upon them their Canadian citizenship.

4. The building of an intercolonial railway to bind all parts of British North America together.

5. Making the executive body or the cabinet responsible to the people, and able to remain in power only so long as it was able to retain a majority in the assembly.

See next page for note 10.

10. THE RECOMMENDATIONS MADE BY LORD DURHAM WERE:

1. The Union of the two Provinces...Upper and Lower Canada.

2. The establishment of one parliament for the united Provinces. (So that the English-speaking inhabitants of both provinces should join hands to cope with the racial ambitions of the French in Lower Canada.)

3. The extinction of the French nationality by Anglicizing them and making them forget that they were French by impressing upon them their Canadian Citizenship.

4. The granting of Responsible Government in all matters that did not conflict with strictly Imperial Interests.

5. The Executive Council or Cabinet was to be made responsible to the people, and was to hold office only so long as it had the support of the majority in the Legislature.

Party Govt was to be established.

6. The Revenue was to be under the control of the Assembly, and a permanent "Civil List" (which was the amount voted for the expenses of the government, or what is to-day known as the Estimates) was to be established, and was to provide for the payment of judges and other officials. (This was a source of dispute between the governors and the Assemblies in the early days of the colonies. Durham in his report recommended that the control of the revenue of the Crown should be vested in the Assembly, and Lord John Russell, in 1839, said that he was willing that the Crown Revenues should be placed entirely at the disposal of the Assembly, provided a permanent provision was made for the Civil List. Sydenham shared these views, and was able to put them into practice. Eventually the principle was accepted and the Legislature received control of the revenue without any such proviso, and all of the expenses of the government were left to the judgment of the representatives of the people.)

7. The establishment of Municipal Government which was to serve as a training school for future statesmen.

Highways 8. The building of roads, railroads, canals, and an Intercolonial railroad that was to bind all parts of British North America together in Commerce and ideas.

9. All of the Provinces were to be united as soon as passible.

10. Educational Institutions were to be encouraged.

11. Trade within the country, and with outside markets was to be encouraged.

12. English was to be the only official language.

13. Members were to be elected to parliament according to population.

11. The Results of Lord Durham's Report

THE ATTITUDE OF THE PROVINCES REGARDING THE RECOMMENDATIONS.

(A) IN LOWER CANADA.

1. They were unpopular with the French because they though that they would lose their nationality in union, but The Legislature in Lower Canada had been suspended after the rebellion, and the French were voiceless.

(B) IN UPPER CANADA.

They were unpopular with the Tories because they felt that the French would be supreme in Parliament as they had the greater population. Finally they were persuaded that their needs were such that they would be benefitted. Canals, roads, and railroads were badly needed; Their finances would be helped, as the duties were collected in Montreal and they would be more evenly distributed. The Government had a heavy deficit.

The Family Compact had crushed the Rebellion in U.C., and 13 were not anxious to face the new problems connected with the Government of Lower Canada. They were fearful lest the Union of the two provinces might result in the removal of the Capital from Toronto, and the loss of some of their political power. They were ultimately persuaded to agree.

13. THE RESULTS OF LORD DURHAM'S REPORT WERE:

3. The Act of Union was passed by the British Parliament in 1840 and it came into force in 1841.

12. THE ACT OF UNION.

(a) The Dates. 1840-41

(B) THE REASONS FOR:

1. The people in Canada, especially the reformers, were dissatisfied with the Consitutional Act, and demanded Government reform.

2. The Government objected to granting Government reform, and as a result the Radical Reformers led a rebellion against the Government.

3. This drew the attention of the British Government to the defects of the existing act in-so-far as the government was concerned, and they sent Lord Durham to Canada to investigate, and to report to them, how best to remedy the situation.

4. Lord Durham's Report strongly recommended a change in the Government of Canada.

(C) THE PROVISIONS OF THE ACT OF UNION.

1. The Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were to be united into one province.

2. The Government of the United Provinces was to consist of:-

1. A Governor.....appointed by the Crown.
2. A Legislative Council..of 20 members..appointed by the Crown for life.
3. An Executive Council of 8 members chosen from the Party in Power by the Governor.
4. A Legislative Assembly of 42 members from each Province, elected for four years by the people.

3. The Legislative Assembly was to control the revenue.

5. The debts of Lower Canada, which was small; and of Upper Canada which was very great, were to be assumed or taken over by the new government.

6. English was to be the official language, but records might be translated into French, and could then be used in debate.

The attitude of the Provinces toward the recommendations made by Lord Durham - and.

11. The Results of Lord Durham's Report.

1. In Lower Canada, the French were opposed to the recommendations made by Lord Durham, because they thought that they would lose their nationality in union; but owing to the fact that the Legislature in L.C. had been suspended, after the Rebellion, the French were voiceless, and the Special Council that had been appointed, was in favour of the recommendations.

2. In upper Canada, the Tories were opposed, because they felt that the French would be supreme in parliament as they had the greater population. The Family Compact had crushed the Rebellion in U.C., and they were not anxious to face the new problems connected with the government of Lower Canada. They were fearful

Lest the union of the two provinces might result in the removal of the Capital from Toronto, and the loss of some of their political power.

Finally they were persuaded that their needs were such that they would be benefitted. Canals, highways, and railroads were badly needed; their finances would be helped, as the duties were collected in Montreal, and they would would be more evenly distributed. The Government of U.C. had a heavy debt and this would be assumed by the Union Government.

3. The Act of Union was passed by the British Parliament in 1840, and came into force in 1841.

Lord Sydenham.

In the first election, held during his period of office, the polls were open for two weeks; there was considerable fighting over the election; and a liberal majority was returned.

He chose a cabinet, not from the party in power, but from both parties, and was composed of eight members. There were no Frenchmen in it because Lafontaine refused office; and the French refused to take part in the Government, because:- their Legislature had been abolished without their consent; they had no greater representation than Upper Canada in the new parliament even though they had a greater population; they had been forced to assume a share of the large debt of Upper Canada; and they had no guarantee that they were to have a really liberal government.

The Legislative Assembly wished for a party government composed of English and French. Robert Baldwin, the leader

of the Liberal party questioned the Governor regarding the power of the Cabinet, and was told that the King's advisers in England must control Canada with a majority if possible, and if not, without.

The Country at that time was not progressing because land had fallen in value; settlers were leaving Canada for the United States; railways, roads, bridges were badly needed; Schools were bad; there was no local self-government and the towns and villages had to go to the Assembly for money.

His work in Canada included:-
Bringing about a union of the provinces, outlining a workable system for Canada with regular departments in the government, responsible ministers, and a Cabinet.

He had not given a government responsible to the people, but he had prepared the way.

7. A permanent Civil List was established.
8. Judges were not to be dismissed except for good reason.
9. The capital of the United Provinces was to be at Kingston in Upper Canada.
4. The Legislative Assembly had to arrange for the paying of (the) judges, and for all other necessary expenses of the government.

(D) THE RESULTS OF THE ACT OF UNION WERE:- (Immediate)

1. The Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united.
3. The Assembly gained control of the Revenue.
4. The first step toward responsible government was taken.
2. The defects of the Constitutional Act in-so-far-as the Government; Land Grants; Division of the Clergy Reserves, and the revenue were remedied.

13. THE GOVERNORS OF CANADA FROM 1838-1867.

1. Lord Durham	1838
2. Sir John Colborne	1839
3. Lord Sydenham..Charles Poulett Thompson	1839-1841
4. Sir Charles Bagot	1842-1843
5. Sir Charles Metcalfe	1843-1845
6. Earl Cathcart	1846-1847
7. Lord Elgin	1847-1854
8. Sir Edmund W. Head	1854-1861
9. Viscount Monk	1861-1867

14. SIR JOHN COLBORNE....FIRST BARON SEATON.

He was sent to Upper Canada as Lieutenant-Governor 1829, and was appointed commander-in-chief of the military forces in 1835. He suppressed the rebellion in Lower Canada in 1837-8; and acted as administrator in 1838, both before and after Durham. He was appointed Governor-General in 1838.

He aroused bitter antagonism by endowing a number of Church of England Rectories in Canada, and returned to England in 1839, where he was created Baron Seaton. He has been described as a stern administrator.

Colborne Township, Huron County, Ontario were named after him.

(14) 15. Lord Sydenham.....Charles Poulett Thompson.

(A) THE DATES

1839-1841

(B) HE WAS 1. The Gov-Gen. of Canada in 1839, and

1. The first Governor-General of The united provinces of Upper and Lower Canada ~~before and~~ after the passing of the Act of Union. (2. A friend and associate of Lord John Russell, the colonial minister in England.)

after Lord Durham

3.A courageous reformer, and a sane and practical radical.
4.An experienced politician.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1.Becoming the Governor-General of Canada at a peculiarly dif icult period. 1839-1841.

2.Bringing to a close the old regime with its absolute racial antagonism, and its party division of loyalists and rebels.

3.Opening a new era of responsible government in which it was possible for both races to take their share in the government, and in which both government and opposition were brought to be within the pale of loyal Canadian Citizenship. (To accomplish this it was necessary for to be the last and most powerful of the autocratic governors, and the first and most influential of the diplomatic representatives under Res sible Government.)

4.Making a visit to all of the provinces soon after his arriv (He visited Upper Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Lower Canada.

5. Conferring with the leaders of Public opinion, and securin reports on the various questions with which he had to deal.

6.Finding that the Reformers and the Moderate Conservatives o Upper Canada were friendly, and that the extremists on both sides were inclined to oppose his views. (The French did not feel kindly toward hi

7.Winning all but the irreconcilables to the ideaof Responsib Government by his tact, persuasiveness and honesty of purpose.

8.Satisfactorily disposing of the vexed question dealing with the settlement of the Clergy Reserves.

9. Uniting Upper and Lower Canada, under one parliament.

10.Rendering valuable advice with regard to financial affairs, trade, immigration, municipal government, public works, and education.

X 11.Reorganizing the public departments, (and the Executive Coun

12.Taking part in extradition and boundary negotiations with t United States.

13.Selecting Kingston as the seat of government.

X 14.Making the Executive Council resemble the British Cabinet which was being composed of ministers who were heads of departments.

15.Being instructed not to accept the advice of his Council unless it seemed well for him to do so.

16.Laying the foundation of municipal government by establishi municipal government..D.C.Act 18

(D)THE RESULTS:

1.He refused to admit in its full sense, the principle of Responsible Government, but he paved the way for its acceptance.

2.He was his own prime minister, but had completed in less th two years, the great task that he had undertaken.

3.He laid the foundations of Canadian liberties, and the insp ation of our national life.

4.The Colonial Office which had appointed him as the represen ative of the Crown held him responsible to them, and he refused to pla the responsibility on any one else. He still regarded himself as gover nor in a very real sense of the term.

5.He died in 1842 from the effects of a fall from his horse.

15 16. SIR CHARLES BAGOT.

(A) THE DATES.

1841-1843

(B) HE WAS:

1. The successor of Lord Sydenham as Governor-General of Canada. 2. An elderly man with wide political experience

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Acting as Governor-General of Canada during the period immediately following the Union of Upper and Lower Canada, and adopting the principles of Responsible Government.

3 2. Requesting Robert Baldwin of Upper Canada, and LaFontaine of Lower Canada to form an administration. They had refused to accept seats in his cabinet unless he would promise that the entire Cabinet should be reform, and unless he would promise to be guided by his ministers.

5 3. Allowing Baldwin to preside at meetings of the Council or Cabinet, and thereby becoming Canada's first Prime Minister, because he was too ill to preside.

2 4. He visited all settled parts of Canada

4 5. He chose his cabinet from Liberal and French members.

(D) THE RESULTS:

1. This marked another step in advance toward responsible Government. 1. He established the principle that the Council must command the majority in the Legislature, especially the Assembly which represented the people.

16 17. SIR CHARLES METCALF.

(A) THE DATES

1843-1845

(B) HE WAS:

1. The successor of Bagot as Governor-General of Canada.

2. Liberal, kindly and progressive. He had been warned by the colonial secretary that the British Government would not allow Canada to be self-governing.

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Refusing to allow the Cabinet to make decisions or have a voice in the appointments of office.

The policy referred to was having a prime minister.

2. Trying to reverse the policy established by Bagot.

3. Breaking with his ministers, and for some months trying to govern the country without (either) a responsible ministry or a parliament.

4. Moving the Capital from Kingston to Montreal.

(D) THE RESULTS

1. He tried to ~~represent~~ secure a reaction toward the old rule of irresponsible government, but did not succeed. 2. It was clearly shown that

2. The Governor must act only on the advice of his ministers.

18. EARL CATHCART.

He immediately succeeded Metcalfe, but was more concerned with the military affairs of the province rather than with the political affairs, and his short period in office is not marked with any steps toward the establishment of responsible government.

17 19.REV. EGERTON RYERSON.

(A)THE DATES.

1803-1882. (1844-1846)

(B)HE WAS:

2.A Methodist minister of U.E.Loyalist descent. 3 an Education

1.A leader of the more moderate reformers in Upper Canada.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED.

1.Being made superintendent of Education in Upper Canada 18

2.Visiting schools in Europe and the U.S.A., and selecting t best from each system that he observed.

3.Making a report to parliament in 1846.

4.Having schools built in every township, and gradually havi them become free to all.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.In 1871 our present system of free compulsory schools came into existence.

2.The general plan adopted for education was:

a.A system embracing primary, secondary, and unive ty education. b.Free public schools under local control, and rec ing government support and government inspection.

3.In 1872 the Ontario Agricultural College was opened at Gue

4.He was the first President of Victoria College in Toronto.

5.In 1876, upon his resignation, as superintendent of education his place was taken by the Minister of Education who had a seat in the cabinet.

7 20.THE BURNING OF THE PARLIAMENT BUILDINGS.

18 20.LORD ELGIN.

(A)THE DATES.

1847-1854 – 1849.

(B)HE WAS: 4. The Governor-General of Canada. 1847-1854

1.The son-in-law of Lord Durham.

2.A well-trained politician.

3.A sympathizer with Lord Durham's plans for Canada.

(C)HIS WORK IN CANADA INCLUDED:

1.Finding that a spirit of unrest similar to that found in Europe was prevalent in Canada, it was brought about through immigrants; book and periodicals; and the existence of sympathies with the home lands.

2.Finding the Conservatives in power upon his arrival, and giving them his confidence and support for nearly a year.

3.Making it clearly understood that he would give the Libera his support if they came into power.

4.Finding that the Conservatives were defeated in the electi of 1847, and that the liberals had the majority in the Assembly.

5.Inviting the liberal leaders, Robert Baldwin and Louis Lafontaine to form an administration.

6.Having the Baldwin-Lafontaine government;;sometimes known

"THE GREAT MINISTRY" sworn in as the advisers of the governor-general in 1848.

7. Assenting and signing the Rebellion Losses Bill which was introduced into the Assembly in 1849, and passed by the Assembly and the Legislative Council which represented the people.

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. The principle of Responsible Government was upheld, and the signing of the Rebellion Losses Bill By Lord Elgin completed the struggle for this type of government.

7. Since that time the political influence of the governor-generals has become less and less, and at the present time his position in Canada somewhat resembles that of the position of the king of England.

add from end of Reb. Loss. Bill.

19 21. THE REBELLION LOSSES BILL

(A) THE DATE

1849.

(B) IT WAS:

1. A bill which voted £90,000 to indemnify or repay the loyal people whose property had been destroyed during the Rebellion of 1837-8.

2. £90,000 was voted to compensate the loyal sufferers. (The French sufferers claimed a share, and the Family Compact and their friends claimed that the French were not loyal. The Government ruled that all claims were to be paid except of those convicted by legal process of treason.)

(C) THE RESULTS.

B Reasons for passing the Rebellion of 1837-8)

1. (~~In Upper Canada~~ Considerable property had been destroyed, partly by the rebels, and partly by the British Troops. Much of this property had belonged to persons who were loyal to Great Britain, and it was only fair that the losses should be made good. (This had already been done in Upper Canada, and the bill of 1849 was an attempted to recompence the sufferers in Lower Canada. (In Lower Canada it was not easy to determine who had been rebels, and under this Bill compensation would be paid to rebels.)

D The Results.

1. The introduction of the Bill occasioned furious debates and quarrels in the House, and an outcry among the loyalists, especially among the English element in Montreal.

2. The Bill was passed by both houses in the Legislature without difficulty.

3. The opponents of the Bill tried to persuade Lord Elgin to withhold his assent, but it had been passed by the representatives of the people, and the government that they supported had sponsored it.

4. Lord Elgin accepted the advice of his constitutional advisers, and he gave his assent to it, because the veto of the bill would have denied Canada's power of Self-government.

5.This resulted in one of the most disgraceful riots in Canad History. On April the 25, 1849, when Lord Elgin gave the royal assent the bill, some of the conservative members made for the door of the Ho with hoots and groans. Outside there gathered, a mob of sympathizers, when Lord Elgin left the parliament Buildings, he was pelted with rotte eggs. It was with difficulty that he gained his carriage, and, as he d away, he was followed with yells and curses.

That night a mob gathered in Montreal, and violent speeches were made. In the end, the mob moved toward the parliament buildings w an evening session of the House was in progress. They heralded their approach with a shower of stones through the windows. Then they invade the building and drove out the members. The building was fired, and in a short time the Parliament Buildings were wrapped in flame. Very few things were saved. The buildings, and most of their contents including the Legislative Library and the archives of the various government departments were destroyed.

6.The Canadian parliament was without a home.

7.Canada lost a mass of records that could not be replaced.

8.The mob attacked the home of Louis Lafontaine the next day, and he had to flee for his life. His house nearly met the same fate as the parliament buildings.

9.Upon Elgin's appearance a week later to receive from the House of Assembly an address of loyalty, he was subjected to a second attack, and he barely escaped with his life. He was pelted with stones

10.He was expelled from membership in the Scottish Societies i Montreal. 10. Responsible Government was established in Canad

2 11.He established firmly and finally the principle that the government of Canada was responsible to the representatives of the Canadian People.

3 12.Ever since Lord Elgin's day, the government of Canada has b in the hands of a cabinet which commanded the confidence of the Canadi Legislature, and the governor-general has occupied the impartial posit which he occupies to-day. Canadians have enjoyed self-government.

4 13.He spent six years in Canada, and during that time he playe a wise and beneficial part in Canadian affairs.

6 14.In 1854, he took a chief part in the negotiations for a tre treaty with the U.S.A which brought to Canada a measure of prosperity she had not enjoyed before. THE RECIPROCITY TREATY.

add under results of Elgin

Canada received Responsible Govt

20.THE RECIPROCITY TREATY....1854.

(A)THE DATE

1854.

(B)REASONS FOR:

1.In 1849, Canada lost British Preference, and as a result, discontent and hard times followed.

2.Canada wished access to American markets.

3.The u.s.a. wanted to fish in canadian waters.

(C)TERMS.

1.The natural products of the sea, the farm, the forest, an the mine were to be freely exchanged between the two countries.

2.Canadians were allowed to navigate Lake Michigan.

3.The Americans received the use of the Canadian canals, and the privilege of fishing in Canadian waters.

4.The treaty was to be in force for ten years, and after that it could be terminated by either country giving the other, one year's notice.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.The commerce of Canada was greatly extended by the Reciprocity treaty with the United States. 1854.

*2.At the end of the ten years the Reciprocity Treaty was cancelled by the Americans. This resulted in a situation being created so that the Canadians had to look for new markets. At that time trade barriers existed between the provinces of Canada, and it was reasoned that the removal of these, and the creation of a commercial union would be sufficient in itself so that the province s could support a prosperous trade in natural products and manufactured goods. It was an important factor in bringing about a Confederation of the provinces.

II.Table of events from 1840-1867

(A)HON. CHARLES THOMPSON///LORD SYDENHAM. 1839-1841.

1.The Act of Union.	1840
2.The first Parliament at Kingston	1841
3.The Government takes over the Welland Canal	1841
4.The Municipal Act	1841
5.Victoria University was founded at Coubourg	1841
6.Queen's College was founded at Kingston	1841
7.The death of Lord Sydenham..fall from horse	1841

(B)SIR CHARLES BAGOT 1841-1843

1.The Ashburton Treaty	1842
2.The first Canadian Reform Ministry	1842

(C)SIRCHARLES METCALFE, 1843-1845

1.The resignation of the reform Cabinet	1844
2.Rev. Egerton Ryerson made Chief Sup. of Educ	1844
3.Montreal was selected as the Capital	1844
4.The Globe News Paper was founded	1844

(D)EARL CATHCART 1845-1847

1.Dr. Ryerson made his report to Parliament	1846
2.The Oregon Treaty	1846

(E)LORD ELGIN 1847-1854.

1.Canada gets control of the Customs	1847
2.The Irish Famine..and Fever in Canada	1847

3. The French Language was restored in Parliament 1849
4. The Amnesty Bill..pardoning the rebels of 1837-8. 1849
5. Toronto University was made undenominational 1849
6. The Rebellion Losses Bill 1849
7. The Burning of the Parliament Buildings 1849
8. Canada got control of Postal Matters..Postage Sta. 1851
9. The Northern Railway was begun 1851
10. The Municipal Loan Fund Act 1852.
11. Parliament was increased to 130 members 1853
12. The Reciprocity Treaty 1854

(F) SIR EDMUND W. HEAD. 1854-1860

1. The Clergy Reserves Act--Church and State separate 1854
2. The Seignorial Tenure Act 1854
3. The Volunteer System was introduced 1854
4. The Legislative Council was made elective 1856
5. Regular SS connection was established with Britain 1856
6. The Decimal system of Currency was introduced 1858
7. Ottawa was selected as the site for the Capital 1858
8. The Atlantic Cable was successfully laid 1858
9. The Visit of the Prince of Wales 1860

(G) LORD MONCK 1860-1868

1. The American Civil War 1861-65
2. The Trent Affair 1861
3. Political Deadlock, and the Coalition Ministry 1864
4. The Conference at Charlottetown 1864
5. The Conference at Quebec 1864
6. Three Parliaments agree to the proposals 1865
7. The Fenian Raids 1866
8. The Canadian Delegates draw up the Bill 1866
9. The British North America Act 1867

THE CANADIAN MUNICIPAL SYSTEM

(A) A MUNICIPALITY IS:

A city, a town, a village, a township, or a county having local self-government.

Each has a council elected by the ratepayers of the Municipality, and this council has control of such local affairs as..making roads, and bridges, passing by-laws and levying taxes for local improvements.

This system of local self-government was recommended by Lord Durham, and was introduced into Upper Canada by the MUNICIPAL ACT which was passed in 1841, at the first session of parliament under THE ACT OF UNION...RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT.

Quebec followed, and now all of the provinces except Prince Edward Island have this system, although each province has its own peculiarities in some minor points.

XX THE ASHBURTON TREATY. 1842.

It was signed by Lord Ashburton for Great Britain, and Daniel Webster for the United States.

1. It provided for the extradition of persons charged with certain crimes.

2. It settled part of the boundary between Canada and the United States.

a. Out of the 12,000 square miles in dispute on the Maine Boundary, seven thousand were given to the United States.

b. The International Boundary Line was to be....

1. The 45th parallel of latitude to the St. Lawrence River.

2. A line through the Great Lakes to the Lake of the Woods, and thence

3. The 49th parallel of Latitude to the Rocky Mts.

XX THE MUNICIPAL LOAN FUND ACT 1852.

This act enabled municipalities to borrow money from the Government at a low rate of interest, to make roads and bridges, and to open up the country. Many of them borrowed too much and got deeply into debt. This debt was partially wiped out or cancelled by the money derived from the Clergy Reserves. The greater part of the remainder was cancelled in 1873.

XX THE CLERGY RESERVES AND THE CLERGY RESERVES ACT 1791-1840-1854.

In 1791, one-seventh of all crown lands in Upper Canada was set aside for the support of the Protestant Clergy. As each seventh lot was chosen, this was a great hindrance to the opening of the country and the making of roads. At first, the Church of England claimed all. Then the Church of Scotland claimed a share.

In 1840, it was arranged that one-half of the reserves should go to these churches, and the remaining half be divided among the other Protestant denominations.

In 1854, it was finally arranged by the CLERGY RESERVES ACT that the land should be sold, and the proceeds given to the various municipalities of the Province according to their population, and be used for the support of the Public Schools or for the making of roads and bridges, as the various councils should decide. The clergy who had been receiving aid from these reserves were given compensation in the form of an annuity for life.

XX THE SEIGNORIAL TENURE ACT 1854

In 1854, an act was passed :;

1. aboliting Seignorial Tenure in Lower Canada.

2. Enabling the people to hold their lands by Freehold Tenure.

3. Granting compensation to the Seigniors.

XVI. THE FIRST RAILWAY BUILDERS.

21. ALEXANDER TILLOCH GALT

(A) THE DATES:

1828-1845-1867

(B) HE WAS:

1. The youngest son of the Scottish Novelist, John Galt who founded Guelph in Upper Canada in 1827.

2. A steady, sober, hardworking young man.

3. A good business-man.

4. A member and President of the British American Land Compan

5. A Pioneer Railroad builder.

6. A shrewd and farsighted railw builder in the middle years o the nineteenth century.

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Working for some years for the British American Land Compan which was attempting much the same scheme of settlement in the Eastern Townships of Quebec, ~~that~~ the Canada Company had been carrying out in the western part of Upper Canada, in the Huron Tract. 1835.

2. Becoming the president of the British American Land Company.

3. Becoming interested in railway development in 1845.....28yr and being one of the chief promoters of the railway which was to conne Montreal with Portland on the coast of Maine

4. Becoming president of this Railroad, and having the Canadian section of it built.

5. Becoming interested in the project of a through line or gran trunk line which was to connect Montreal with the western part of Uppe Canada.

6. Offeringto build this line, but having the Canadian Governme reject the offer, and giving it to a firm of English contractors who formed the GRAND TRUNK RAILWAY COMPANY. (The Grand Trunk was built firs from Montreal to Kingston, and then to Toronto. In the building of the sections Galt had no share, though the competition of himself and his friends forced the English promoters to modify their terms.)

7. Being the leading member of the contracting firm which buil the line from Toronto to Sarnia. (This section was later absorbed by th Grand Trunk.)

8. Being the Canadian who played the leading part in the railw building of that early period.

9. Being an outstanding figure in Canadian affairs for many yea

a. Being a member of successive cabinets.

b. Playing an important part in the movement that le to the Confederation of the British North American Provinces.

c. Becoming the first finance minister of the Domini of Canada in 1867.

d. Being the Canadian representative in London.

General Addition

a. In 1844, he became a commissioner, and held office for ~~four~~ twel years. b. In 1849, he was elected to the Legislature for Sherbrooke. He opposed the Baldwin-Lafontaine government, and voted against the Rebel ion Losses Bill.

c.He dropped out of public life when the capital was moved from Montreal to Toronto, but in 1853 he was re-elected for Sherbrooke, and held the same seat up to Confederation.

d.He took a very active part in the movement leading up to Confederation. He urged it in speeches both in the Legislature and elsewhere in 1858.

e.He was asked by the Governor-General, Sir Edmund Head to form a government when the short-lived Brown-Dorion Administration came to an end, but he declined.

f.He accepted the office of minister of finance in the Cartier-Macdonald administration 1858, on the express stipulation that the new government would actively support the cause of federation.

g.A clause was embodied in the speech from the throne announcing early discussion with the sister colonies in regard to union, and after the close of the session Galt accompanied Cartier and Rose to England to secure the approval of the British Government.

h.In 1865, he again went to England as one of the Commissioners to confer with the Imperial Government on the Confederation issue, defence, reciprocity and other matters.

i.He took part in the Charlottetown and the Quebec Conferences, and went to London in 1867 when the final terms of the union were decided upon.

j.In the first Dominion Government, he became the minister of finance, but he resigned the same year,

k.He was appointed high commissioner for Canada in London in 1880.

l.He resigned this post in 1884, and was succeeded by Sir Charles Tupper.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.Canada was brought out of the pioneer stage by the building of Railroads.

2.He helped to bring about the confederation of the Provinces of British North America.

NOTE....21SUMMARY OF ALEXANDER TILLOCH GALT.

(A)THE DATES.

1828-1845-1849-1853-1858-1865-1867-1880-1884.

(B)HE WAS:

1.The Youngest son of John Galt (The Scottish Novelist) who founded Guelph in Western Upper Canada in 1827.

2.A steady, sober, hard-working young man.

3.A good business-man.

4.A member, and later president of the British American Land Company which established settlements in the Eastern Townships of Quebec.

5.A pioneer railroad builder, and ~~a~~ shrewd, and farsighted railroad~~er~~ builder.

6 an active worker in the cause of Confederation.

Pioneer

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1.Working for the British American Land Company in the Easte Townships of Quebec, (where it was attempting much the same scheme of settlement as the Canada Company had been carrying out in the Western part of Upper Canada in the Huron Tract)

2.Becoming the President of the British American Land Company in 1845 when he was twenty-eight years of age.

3.Being one of the chief promoters of the railway that was to connect Montreal with Portland on the coast of Maine. He became the President of this road, and had the Canadian section of it built.

4.Being interested in a through line which was to connect Mon eal with the western part of Upper Canada. He contracted to build thi line, but the Canadian Government rejected his offer, and gave the contract to a firm of Engl Contractors who formed THE GRAND TRUNK RAILWAY COMPANY.(The Grand Tru was built first from Montreal to Kingston, and then to Toronto. Galt did not have any share in the building of these sections, but he was leading member of the contracting firm which built the line from Toro to Sarnia.This section was later absorbed by the Grand Trunk.)

5.Being the ~~leading~~ Canadian who played the leading part in t railway building of that early period.

6.Being a member of the legislature in 1849, and opposing the Baldwin-Lafontaine Government. He voted against the Rebellion Losses Bill.

7.Taking a very active part in the movement leading up to Confederation.(He urged it in speeches in the legislature and elsewhe in 1858.He accepted the office of minister of finance in the Cartier-Macdonald administration in 1858 on the express stipulation that the new government would actively support the cause of federation. A clau was embodied in the speech from the throne announcing an early discus ion with the sister colonies regarding union. After the close of the session, he accompanied Cartier and Rose to England to secure the app val of the British government. In 1865, he went to England as one of commissioners to confer with the Imperial Government on Confederation defence, reciprocity and other matters. He took part in the Charlotte-town and the Quebec Conferences, and went to London in 1867 when the final terms of the Union were decided upon.)

7.Being invited by the Governor-General,(Sir Edmund Head), to form a government when the (short-lived) Brown-Dorion administration ca to an end. He declined.

9.Being the finance minister in the first Dominion Government.

10.Being the high commissioner for Canada in England in 1880. He resigned in 1884 and was succeeded by Sir Charles Tupper.

(D)THE RESULTS

1.Canada was brought out of the pioneer stage by the building of railroads.

2.He helped to bring about the confederation of the provinces of British North America.

22. THE BUILDING OF RAILROADS.

(A) BEFORE THE COMING OF THE RAILROADS.

1. Travel was by road, river, lake, or canal.

2. The time required to travel from Quebec to Detroit was from one to two weeks.

3. The settlements or districts were cut off from each other and depended largely, especially in winter, on its own resources.

4. Five-sixths of the people were engaged in farming or lumbering. (The famrs produced a great many articles that were needed--from home-spun clothing to tallow candles, and from maple sugar to soft soap. Other needed supplies were supplied by the village amithy, the village flour-mill, or the village store.)

5. Each community was largely self-contained and self-supporting; and there were few communities of any size. (Toronto had a population of 25,000, and Hamilton and Kingston each had about 10,000.

6. The change from the above was due to the coming of the Railroad.

(B) THE EARLY RAILROADS

1. The first successful stem-locomotive had been placed on the rails in England in 1829. This was George Stephenson's Rocket.

2. The first steam-railway began operations in Canada in 1837. (This was the CHAMPLAIN AND ST. LAWRENCE RAILROAD, covering the sixteen miles from the ST. Lawrence to ST. Johns on the Richelieu R. This railway was very primitive. The rails were of wood, with thin bars of iron spiked to it. These bars of iron under the influence of the sun were apt to buckle and curl up, with the result that they became known as snake-rails. For ten years, this little railway which connected two river-routes was the only railway in British North America.

3. In 1850, there were only sixty-six miles of railway in what is now the Dominion of Canada.

4. Shortly after 1850 the railway boom began, and by 1860, Canada had over 2000 miles of railway in actual operation.

5. These lines of steel made a great change in Canadian Conditions.

(C) THE CHANGES MADE BY THE RAILROADS IN CANADA WERE: IMMEDIATE RESULTS

1. Travel and trade became easier.

2. The exchange of commodities with other parts of British North America, and even with foreign countries became possible and profitable.

3. The old isolation of separate communities drew to a close

(D) THE RESULTS OF RAILROADS IN CANADA LATER RESULTS.

1. The railway made Canada a nation.

2. It brought Canada out of the pioneer stage by opening up

interprovincial and international trade on a scale not dreamt of befo

3. It broke down the barriers of distance between the British Provinces in North America, and thus made their union possible.

4. It made possible, the acquisition and settlement by Canada the Great North West.

5 It enabled Canadians to grasp the vision of the presen Dominion of Canada.

omit

IN GENERAL, IT MAY BE SAID THAT THE RESULTS WERE:

1. The railroads made a great change in the conditions in Can

a. Travel and trade became easier.

b. The exchange of articles with other parts of Bri North America, and even with foreign countries became possible and pr able.

c. Separate communities were drawn closer together, and in general isolation ceased to exist.

2. The railroads made Canada a nation.

3. It opened up interprovincial and international trade, and thereby brought Canada out of the pioneer stage.

4. It broke down the barriers of distance between the provinc of British North America and thus made their union possible.

5. It enabled Canada to acquire and to control the great Cana West.

6. As early as 1858 it enabled Canadians to grasp the vision a great British Empire of the North...with its face to the south and back to the pole, with its right and left resting on the Atlantic and the Pacific, and with the telegraph and the iron road connecting the two oceans.

XVII. THE GOLD COLONY.

23. SIR JAMES DOUGLAS

(A) THE DATES.

1820-1830-1843-1851-1856-1858-1863-1864.

(B) HE WAS:

1. A Scotsman of great courage, foresight and energy.

2. An employee of the Northwest Company until its union with t Hudson's Bay Company.

3. An employee of the Hudson's Bay Company.

4. Governor of Vancouver Island.

5. The Governor of the Mainland...now British Columbia.

(C) HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1. Working for the N.W. Company in 1820, upon his arrival in Ca

2. Serving an apprenticeship in the Athabasca Department of th Hudson's Bay Company.

3. Working in New Caledonia.

4. Being transferred to Fort Vancouver in 1830, while where he was promoted to chief trader in 1832; and to chief factor in 1840.

5.Building Fort Victoria, on Vancouver Island in 1843 and establishing the western headquarters of the Hudson's Bay Company west of the Rocky Mountains.

6.Becoming the governor of Vancouver Island in 1851, and still remaining an officer in the H.B.Co.

7.Governing the little colony with the aid of his council until advised by the Colonial Office to divide the country into electoral districts, and to call the first legislature of Vancouver Island.

8.Being appointed Governor of the mainland in 1858 when a separate colony was formed there.(He finally severed connection with the Hudson's Bay Company.)(The creation of the new colony had been made necessary ~~owing~~ by to the discovery of gold on the Fraser River, and the rapid increase of the population.

9.Devoting his energies to the urgent problems of transportation and civil government arising out of the Cariboo Gold Rush.

x(He was in a curious position. He represented the Crown in one colony where representative institutions were established, and at the same time he was practically an autocrat in the other.)

10.Maintaing law and order among the miners who flocked into British Columbia in 1859 and 1860.

11.Having roads built to the mining areas.The chief one was"THE CARIBOO TRAIL", which was built overland to the diggings. His road-building policy was extraordinary for such a small community.

12.~~Being~~ He was knighted for his great services, and ~~being~~ he considered as the founder of British Columbia. "The father of B. Columbia"

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.In 1866, Vancouver Island and British Columbia were united, and became a self-governing Province, with a Legislative Council and a Legislative Assembly, like the other provinces in British North America.

2.He guided the destinies of British Columbia in its earlier days with wisdom and firmness, and for this reason alone he is entitled to be remembered as its real founder.

24.THE GOLD COLONY

(A)THE EARLY HISTORY.

1.British Columbia had been opened up by Alexander Mackenzie and his Company. Simon Fraser named the territory NEW CALEDONIA and the named remained until it was changed in 1859. David Thompson made maps of the interior of the territory.Therefore it may be said the Alexander Mackenzie,Simon Fraser, and David Thompson contributed considerable to our knowledge of the country.

They were employes of the North West Company.

24. THE GOLD COLONY.

(A)THE EARLY HISTORY.

1. The territory now known as British Columbia was opened up Alexander Mackenzie, Simon Fraser, and David Thompsom, employees of t North West Company. (Alexander Mackenzie journeyed overland to the Pa ic in 1793, and blazed the trail for other explorers. Simon Fraser ex ed the Fraser River in 1808; and David Thompson explored the course o the Columbia River between 1807 and 1811.)(

2.Simon Fraser named the territory NEW CALEDONIA. This name was used until it was changed to British Columbia in 1859.

3.David Thompson spent some years at Kootenay House making ma for the traders who were going into the interior of the country.

4.Captain George Vancouver was sent to survey the Pacific Co line for Britain.

5.There was rivalry between the British and American traders this territory because the western boundary between Canada and the U. was undecided; the Canadian traders worked the Pacific Coast as far s as San Francisco; American settlers began to invade the country, and claimed the land for the United States.They even went so far as to ha a constitution drawn up, and had a governor appointed.They claimed th particular territory of British Columbia, and even made its possessio an Election issue, during which the Cry was--"50-40 or fight". The Bri stood firm, and the boundary was fixed by a treaty in 1846. It was to along the 49th parallel, and included Vancouver Island with the terri of British Columbia.

6.The North West Company developed this section until 1820, w the Hudson's Bay Company took it over. The H.B.Co founded Fort Vanco in 1825, and placed Dr. John McLoughlin in charge.

7.About 1842 Americans settlers began to pour into the countr

8.In 1843, Sir James Douglas was appointed Governor. He found Fort Victoria in 1845. This was chosen as the site of the capital of the Hudson's Bay Company on the Pacific Coast.

9.The British Government granted the H.B.Co. a monopoly of th on Vancouver Island. The company was to own this Island and was to p the cost of governing this great area. Britain reserved the right to n the governor, but was forced to choose the H.B.Co's nominee.

10.The discovery of coal on the Island attracted British, Amer and Canadian settlers. These resented the rule of the Hudson Bay Compa and demanded self-government.

11.Sir James Douglas yielded to their demands, and a legislatu was elected in 1856. He became the head of the first popular governme on the Island, and was made Royal Governor. The first Canadian Parli ent west of the Rockies was formed.

12.The Hudson Bay's monopoly ended in 1859, and that company n longer ruled the colony.

24. THE GOLD COLONY.

(A) ANOTHER NAME FOR THE GOLD COLONY:

British Columbia, (and Vancouver Island.)

(B) THE FURTRADING COMPANIES INTERESTED IN THE EARLY DEVELOPMENT:

1. The North West Company, until 1820.
2. The Hudson'S Bay Company from 1821 until 1859.

(C) THE EARLY EXPLORERS OF THIS REGION WERE:

1. Alexander Mackenzie....He journeyed overland to the Pacific in 1793, and blazed the way for later explorers.

2. Simon Fraser.... He explored the Fraser River in 1808, and later the tributary which was named the Thompson.

3. David Thompson.....He explored the course of the Columbia River between 1807 and 1811. He spent some time at Kootenay House making maps for the traders who were going into the interior of the country.

xxADD TO FRASER He named the territory..NEW CALEDONIA. This name was used until it was changed to British Columbia, in 1859.

4. Captain George Vancouver..He was sent to survey the Pacific Coast for Britain. It was after him, that Vancouver Island was named.

(D) THE ACTIVITIES OF THE H.B.CO. IN THE REGION WERE:

1. In 1825, the H.B.Co. founded Fort Vancouver on the mainland. (It was chosen as the site of the H.B.Co's capital on the Pacific Coast.)

2. The British Government granted the H.B.Co. a monopoly of the trade on Vancouver Island. (The Company was to pay the cost of governing this great area. Britain reserved the right to name the Governor, but was forced to choose the nominee of the H.B. Co.)

3. Sir James Douglas who had been sent to the Pacific Coast, founded Fort Victoria on Vancouver Island in 1843; and he was made Governor, by the Hudson's Bay Company.

5. In 1849, Vancouver Island was made a Crown Colony, and in 1851, Douglas became the Queen's representative there. He was still an official of the H.B.Co.

4. The discovery of coal on the Island 1849 attracted British, American, and Canadian settlers who resented the rule of the H.B.Co. and demanded self-government. He yielded to their demands, and the First Parliament west of the Rockies was formed.

(E) THE FINDING OF GOLD ON THE MAINLAND, (and the Results.)

1. In 1856, an Indian found some gold in the Thompson River in the Cariboo district.

2. Later, gold was discovered in the Fraser River.

3. The discovery of gold caused an influx of miners from the Gold fields of California. These came by way of Fort Victoria on Vancouver Island.

4. Douglas made it understood that Vancouver Island was

British Territory, and that lawlessness would not be permitted. He im ad a registration fee on every miner who proposed to go into the inte and a toll for each canoe and each boat that went direct to the mouth the Fraser River. (He had no authority to levy these tolls, and they later removed by the British Government; but they enabled him to keep track of those who went into the interior.

5. In 1858, when the British Government made the mainland a Crown Colony, Douglas was appointed governor there, as well as on Vancouver Island. (This new authority enabled him to preserve law and ord in the mining camps.) (In 1859, upon receipt of word that disorders h broken out near Yale, on the Fraser, He set out with a hundred blue-j ts, a company of Royal Engineers, a cannon and a judge, in the stern- ler ENTERPRISE, and quelled the disorders on the spot. The miners as a result made little more trouble.)

6. In 1859-1860 rich strikes were made in the Cariboo District east of the Fraser.

7. In 1862, Douglas set his Royal Engineers to work to build a road..still known as THE CARIBOO TRAIL..overland to the gold diggings.

8. Between 1858 and 1863 millions of dollars worth of gold were found in the heart of British Columbia.

9. It is estimated that there were at one time about 10,000 miners in the colony. Gradually the unsuccessful miners left the coun and By the end of 1860, the number of miners remaining was about 4000, and THESE CONSTITUTED THE ORIGINAL POPULATION OF BRITISH COLUMBIA.

9. In 1863, Douglas was knighted for his services.

10. In 1864, he resigned his commission as governor of British Columbia, and retired to private life.

(F) THE RESULTS.

1. In 1866, Vancouver Island and British Columbia were united and became a self-governing province with a Legislative Council and a Legislative Assembly like the other provinces in British North Americ

2. British Columbia has become one of the chief provinces of th Dominion of Canada.

2. The reason for the union was that the cost of two government was too great.

3. The united provinces were called British Columbia.

3. The Capital was Victoria.

25. THE Defects OF THE ACT OF UNION. Defects.

1. Canada won the blessing of Responsible Government, but due to the defects of the Act of Union it was impossible to establish a strong party government.

2. The Act of Union gave to Upper and Lower Canada equal representation regardless of population. At first Lower Canada had the larger Population, but due to immigration, the population of Upper Canada became larger than that of Lower Canada, and the representation in the Assembly remained equal.

3. The two races became jealous and distrustful of each other.

4. In ten years there were nine ministries and several general elections. These did not bring about definite results as it was impossible to secure working majorities in parliament.

5. Party Government broke down, and there was a deadlock in Parliament.

26. SUGGESTIONS OF A LARGER UNION BEFORE 1850.

1. John Beverly Robinson, William Lyon Mackenzie and others suggested a union of all of the Provinces of British North America.

2. Lord Durham recommended in 1839 a union of all of the Provinces as soon as possible, and had much influence in promoting Confederation in 1867. He urged a larger union so that the French might be kept in check by an English majority,

3. The deadlock in parliament in 1864 between the two races gave rise to the suggestion of a union of the four provinces.

27. THE COALITION OF 1864.

1. The French members opposed an equal number of English members in the legislature on important questions, and progress was impossible.

2. The political leaders (most notably John A. Macdonald and George Brown) dropped their fueds and united for a common cause. This is known as the great coalition of 1864, and contained Macdonald, Brown, and Mowat from Ontario and Tache from Quebec. This coalition had much to do with bringing about the union of 1867

28. FEAR OF THE UNITED STATES.

1. In 1864 there was fear of the United States throughout Canada because the Civil War was coming to a close. A trained army of over a million men was at the disposal of the American Government which deeply resented British sympathy for the south.

2. Great Britain felt the Confederation would solve the problem of Canadian defence, and would open up the way for a reduction of garrisons in Canada

These notes are included in the steps leading to Confederation.

26. THE STEPS LEADING TO CONFEDERATION.

1. The United Empire Loyalists brought ideas of Responsible Government with them when they came to Canada in 1783-4.

2. In 1791, the Legislative Assembly was established by the Constitutional Act. It was to represent the people.

3. Between 1791 and 1840 there was a demand for Responsible Government.

4. In 1840, Responsible Government was established in name, but not in actual fact.

5. In 1849, Responsible Government was established by Lord Elgin by his signing the Rebellion Losses Bill.

6. Before 1850, there were numerous suggestions of a large Union.

a. John Beverly Robinson, William Lyon Mackenzie, and others suggested the union of all of the Provinces of British North America.

b. Lord Durham's Report of 1839 urged a Union, and played an important part in promoting Confederation in 1867. He urged the Union of Upper and Lower Canada so that the French Canadians might be kept in check by an English majority.

c. When the deadlock came in 1864 between the two races, the suggestion of a union of the four provinces was advocated.

7. After 1849, there was a demand for representation in parliament according to population. This caused a political deadlock, and resulted in the formation of coalition governments. The chief factor which promoted a confederation of the provinces was the deadlock which existed in 1864. The French members opposed an equal number of English members in the legislature on important questions, and progress was impossible. The political leaders (most notably John A. Macdonald and George Brown) dropped their fueds, and united for a common cause. (This was known as the Great Coalition Government of 1864 and contained Macdonald, Brown and Mowat from Ontario and Tache from Quebec. This Government had much to do with bringing about the union of 1867.)

8. In 1865-6, the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States had been cancelled because the Americans felt that Canada had reaped the greatest benefit during the American Civil War. It became necessary for Canada to look for other markets, and it is said that this resulted in the removal of the inter-provincial barriers, and resulted in the establishment of a commercial union of the Canadian Provinces.

9. From 1775-6, when the Americans tried to force Canada to become the Fourteenth Colony in the American Union...through the War of 1812; the American Civil War 1860-1865; and the Fenian Raids of 1866, the necessity for organized military protection was shown.

10. There were thoughts of a union of the Maritime Provinces, and a conference had been called to discuss the issue. In 1864 representatives from the other provinces asked permission and were allowed to attend the Charlottetown Conference where the question of Union was discussed.

11. In 1864, a conference was held at Quebec, and plans were made for the union of all of the Canadian Provinces. The representatives

returned to their provinces to ascertain the feelings of their people and their parliaments in connection with the issue.

THEY FOUND

1.The parliament of Upper and Lower Canada was in favour.

2.In Nova Scotia, the parliament was in favour, but the people were at first opposed.

3.In New Brunswick, the people were at first opposed, but later were in favour.

4.In Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland, the people were opposed.

12.In 1866, delegates were sent to England to draft suitable terms. The British Parliament approved the terms submitted, and the British North America Act was established in 1867.

27.THE FACTORS WHICH BROUGHT ABOUT CONFEDERATION WERE:

OR

THE REASONS FOR CONFEDERATION WERE:

1.Political.
2.Commercial.
3.Military.
4.Imperial.

28.THE ABOVE REASONS EXPLAINED. an explanation of the reasons for confederation.

(A)POLITICAL.

1.A political Union of the provinces of Br. N. America was suggested by Robinson, Mackenzie, and Lord Durham before 1840, and Lord Sydenham favoured a wider union than that provided by the Act of Union.

2.The idea was to establish a central government to look after the affairs of all of the Canadian Provinces in general.

(9) + 3.A deadlock occurred in the parliament of Upper and Lower Canada regarding the question of representation in parliament according to population. This forced a new line of action because the parties in the parliament were so evenly divided that a stable government could not be formed.

10+ 4.The first movement to break the deadlock was the establishment of a coalition government which aimed to bring about a federal union of the two provinces..Upper and Lower Canada..instead of the legislative union.

5.It was then thought that the inclusion of the Maritime provinces would over-come the existing difficulty.

6.In the Maritime Provinces a union was discussed because of the cost of maintaining the three governments and three expensive governors for such small territories (was prohibitive). There were also rivalries and jealousies, instead of mutual support.

7.It was felt that a larger union embracing all of the

Provinces would be an advantage or a political expedient, and would future prevent the occurrence of deadlocks in parliament.

8.There was also a sincere desire to retain British connecti and counteract the effort that was being made to force Canada to joi the republic to the south.

Include with 3. 9.One of the leading political problems was the demand for representation according to population. Western Canada(Ontario) had larger population, and had only equal representation in the Legislat Assembly. Sir George Brown, editor of the Globe, led in the demand f representation according to population. This roused the antagonism o the French because it attacked the system of equal representation, a the Roman Catholic Religion. The French opposed the demand because i had been denied them when Eastern Canada(Quebec) had the greater pop ion; and they were afraid that their religion, language and customs would suffer if the power of government were in English hands. The p ies in parliament being equal at the time found that it was impossib to carry on the government because a single vote saved or lost an is Political deadlocks were the result.

Include with 4. 10.A coalition cabinet was established in 1864 under Tache. members of this cabinet pledged themselves to work for Confederation.

(B)COMMERCIAL.

1.The Americans cancelled the Reciprocity Treaty in 1865 bec they felt that Canada had reaped the greatest benefit during the Ameri Civil War.

2.This meant that the Canadians had to look for new markets.

3.The British Possessions in North America, looking for an e sion of their commerce, proposed a commercial union ~~among themselves~~, free trade among themselves, and better facilities for carrying on t both at home and with the Mother-land, and other British Colonies. to take the place of that which they had had with the U.S.A.

4.There had been trade barriers between some of the Provinces, and it was recommended that these be removed. It was thought that the removal of these would provide a prosperous interprovincial trade.

5.By linking up their railways and waterways, they would make province of them a paying concern, and provide better means of communication transportation with their ~~natural~~ home markets.

xxx In the Canadas, the St. Lawrence and Great Lakes system of Canals was completed; Toronto and Montreal were joined by rail in 185 The Grand Trunk Railway was completed from Lake Huron to the sea in 1 Toronto was connected with Montreal and Halifax by Telegraph lines; t Decimal currency was adopted in 1858 to expedite trade with the U.S.A. Considerable money was at first spent outside of Canada for manufactu Galt, as the Minister of finance in Canada improved a protective tari which was opposed by the British, but encouraged the people to make of the things which had been imported.

(C)MILITARY

1.The general relationships which had existed, showed the need for organized military protection.

DATES	PARTICULARS.
a.1775-6	The Americans tried to make Canada the fourteenth Colony in the American Union.
b.1812	The Americans wanted and tried to capture Canada.
c.1861-1865	The American Civil War was in progress. The North was angry toward Great Britain because of the Trent Affair of 1861. This placed Canada in danger. In 1864 the American Civil War was coming to a close, and a trained army of over a million men was at the disposal of a government which resented British sympathy for the South. A Bill was passed through Congress to provide for the inclusion of Canada as a State of the Union.
d.1866	The Fenians from the U.S.A. invaded Canada and caused some fear.

2.Great Britain felt that Confederation would solve the problem of Canadian defence and would open the way for a reduction of British Garrisons in Canada. (A Union of the Provinces would give Military strength which was needed for organized protection.

GENERAL NOTE RE THE AMERICAN CIVIL WAR 1861-1865.

This was also known as the War between the North and the South. It broke out at Fort Sumter.

Since the adoption of the American Constitution, there had been strong feeling regarding the question of slavery. The Southern States, with their Cotton Plantations, were in favour of slavery, and as State after State was added to the Union, there was a struggl to decide whether each should be a SLAVE STATE or a FREE STATE.

Finally the South seceded or withdrew from the North; declared their Independence; and began the War, which continued for four years.

It ended in the complete defeat of the Southern Forces and the maintaining of the Union. It was considered the greatest war up to that time.

During the War, President Lincoln, who was afterwards assassinated, made the famous proclamation of the ABOLITION OF SLAVERY in the United States in 1863.

THE TRENT AFFAIR.

2. In 1861, during the War between the North and the South, a Northern Ship-of-war stopped the British Mail Steamer, the TRENT, and arrested two Southern Commissioners who were on Board. This issued threatened to cause a declaration of war between Great Britain and th U.S.A..(This was the point of contention which had led to the War of Britain demanded their return under penalty of war. For a time matter looked serious, but at last the Americans surrendered the two commis ers. The action of Britain caused deep resentment on the part of the North, who felt that Britain sympathized with the South.

3. THE ALABAMA CLAIMS.

These were claims that were made by the Americans agains Great Britain some time after the American Civil War.

The Americans claimed for damage done by the Alabama an other ships that were built in Britain for the Southern States during war between the North and the South, and which the British authoriti had allowed to escape after having been notified by the Americans of destination.

By the Washington Treaty of 1871, they were referred fo arbitration. At Geneva, in 1872, the Americans were awarded $15,500,0 which Britain paid promptly in one large cheque.

It is said that the Americans greatly exaggerated their claims and that much of this award remains still unclaimed in the han of the American Government.

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING THE FENIAN RAIDS.

The Fenian Brotherhood was a society of Irishmen whose obj was to free Ireland from the hated British Rule. After the War betwee the North and the South, military expeditions of these Fenians were organized in the United States with the avowed purpose of conquering Canada and apportioning it among their followers, This was to be a st toward the ~~ultimate~~ attainment of their ultimate object. The American authorities were notified of the work in progress, but failed to supp it.

The most formidable of these raids was along the Niagara where some hundreds, under O'Neal, crossed the Niagara River at Black Rock, but were defeated at Ridgeway in 1866.

In 1870, there was a Fenian scare in Quebec, and in Manit in 1871, but they did not amount to much, The danger of such raids wa consideration that led to Confederation.

At the Washington Treaty of 1871, when the Americans were urging the Alabama claims, the Canadian representative wished to form the Fenian Raid claims, but the British Representatives were more anxi for American friedship than for that of Canada, and the claims were ignored.

(D) IMPERIAL.

Confederation

(a) Definition

It was a union of the individual Canadian Provinces under one Federal or Dominion Government for mutual support in connection with issues which concerned all of the provinces; and each province was to have a government to look after local or provincial affairs.

It was a union of the individual Canadian provinces under one Federal or Dominion Government for mutual support in connection with issues which concern all of the provinces; and each province was to have a Government to look after local or Provincial affairs.

1.Great Britain felt that Canada would have sufficient military protection if the Canadian Provinces were united. This would allow the withdrawal of the British Troops from Canada, and would enable Canada to co-operate with the Empire of which it formed a part.

2.

Great Britain offered the guarantee of protection if it were required; and to help raise money or to make grants of money for the building of railroads.

3.Great Britain strongly urged the Confederation of the Provinces, of British North America.

29.CONFEDERATION.

(A)DEFINITION

a.It is a union of the individual provinces for mutual support, where the issue concerns all of the provinces.

b.In Canada, it was the union of the provinces under one Federal or Dominion Government which was to control matters which pertained to all of the provinces; and each province was to have a government to look after local or provincial affairs.

XXXX.THE CONFERENCES REGARDING CONFEDERATION.

(A)THE CONFERENCE AT ~~CHARLOTTETOWN~~ QUEBEC.

The Canadian leaders of Upper and Lower Canada met at Quebec. They were distrustful of each other, but Federation was frankly discussed, and a scheme of federation was agreed upon.

(B)THE CONFERENCE AT CHARLOTTETOWN.

It was called at the request of the Maritime Provinces, and was primarily a private session to discuss a federation of the Maritime Provinces.

The representatives of Upper and Lower Canada, and of Newfoundland heard of it, and requested an invitation to it. They were allowed to attend, and prevailed upon those present to adjourn and to meet later in the same year at Quebec.

(C)THE CONFERENCE AT QUEBEC.

This conference had representatives present from all of th the Provinces of British North America. (Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island, New Brunswick, and Upper and Lower Canada.)

The terms of a federal union were drawn up and accepted by the representatives of the provinces, but it was necessary to have them voted on by the individual provinces. If they were accepted, they were to be framed into an act and submitted to the British Parliament for its approval.

XXXX. THE PRONOUNCEMENT OF THE PROVINCES.

L. In Upper Canada, Brown and Macdonald carried the issue, and Lower Canada, Cartier's following was in favour.

2. In New Brunswick, an election was held on this issue in 186 Tilley was defeated, and the Union of the Provinces was rejected. How ever, a second election was held in 1866, and the verdict was in favo of the Union..The terms were accepted.

3. In Nova Scotia, the followers of Tupper were in favour, but the issue was strongly opposed by Howe. The terms were accepted, and Tupper was defeated in the next election.

4. In Prince Edward Island, the terms were rejected.

5. In Newfoundland, the terms were rejected.

30. THE FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION WERE.

1. The thirty-three representatives from Upper Canada, Lower Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island and Newfound land, who met at Quebec in 1864 and agreed unanimously to the resolut on which the constitution of Canada is based.

(2) To these thirty-three representatives the names of three o s may be fairly added. These three attended the Quebec Conference, bu they did not attend the final conference in London, England, in Decem 1866, and helped to frame the bill which was passed by the British Parliament.

31. THE REASONS THATTHE FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION ARE ENTITLED TO FAME AND HONOUR ARE:

1. They united the British North American Provinces into one permanent Dominion which is a distinguished and prosperous self-govern state of the British Empire.

2. They formed a constitution which was unlike any that had be previously organized, and which has solved the problem of a central government for the entire Dominion while each province has a parliamen to look after its local affairs.

3. They sank strong party differences, and forgot personal amb ions while they worked in the interests of the Dominion and the welfar of the British Empire.

4. They showed a wisdom and a patriotism which was far in adva of the spirit of the day, and created a new state which was one of the most notable achievements of the nineteenth century.

5. They believed in the future destiny of Canada, and refused heed the pessimistic predictions of all who lacked faith and courage.

32. THE LEADERS OF THE CONFEDERATION MOVEMENT WER IN THE FOUR PROVINCES

1. IN CANADA (Upper and Lower)
   1. John A. Macdonald
   2. George Brown.
   3. George Etienne Cartier; Galt; McGee;
2. In New Brunswick.
   1. Leonard Tilley.
3. In Nova Scotia.
   1. Dr. Charles Tupper.

3. THE BRITISH NORTH AMERICA ACT.

(A) THE DATE

1867. July 1st.

(B) THE REASONS FOR:

1. Political.--The demand for Representation according to Pop
2. Commercial.-The Cancellation of the Reciprocity Treaty.
3. Military. --The American Civil War and Fenian Raids.
4. Imperial. --Promises to help, and desire to withdraw military support.

(C)

(C) It was drafted by

1. The Fathers of Confederation.

(D) IT WAS PASSED BY:

1. The British Parliament.

(E) IT BECAME EFFECTIVE:

1. July 1st 1867 The Birthday of the Dominion of Canada.

(F) THE PROVISIONS OR TERMS.

1. Note. In the original draft the delegates agreed on seventy-two resolutions, but these were reduced to sixty-nine at the London Conference, and were embodied in a bill which was passed without a division in the British Parliament.)

1. Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia were united under a Federal or Dominion Government and were to be known as the Dominion of Canada.

2. Provisions were made for the admission of other British Provinces.

3. There was to be a Governor-General over the Dominion. He was representing, and was appointed by the Crown.

4. The Federal or Dominion Government was to consist of:

1. A Governor-General appointed by the British Parliament for a term of five years.

2. A Cabinet or Executive Council of Thirteen members to advise the Governor-General, and who were responsible to the people's representatives in Parliament. It was to be composed of senators and members of the House of Commons.

3.A Senate of seventy-two members. One-third from Ontario, one-third from Quebec, and one-third from the Maritime Provi These members were appointed ~~from~~ for life by the Governor-General.

4.A House of Commons, elected every five years on basis of representation according to population. Quebec was to send s five members, and the other provinces in proportion to their populati

5. The Federal or Dominion Government was to control:

1.Tariffs.
2.Postal Matters.
3.Militia.
4.Criminal Law.
5.The appointment of Provincial Lieutenant-Governo
6.The appointment of Judges.
7.All national matters.
8.Penitentiaries.
9. Trade and commerce
10. Navigation and Shipping.
11. Currency and coinage.
12. Banking
13. weights and measures.
14. Patents and copyrights
15. Naturalization
16. Indians.

6.THe Provincial Governments were to control:

1.Education.
2.Municipal Government.
3. Jails and Asylums.
4.The enforcement of Law.
5.The sale of liquor.
6.Local affairs.
7. Direct Taxation
8. management and sale of p Lands.
9. Timber
10 Provincial hospitals
11 administration of jus
12. Licenses.

Number six should read.....Each province was to have a Provincial Gove ment which was to control...

7. The canadian Government was to build an Intercolonial R.R. connecting the St. Lawrence with Halifax. It was to be commenced within 6 mos. after the union.

(G)THE RESULTS.

1.The old province of Canada was divided into two parts, Onta and Quebec.

2.These were united with New Brunswick and Nova Scotia.

3. The Dominion of Canada was formed.

4 Ottawa was selected as the capital of the new Dominion.

5.True responsible Government was obtained.

6. Representation according to population was established.

34.THE GROWTH OF THE DOMINION OF CANADA.

PROVINCES	DATES	CIRCUMSTANCES FACTORS OR REASONS.
1.Ontario.	1867	1.Political
2.Quebec	1867	2.Commercial
3.New Brunswick	1867	3.Military
4.Nova Scotia	1867	4.Imperial
a.The North West Territories.	1869	The Canadian government obtained from the Hudson Bay Co. the N.W.T which were bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, On the west by Rockies, and on the South by th

PROVINCES	DATES	CIRCUMSTANCES.FACTORS. REASONS
		49th parallel of latitude.The H. B. Co. agreed to resign its righ for the sum of £300,000, but were to retain control of its own posts and the reservation of one-twentieth of the fertile land of the west.
5.Manitoba	1870	The preservation of law and order among the Metis.
6.British Columbia	1871	1.The building of a railroad to join Eastern and Western Canada. 21Fear of American aggression. 3.Imperial pressure.
7.Prince Edward Island	1873	1.The defeat of the anti-confederation party in 1783. 2.Money. 3.Trade and commerce. 4.The desire for connection with the mainland.
b.The North West Territories were organized into Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, Athabasca, Alberta	1882.	1.There was fear of American aggression. 2.Administration.
8.Alberta	1905	1.Administration.
9.Saskatchewan	1905	
c.Quebec, Ontario and Manitoba were emlarged.	1912.	1.Administration.

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING MANITOBA.

MANITOBA.

A number of settlers entered the region after the Selkirk Settlement was established in the Red River region. They finally wished to enter the Dominion of Canada.

The settlers made a request to the British Government to allow their territory to become a province, but their request remained unanswered.

The settlers had met at Portage La Prairie and had formed themselves into a self-governing colony which was named Manitoba in 1865.

Recognition was asked from Britain and Canada, and the Canadian Government paid the Hudson Bay Company for its rights in the North West. The Company received £300,000 and retained the right

to some 50,000 acres of land around its posts.

Manitoba was acknowledged as a province of Canada in 1870, its transfer caused numerous troubles. Many of the settlers did not understand the transfer, and the French half-breeds or Metis feared for their religion and language. Their farms had never been surveyed, but they desired titles to their lands from the new government. Surveyors were sent to survey a road fro from Lake Superior to the region of the Red and the Metis thought that their lands were to be resurveyed and taken from them. The new English and Canadian settlers despised the Metis, caused ill-feeling. William MacDougall was sent by the Canadian Government to take charge of the government of Manitoba, and the French and Metis rose in rebellion against the new power. They were led by Louis Riel.

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING BRITISH COLUMBIA.

BRITISH COLUMBIA.

The British settlers on the coast wished to remain a British people, but they were in closer touch with the United States. It seemed that they must unite either with the States of with Canada.

A Confederation League was formed to work for Union with Canada. This was supported by the radicals, but was opposed by the Officials. The financial straits of the colony on the Pacific pointed to the wisdom of joining Canada, and delegates were sent to Ottawa. They had to travel to San Francisco.

They agreed to enter the Union on condition that Canada would build a railway across the Continent within ten years; and that British Columbia be allowed to be a self-governing Province of the Dominion of Canada.

British Columbia entered the union in 1871.

A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING ~~NOVA~~ PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

The defeat of the snti-confederation party in 1873 made it possible for Prince Edward Island to enter Confederation. This province voted itself into the Dominion as the seventh and the smallest province on condition that it would never have fewer than FOUR MEMBERS in the House of Commons.

PART THREE.

1.

TWO FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION.

35. SIR JOHN ALEXANDER MACDONALD.

(A)THE DATES.

1820-1830-1836-1844-1847-1854-1857-1864-1867.
1867-1868-9--1870-1871-1872-1873-1878-1885- 1886-1891.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A Scotch lad who had been brought to Canada in 1820 by his father who had decided to emigrate to the new land. He spent his early years in Kingston where he attended the Grammar School.

2.A child of poverty and obscurity,(In later years he said that he had had no childhood.He began to earn his own living when he was fifteen years of age.) who became the foremost man of Can

(C)HIS WORK BEFORE CONFEDERATION INCLUDED:

1.Beginning the study of law in 1830, and being called to the bar as a lawyer in 1836.

2.Entering the legislature as a member for Kingston in 1844. (and at that time entering public life) (Before he was 30.) At this stage of his political career he took little part in the debates, but spent most of his time studying constitutional history and parliamentary practice. He began to define his political creed as Conservative, but not Family Compact.)

3.Becoming receiver-general in the Government in 1847.(He remained in office for only a few months because the Conservative administration of which he was a member was defeated at the polls in the election held in 1848.For the next six years, he was a member of the opposition. He opposed the Rebellion Losses Bill, but refused to be a party to the annexation movement that followed.He supported the British American League. He was convinced that the country which was torn by political extremists needed a moderate and sane government.

5.Welding the moderate elements of both the Reformers and the Tories into one party which became known as the Liberal-Conservative party.

4.Being asked by Sir Allan MacNab to assist him in the formation of a Tory administration in 1854 upon the defeat of the Reform Government.(Sir Allan MacNab, the Tory leader had been asked to form an administration, and he sought the aid of Macdonald who had become the leader of the moderate conservatives. Macdonald who had a genius for managing men ,succeeded in bringing about a union of various political groups.

6.Becoming the attorney-general in the MacNab-Morin administration, in 1854, and introducing the bill for the secularization of the Clergy Reserves.

7.Becoming the joint leader in 1856 upon the retirement of MacNab,in the Tache-Macdonald government.

8.Coming into conflict with George Brown, the leader of the

(He was a personal and political antagonist of

Reform Party. This antagonism remained active or latent up to the en Brown's life.

9.Forming an administration with Cartier, upon the resigna of Tache in 1857. (He was the real head, the organizing spirit of th government. He became Prime Minister.)

NOTE

The attempt to govern Upper and Lower Canada as united pr ces was gradually breaking down, and statesmen were looking about for solution of the intolerable situation. All parties recognized the dea lock, and finally agreed upon the larger scheme of Confederation. Mac ald, in the early stages,was inclined to be cautious, but when final convinced that the hour had come, he arose to the height of his grea opportunity, and, during the next three years of negotiations with h hearted supporters, with the hesitating sister province, and with th mother country,displayed a skill that, by comparison, dwarfs the eff of any of his colleagues.

10.Attending the Charlottetown Conference in 1864 where the Maritime Provinces were discussing a Union, and helping to persuade t representatives there to agree to another conference at Quebec, where larger union could be discussed.

11.Attending the Quebec Conference where resoultions were dr ed for the Confederation of all of the Provinces of British North Ame

12.Helping to steer the Confederation Resolutions through th Legislature of Canada. He used skill, patience, and tact in accompli this.

13.Attending the London Conference in 1866, where he helped drawing up the British North America Act. He was the Chairman of th Conference.His tact often saved the day by suggesting compromise.

(D)THE RESULTS OF HIS WORK BEFORE THE ESTABLISHMENT OF CONFEDERATION

1.The British North America Act was passed.

2.The Dominion of Canada was formed.

5. He was a personal political antagonist of

3. He became the first Prime Minister of the Dominion of C

4.He was a Father of Confederation.

(E)HIS WORK AFTER THE PASSING OF THE B.N.A.ACT INCLUDED:

HIS PREMIERSHIP IS NOTED FOR THE FOLLOWING.

(A)THE DATES

1867-1873------1878-1891

(B)HE WAS:

1.The first Premier of the Dominion of Canada.

2.One of the most remarkable statesmen of Canada.

3.A student of history, literature and politics.

4.The foremost man of Canada.

E.(C)HIS WORK after confed. INCLUDED.

1.The organization of the first Dominion Government.

2.Persuading Joseph Howe, the anti-confederation leader in Scotia to enter the cabinet.

34
18
16

34
aug. 19
15

14

June 1930 = 16
June 1931 10½
June 1932 - 14

Sir John A. Macdonald.

a. The Dates.

1820. 1891.

b. He was:-

1. a Scotch lad brought to Canada 1820

2. a child of poverty and obscurity who became the foremost man of Canada.

~~4~~ 3. One of the fathers of Confederation

~~3~~ 4. a student of history, literature and politics.

5. The first Premier of the Dominion of Canada.

c. His work included -

a. Before Confederation

1. beginning the Study of Law. 1830. and becoming a lawyer in 1836.

2.

Sir John A. Macdonald.

a. His Life.

1820. 1891.

b. His work.

1. A Scotch lad brought to Canada 1820.

2. A child of poverty and obscurity who became the foremost man of Canada.

3. One of the fathers of Confederation.

4. A student of history, literature and politics.

5. Medical Faculty of the Ministry of Canada.

c. His work included -

a. Before Confederation

1. Beginning the study of law 1830. and becoming a lawyer in 1836.

2.

3.Taking a keen interest in the negotiations that led up to the ~~entry of Manitoba~~ annexation of the North West Territories and the admission of Manitoba into the Dominion.Suppression of R's Reb.

4.Persuading British Columbia to enter the Union.

5.Being a commissioner to Washington regarding the safe-guarding of Canadian interests.

6.Being involved in the Pacific Scandal.

8 7.Becoming the leader of the opposition after his defeat, and patiently working on the development of the National Policy which restored him to power in 1878. The NATIONAL POLICY placed a duty on manufactured goods coming into the country, and thereby protected Canadian Industries. This policy has been modified but it has never been abandoned.

9 8.Being instrumental in having the Canadian Pacific Railroad built.

7. 9.Sponsoring the formation of the North West Mounted Police.

10.Laying the foundations for a development unsurpassed in the history of the world.

J.(D)THE RESULT:

1.He laid the foundations for a development that were unsurpassed in the history of the world.

36.GEORGE BROWN.

(A)THE DATES.

1843-1851-1858-1864-1865-6..1874-1880.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A Scotchman who came to New York with his father in 1838. (He was associated with him in journalism, and inherited from him his liberalism and hatred of slavery.)He later moved to Toronto.

3.A personal and political antagonist of Sir. John A. Macdonald. 3.The Editor of the Globe which was established in Toronto 1843. 4 5.A Father of Confederation.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED. The paper established in 1843 = The Banner.

L.Establishing the Globe Newspaper in Toronto in 1843. (1844)

2.Carrying on a fight for responsible government in its columns. This occupied his energies for a number of years. (In its first number he said"The battle which the reformers of Canada will fight is not a battle of a party, but the battle of constitutional rights against the undue interference of executive power.")

3.Joining with Baldwin and others in the Toronto Reform Association in 1844.

4.Supporting Lord Elgin in the matter of the Rebellion Losses Bill in 1849.

5.Taking issue with the government in connection with the secularization of the Clergy Reserves.

6.Rising to a commanding position in the assembly by virtue

of his industry and force.

7. Advocating Representation in Parliament according to Popul

8. Forming an administration in 1858 which lasted but for four days, as he was defeated in the house, and his government at once resig

9. Strongly advocating Confederation, and proposing a federati scheme of government either for Canada alone or for all of the Briti American Provinces.

10. Becoming a member of the coalition government in 1864, and taking an active part in the negotiations which paved the way for Co federation.

11. Being a delegate to the Charlottetown Conference where a scheme of Union was discussed.

12. Being a delegate to the Quebec Conference where a scheme of Union was drawn up.

13. Playing a conspicuous part in presenting the resolutions of the Quebec Conference to the Canadian Parliament, and securing their consent to the proposals. (He made a strong speech in the legislature support of Confederation.

14. Resigning because of the result of a disagreement with his colleagues in connection with the handling of the Reciprocity Treaty.

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. The great coalition in which Brown and Macdonald agreed to serve together under Sir Etienne Tache, a French Canadaian of moderate views, was formed, The deadlock was broken. The way to Union was paved

2. The Union of the Canadian Provinces was established.

3. He did not go to England to help in the final draft of the B.N.A.Act, but he was acclaimed " A FATHER OF CONFEDERATION."

4. He was appointed to the senate in 1873.

5. In 1874, he was sent to Washington by the Mackenzie Governm to negotiate a Reciprocity Treaty, but it was not accepted by the U.S

6. He retired from public life so that he could devote his tim to journalism.

7. He was shot by George Bennet, an employee of the Globe who had been discharged for intemperance, He died on May 10, 1880.

11. THE NEW NATIONALITY.

37. THOMAS D'ARCY MCGEE.

(A) THE DATES.

1857-1868.

GENERAL NOTE.

His life falls naturally into three periods; in Ireland 1825-1848; in the United States 1848-1857; and in Canada 1857-1868. While only a quarter of his life was spent in Canada, it was to her that he gave his fullest and most abiding service.

In 1846, he identified himself with the young Ireland Movement, and did considerable literary and historical work.

(B)HE WAS:

1. A journalist.

2.An Irishman who had taken part in the Irish Rebellion of 1848, and had to flee from the country in the disguise of a priest.

3.An orator.

4.A Father of Confederation.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED.

a.Entering upon a journalistic career in the U.S.A. where he established News Papers; and becoming a student of Republicanism

b.Finding that he preferred Monarchy, and moving to Montreal where he established the New Era, an Irish-Canadian Newspaper.

3.Entering politics in 1858 as one of the representatives of Montreal.

4.Finding that there wasn't a common feeling, or spirit of Nationality among the Canadian Provinces.

5.Becoming a Canadian Nationalist who, through the columns of the New Era, in the Canadian Legislature, and on the public platform, preached the gospel of the"NEW NATIONALITY."

6.Holding an important portfolio in the Coalition Government 1864, and being able to take an active part in the events which led to Confederation.

7.Being a delegate to the Charlottetown Conference where the scheme of Union was discussed.

8.Being a delegate to the Quebec Conference where the scheme of union was drawn up.

9.Urging the ratification of the Quebec Resolutions in the Canadian Legislature.

10.STEPPING ASIDE WHEN THE FIRST DOMINION GOVERNMENT WAS FORMED TO MAKE ROOM FOR OTHER POLITICAL AND RACIAL GROUPS, and by so doing,making it possible for Sir John A. Macdonald to form a government which met all of the conflicting claims of the Dominion.

11.Denouncing the Irish Extremists or Fenians in the U.S.A. who attempted an invasion of Canada.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.His work resulted in the growth of a Canadian National Feeling, and to the creation of the New Nationality in the Dominion of Canada.

2.He was regarded as a traitor to the Irish Cause.

3.In the early morning of April 7, 1868, as he was returning to his lodgings in Ottawa after delivering one of his most brilliant speeches in the House of Commons, he was assassinated by the bullet fired by a Fenian Assassin.

4.He was the FIRST MARTYR to the Canadian National unity.

111. THE CANADIAN PEOPLE IN 1867

#8. A GENERAL NOTE REGARDING THE CONDITIONS IN CANADA IN 1867.

1. The new Dominion of 1867 was comprised of the provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, and Ontario.

2. Ontario of 1867 was only one-third the area of the Province the present time.

3. Quebec of 1867 was only one-quarter of the present area.

4. Confederated Canada of 1867 was less than one-tenth of the present area.

5. The population was about one-third of the present populatio and was only slightly over three million people. 400,000 including th Indians and the Eskimos. large

6. There were no/cities in Canada then, with the exception of Montreal7. which was the largest with 100,000 inhabitanta. Toronto had 60,000. There were only nine towns with more than 10,000. The western centres were Winnipeg and Victoria.

7. The majority of the people lived on farms.

8. There was less travel. There were no electric railways, no motor-cars, no aeroplanes, and no bicycles. There were about three th and miles of railway, but the railway engines and carriages were small and the rails were of iron rather than steel. The trains were slow, i frequent, and uncomfortable. The chief railway was the GRAND TRUNK wh extended from Sandwich in the West to Rimouski in the East. There was railway connection between the St. Lawrence Valley and the Maritime provinces.

There were numerous steamships of th paddle-wheeler type on the Great Lakes, and plying between Quebec and Halifax.

There was a forest road from Quebec Halifax. Roads were rough. Some of the more important ones were cover with crushed stone(MACADAMIZED), but the greater number were still co ed with logs or planks (CORDUROY), or were just dirt roads cluttered boulders and stumps. In wet weather these were sometimes impassable. only time that there was much pleasure or comfort in travel was when roads were covered with snow.

9. Communication was difficult. The telegraph had come into ex ence in 1847, but there were no telephones. Messages were sent by word mouth, or by letter. The writing of letters played an important part the life of the people. All letters were written in long hand. The ty writer had not been invented. Letters could be sent by post, but there was no regular mail delivery in the country or in the towns. People h to go to the post-office for their letters. In the cities there was a daily newspaper, but in the country, the newspaper was published only once a week, and they contained only local news.

10. Living conditions were still marked by traces of an earlier In the Cities, and towns there were buildings of brick and stone, but the country the log houses of the pioneers were to be seen.

Heating, in the houses of the wealthy was done by furnaces, but the houses of the ordinary people were heated by stoves or open fire-places.

For lighting, candles were still in general use, but coal-oil lamps and gas-jets were coming into use. There were no electric lights.

Sanitary conditions were unsatisfactory. Even in large centres like Toronto, pig-pens and garbage heaps were found close to dwelling houses. Toronto had a waterworks system and a drainage system. The water was frequently full of minnows, and the drains sometimes caused epidemics of disease. In most cases the water had to be carried from river, lake or well, and garbage was either thrown into running water, or buried, or burned.

Table untensils were somewhat similar to what is used to-day, but spoons of pewter, wood, or horn were common.

Diet was different. There were very few imported fruits. Oranges and lemons were occasionally seen, but bananas, figs and grape-fruit were almost unknown. The staple articles of food in the country were wheaten bread, pork and potatoes. Turnips were given to cattle and sheep. Canned goods were almost unknown. There were no patented breakfast foods.

11.Amusements and games. There were no radios or moving pictures. There were theatres or opera houses in the larger cities. There were some halls in which public entertainments were given, but these played a small part in the life of the community. Few people played games. Lacrosse, a game derived from the Indians was being introduced. Baseball had not invaded Canada to any extent. Cricket and football were played only at one or two schools and colleges. Golf was unknown in Canada. Curling had gained a foothold in some districts settled by Scotchmen. Ice-hockey had not been invented. Lawn-tennis had not been invented. Walking, riding, dancing, and skating were the chief forms of exercise in which the Canadians indulged.

12.Business was in a simpler stage. There were few great companies or corporations. Most businesses were owned by one man or by two or more partners. There were numerous general stores, but there were no great departmental stores. Goods were bought on credit or in trade for other commodities..Barter.(A relic of the days when money was scarce in Canada). In 1868 a young and enterprising Irish merchant opened a dry good shop in Toronto, and revolutionized business by selling for Cash only, and at a fixed price.

13.Manufacturing had begun in certain lines, such as farm implements, furniture, and cloth. Manufactured articles were still imported. Millions of yards of cloth were still made on spinning-wheels and hand looms in the homes of the people. People made their own bread, soap, candles, and clothes.

Canada was just emerging from the pioneer stage. Life was, in many parts of the country, a struggle for existence.

Luxuries were few and far between. Most of the people had little le for literature of the arts. Only a fraction of Canada's Natural Res had been touched. Much of Ontario's richest farming land was still ed with forest. It seemed as though the supply was inexhaustible. T fisheries..deep-sea, and inland were exploited mainly for home cons on. The mineral wealth of Canada was unknown and almost wholly unde ed. Canada was entering a new modern era of great developments.

38.A general note regarding the conditions in Canada in 1867

HEADING	SUBHEADING	REMARKS.
a.The Dominion 1867	Provinces	Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia. (One-tenth present
2.The size of Prov.	Ont.,Quebec	1.Ontario was one-third present 2.Quebec was one-quarter present
3.The Population	Europeans Indians and Eskimos	1.Slightly over 300,000 2.About 100,000 3.Total about 400,00 (One-third ent population.
4.Large Centres	Cities and Towns.	1.Montreal had about 100,000 2.Toronto had about 60,000 3.Nine Towns with more than 10,0 4.Western Centres were Winnipeg Victoria.
5.Chief occupations	Farming and Lumbering.	1.Most of the people lived on fa
6.Travel	1.Railroads	1.There were no electric railroa a.There were about 3000 miles of r c.The Engines and carriages were d.The trains were slow, infrequent, uncomfortable.Rails of iron not e.The chief railroad was the Grand kwhich extended from Sandwich in west to Rimouski in the East. f.There were no railway connection between the St. Lawrence and the Maritime provinces.
	2.Motor-cars	a.There were none.
	3.Aeroplanes	a.There were none.
	4.Bicycles	a.There were none.
	5.Steamships	a.These were numerous on the Great Lakes and the St. Lawrence, and of the paddle-wheeler type. b.Some plied between Quebec and Ha
	6.Highways.	a.There was a forest road from Que

10 Amusements and games.

a. Radios and moving P.

1. There were none

b. Theatres and opera Hous

1. _____

_____

_____

HEADING	SUB-HEADING	REMARKS
		TO Halifax.
		b.Some of the more important roads were Macadamized (Covered with crushed stone.)
		c.A great number were covered with logs or planks (Corduroy).
		d.Some were just dirt roads and were cluttered with boulders and stumps.In wet weather these were sometimes impassable. Snow made them more pleasureable and comfort able.
7.Communication	1.Telegraph	a.Had come into existence in 1847
	2.Telephones	b.There were none.
	Messages	a.Sent by word of mouth or letter.
	4.Letters	a.Played an important part in the lives of the people. All were written in long hand as the type writer had not been invented.
		b.They could be sent by post, but there were no regular mail deliver ies in the country. People had to go to the post offices for their mail.
	5.Newspapers	a.In the cities there was a daily.
		b.In the country there was a weekly but it contained only local news.
8.Living Conditions	1.In Cities and Towns	a.Houses were built of Brick and stone.
	2.In the Country	b.~~In the country~~ They were built of logs as pioneer houses.
	3.Heating	c.In houses of wealthy there were furnaces.
		d.In houses of poor, stoves and fireplaces were used.
	4.Lighting	a.Candles were in general use.
		b.Coal-oil lamps and gas-jets were coming into use.
		c.There were no electric lights.
	5.Sanitation	a.Generally unsatisfactory.
		b.Pig-pens and garbage heaps were found close to dwellings.
		c.Toronto had a water-works system and a drainage system. The water was often full of minnows

HEADINGS	SUB-HEADINGS	REMARKS.
		AND THE DRAINS SOMETIMES caused ics of disease.
		d. In most cases water had to be ca from river, lake or well.
		e. Garbage was thrown into running or was buried, or burned.
	6. Table untensils.	
		a. Somewhat similar to those in use
		b. Spoons of pewter, wood, or horn common.
	7. Diet	a. There were very few imported food
		b. Oranges and lemons were occasion seen.
		c. Bananas, figs, and grape-fruit w practically unknown.
		d. Staple foods were wheaten bread, and potatoes.
		e. Turnips were fed to cattle and sh
		f. Canned food were practically unkn
		gg There were no patented breakfast
9. Amusements and Games.	1. Radios and Moving Pictures.	a. There were none.
	2. Theatres and Opera Houses.	a. These were in larger centres, an there were some halls for public tainments. but these played but a part in the life of the community.
	3. Games .	a. Few people played games.
	4. Lacrosse	a. A game derived from the Indians being introduced.
	5. Baseball	a. Had not invaded Canada to any ext
	6. Cricket and Football	a. Played in one or two schools or eges.
	7. Golf	a. Unknown in Canada.
	8. Curling	a. Was enjoyed in some Scotch settl
	9. Ice-Hockey	a. Unknown.
	10. Lawn Tennis	a. Unknown.
	11. Chief forms	a. Walking, riding, dancing, and sk
10. Business	1. Companies and Corporations.	a. There were none.
	2. General St's.	a. Numerous.
	3. Departmental Stores.	a. Unknown.
	4. Barter	a. Goods were bought on credit or in for other commodities.

HEADINGS	SUB-HEADINGS	REMARKS.
	5.Cash System	a.It was introduced by an enterprising Irish merchant who opened a dry good store in 1868, and revolutionized business by selling for Cash only, and at a fixed price.
11.Manufacturing	1.Farm Imp's 2.Furniture 3.Cloth	) Had commenced.
	4.Articles	a. Were imported.
	5.Cloth	a.Millions of yards were made on spinning wheels and hand-looms in the homes of the people.
	6.Necessities	a.Bread, soap, candles, and clothes were made in the homes.

38 General remarks. or The results of Conditions in 1867.

1.Canada was just emerging from the pioneer stage.

2.Life, in many parts of the country, was a struggle for existence.

3.There were but few luxuries.

4.Most of the people had very little leisure for literature and art.

5.Only a fraction of Canada's Natural Resources had been touched.

6.Much of Ontario's richest farming land was still covered with forest. (It seemed as though the supply of timber was inexhaustible.)

7.The deep-sea, and inland fisheries were exploited chiefly for home consumption.

8.The mineral wealth of Canada was unknown, and was almost wholly undeveloped.

9.Canada was entering a new modern era of great developments

IV. FROM SEA UNTO SEA.

39.JOSEPH HOWE.

(A)THE DATES

1836-1840-1842-1850-1864-1868-1873.

(B)He was:

1.A son of John Howe, United Empire Loyalist, who had moved to Boston after the revolution of 1775-6. (For thirteen years he was the instructor of Joseph Howe, his playfellow, and almost his daily companion.)

2.A printer.

3.A man of tireless energy and ambition who was determined t his paper a power in the province of Nova Scotia. (He wrote its edito collected its news, and introduced a new feature by reporting and pu ing the debates in the Assembly. In extending its circulation he vis various parts of Nova Scotia, and acquired an intimate knowledge of different districts, the characteristics, and the views of the peopl published a series of letters entitled "Rambles" which helped to aro the pride of the Nova Scotians in the resources and scenery of their ince. He conducted a department in the paper known as"The Club". Its contributors were Howe, Thomas Chandler Haliburton, Lawrence Doyle, several other brilliant young writers. The Club discussed public que s and public men with freedom and decisiveness. In 1829, he publishe Haliburton's history of Nova Scotia, and the same year, began to tak active interest in provincial politics. His views steadily swung tow Responsible Government. In 1835, he was sued for libel because of an attack in his paper on Halifax Magistrates for corruption. He pleade own case, and although the Chief-justice charged the jury against hi was unanimously acquitted.

In 1836, he was elected to the Assembly, and entered Publi with a tremendous capacity for hard work, a buoyant and optimistic t ament, a keen sense of humour, a wide range of reading, a retentive memory, an easy and natural style of writing and speaking.

4.The leader of the democratic party or reform party. (He ma his presence felt in the legislature from the outset.

5.The idol of the people of Nova Scotia.

(C)HIS WORK INCLUDED:

1.Putting through a series of resolutions calling for Respon Government, and embodying them in an address to the crown.(The Colon Secretary conceded many of the points demanded, but would not admit t principles of executive responsibility. He advocated Resp. Govt-for N

2.Being elected speaker in the Assembly in 1842, and being a ted collector of customs at Halifax.

(2) 3.Advocating a system of compulsory education, and the establ ment of a central undenominational college.

(B) 4.Attacking a reactionary conspiracy between the Tories and Governor Falkland.

5.Assuming editorial management of the Morning Chronicle and Nova Scotian.

(6) 6.Becoming Provincial Secretary in 1847, and having the sati ion of seeing the granting of a full measure of responsible governme

(3) 7.Strongly advocating the building of a railway in the provi and sailing for England to explain the Intercolonial project to the Home Government. (He obtained an Imperial guarantee, and secured the co-operation of New Brunswick and the Canadas.

and 8.Becoming the Chief commissioner of Railways in 1851.

9.Becoming the Provincial Premier in 1859.

10. Opposing Confederation, and declining to attend the Charl

town Conference. (He opposed Confederation because 1. it was felt that Halifax would lose the monopoly of Provincial Trade if Nova Scotia entered the Union; 2.By the Quebec Resolutions, the province had to give up levying duties on imports; 3.It was to receive 80¢ for every individual residing in the province. He thought that the province was losing financially.)

11.Creating the Anti-Confederation League, and carrying his opposition to England while the delegates were preparing the resolutions for adoption by the British Government.

12.Winning the election after the passing of the B.N.A. Act in 1867, on the anti-confederation issue.(Provincial and Dominion)

13.Carrying on for a time, an agitation for a repeal of the Union, but upon receiving better financial terms for Nova Scotia, he abandoned the movement.

14.Entering the Dominion Cabinet in 1868 as President of the Privy Council.

15.Visiting Winnipeg in 1869 in an effort to allay ill-feeling in the Red River Country.

16.Becoming Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia in 1873.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.Responsible Government was won for Nova Scotia in 1848.

2.His campaign threatened the future of Canada (Anti-Confederation).

3.Better terms were secured for Nova Scotia.

4.He was attacked by some of his previous followers for his change from an anti-confederationist to a confederationist.

5.He resigned the lieutenant-governorship, and died soon afterwards.

4. (He did not carry all of the opponents of Confederation with him when he accepted the portfolio in Macdonald's Cabinet, but this ended for the time being, the danger of Nova Scotia withdrawing from the Union.

IV. FROM SEA UNTO SEA.

40. The expansion of Confederation,or the growth of the Dominion.

PROVINCES ETC.	DATES	REMARKS.
1.Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia.	1867	These provinces were united by the British North America Act. 2.Sir John A. Macdonald was the first Prime Minister. He remained in office for six years after 1867. 3.His task was to see that the prov that had entered were satisfied.

PROVINCES	DATES	REMARKS.
		4.The first general election was hel late in the summer of 1867. In Onta Quebec and New Brunswick, the suppo of Macdonald carried nearly every t But in Nova Scotia they were defeat Joseph Howe.

Joseph Howe was the idol of the People of Nova Scotia. He carried an Anti-Confederation Campaign, and literally swept the Province. Th only supporter of Confederation that was returned there was Charles This defeat threatened the future of Canada because the withdrawal Nova Scotia from the union would have meant that the British North ica Act was a dead letter. Howe went to England to try to persuade t British Government to allow Nova Scotia to withdraw from the Dominio

Charles Tupper was sent to England to counteract his efforts. H succeeded in checkmating Howe's designs, and in an interview with Ho persuaded him to give up his campaign for the repeal of Confederatio

This interview paved the way for Macdonald to offer Howe better terms for Nova Scotia, and to induce him to accept a position in the Dominion Government. This move did not change all of the opponents of Confederation, but Howe's acceptance of a portfolio ended for the ti being, the danger of Nova Scotia withdrawing from the union.

5.Macdonald then turned his attentio to completing the union of the British Provinces in North America. T Provincesof Prince Edward Island, Newfoundland,and British Columbia remained outside. In addition there was the vast territory over which Hudson Bay Company held sway.

The Fathers of Confederation looked forward to the day when Canada would stretch from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and it was sai that the very name of the new Dominion was derived from the scriptura verse,"HIS DOMINION SHALL BE FROM SEA UNTO SEA,AND FROM THE RIVERS TO THE UTTERMOST ENDS OF THE EARTH."

a.The Territories of the H.B.Co.	1869	6.The first step was the acquisition these territories.The H.B.C. did not want to give up the domain over which had ruled for over two centuries, but aid of the British Government was enl

ed in furthering his plans. Canada agreed to pay the Company £300,000 or nearly $1,500,000, and to allow it to retain the land around its trading posts as well as one-twentieth of the fertile belt of the West In return the British Government handed over to Canada the whole of t territories. Canada had obtained a vertible empire of the future.

5.Manitoba	1870	1.Was created a province and admitt to the Union.
6.British Columbia	1871	1.The Crown Colonies of British Colu bia had been united in 1866 under th

name of British Columbia, but this colony had no connection with Canada. The real reason for his eagerness to unite B.C. with the rest was the fear that the U.S.A. might absorb this region as it had absorbed the Oregon Country twenty five years before. He had to offer great inducements to B.C. The chief was the promise to build within ten years a transcontinental railroad which was to connect British Columbia with the rest of British North America.

He enlisted the aid of the British Government which found it necessary to replace a governor who was hostile to the move by one who was favourable.

Within four years, the Dominion extended from Ocean to Ocean, and comprised the greated part of the Continent.

7.PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND. 1873.

The people reconsidered their decision, and entered the Union. P.E.I. became the last, and the smallest of the Canadian Provinces.

b.NEWFOUNDLAND

The people proved unwilling to reverse the decision which had been manifest in 1864, and to this day the Island remains a separate part of the British Empire.

8.& 9.Alberta and Saskatchewan 1905.

These two Provinces were carved from the North West Territories which had been purchased from the H.B.Co in 1869.

Macdonald shares the honour of bringing about Confederation with

1.Brown.
2.Galt.
3.Cartier
4.McGee
5.Tupper
6.Tilley.

XX ALEXANDER T. GALT.

He was a son of John Galt, the famous Scottish novelist, He took up residence in Canada as the administrator of the land company in the Eastern Townships of Lower Canada. He entered parliament and made a strong plea for Confederation as early as 1856. He secured the support of Cartier, and induced parliament to endorse the policy unanimously.

In awarding the credit to the Fathers of Confederation, Galt's early, consistent, and telling advocacy of union as a sound business principle should not be forgotten. He possessed the

confidence of the Lower Canada Protestants and never forfeited it. H was of independent opinions, and was regarded with respect by men in both parties, with the result that he exerted an important influence the adoption of Confederation.

He was the first political leader to combine the policy of protecting native industries against both British and American compe ion. In 1880, he became the first High Commissioner of Canada in Gre Britain. This post was afterwards filled by Sir Charles Tupper and L Strathcona. He died in 1893.

XX GEORGE ETIENNE CARTIER.

He was probably descended from one of the branches of the family of Jacques Cartier, the famous discoverer of Canada. He posse the intrepid courage and dominating qualities of his namesake. He an Alexander Galt induced Lower Canada to accept Union.

There was a timid element among the English-speaking Prot ts, and Galt reassured them. There was a similar faction among the F Canadians, and Cartier persuaded them.

He had fought with the Rebels in 1837 because he thought th they had been unjustly treated. When their political rights had been conceded to them, he quickly identified himself with the principles o law and order, and equal rights for all. He was loyal to the crown, a was not afraid of being misunderstood when he called himself," An Eng man speaking French". In matters of religion, he was fair and broadm and his Protestant countrymen trusted him.

He was won over to the side of Confederation by Galt, and h remained its uncompromising advocate. He was confident of his own str h and fully grasped the significance of a united Dominion. He sought political aid from his opponents, and the coalition section of Lower was entirely Conservative. Cartier, is a fine example of the distingu d public men produced by the French-Canadians. He died in 1873.

FOR NOTE REGARDING OTHER FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION SEE THE ACCOMPANYI BOOKLET? " THE FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION" ISSUED BY THE DEPARTMENT O EDUCATION IN 1927.

Tache
Tilley
Tupper

EASTER EXAMINATION. CANADIAN HISTORY.

1. The struggle for Responsible Government-----
The Little Rebel; The Tribune of the People; The Lord High Commissioner; The Burning of the Parliament Building

2- a. THE LEADER IN THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT IN U.CANADA.
1. Willaim Lyon Mackenzie.

2- b. THE LEADER IN THE STRUGGLE FOR RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT IN L.CANADA.
1. Louis Joseph Papineau.

6- c. THREE REASONS FOR THE FAILURE OF THE REBELLION OF 1837-8.
1. The majority of the people in Upper Canada were loyal and law-abiding, but had been misled by Mackenzie.
2. The leaders, Papineau and Mackenzie misjudged the feeling of the people regarding reform.
3. In Lower Canada, the rebels were opposed by the French Clergy, and few men of prominence took part in it.
4. The out-breaks were limited to a few districts.

6/ d. THREE RESULTS OF THE REBELLION OF 1837-8 were:
1. The attention of the British Government was drawn to the defects or the abuses of the Government in Canada.
2. Property was destroyed, and lives were lost.
3. The British Government sent out Lord Durham as Governor-General to inquire into the causes of the Rebellion.
4. The people were allowed a greater voice in the control of their own affairs, and it paved the way for the establishment of Responsible Government.

6- e. THREE GRIEVANCES FOUND BY LORD DURHAM WERE:
1. Racial Jealousy.
2. The Government..Family Compact and the Scotch Party.
3. The Land Grants.
4. Suppression of Free Speech.
5. The management of the Clergy Reserves.
6. The Revenue.

f. Lord Durham's Report was

3- f. LORD DURHAM'S REPORT WAS:
An impartial statement and a complete summary of the situation found in Canada, and contained suggestions for remedying the existing abuses.

6- g. THE IMPORTANCES OF HIS REPORT WERE:
1. It was the first report which spoke in glowing terms of Canada, (and portrayed a dependent colony as a daughter nation growing up beside the Mother Country)
2. It ushered in a new era in Canadian History.
3. It is considered one of the great documents in Canadian Constitutional History.
4. It portrayed Canada as a nation growing up beside the mother country.

6- h. THREE RESULTS OF THE ACT OF UNION WERE:

1. The Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada were united.
2. The defects of the Constitutional Act in-so-far-as thegov ment, land grants, division of the Clergy Reserves, and the revenve remedied.
3. The Assembly gained control of the revenue.
4. The first step toward Responsible Government was taken.

2- i. THE GOVERNOR/GENERAL UNDER WHOM RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT WAS FINALLY ABLISHED WAS:

Lord Elgin

3- j. THE NAME OF THE BILL AND THE DATE, WHICH MARKED THE ESTABLISHMENT O RESPONSIBLE GOVERNMENT WAS:

The Rebellion Losses Bill.....1849.

11. THE FIRST RAILWAY BUILDERS.

2- a. THE PIONEER RAILROAD BUILDER IN CANADA WAS:

Alexander Tilloch Galt.

6- b. THREE IMMEDIATE RESULTS OR CHANGES MADE BY THE RAILROADS IN CANADA

1. Travel and Trade became easier.
2. The exchange of commodities with other parts of British N America, and even with foreign countries became possible and profita
3. The old isolation of separate communities drew to a close.

6- c. THREE LATER RESULTS OR CHANGES MADE BY THE RAILROADS IN CANADA WERE:

1. The railway made Canada a nation.
2. It brought Canada out of the pioneer stage by opening up provincial and international trade on a scale not dreamt of before.
3. It broke down the barriers of distance between the British provinces in Canada, and thus made their union possible.
4. It made possible the acquisition and settlement by Canada the great North West.
5. It enabled Canadians to grasp the vision of the present D ion of Canada.

12. THE GOLD COLONY.

6- a. THREE OF THE EARLY EXPLORERS OF THIS REGION WERE:

1. Alexander Mackenzie.
2. Simon Fraser.
3. David Thompson.

2- b. THE FIRST GOVERNOR OF THE GOLD COLONY AFTER IT WAS MADE A CROWN COL BY THE BRITISH GOVERNMENT WAS:

Sir James Douglas.

2- c. THE NAME OF THE OVERLAND ROAD ESTABLISHED TO THE GOLD MINING REGION

1. The Cariboo Trail

LV CONFEDERATION.

TWO FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION, THE NEW NATIONALITY, THE CANADIAN PEOPLE IN 1867, FROM SEA UNTO SEA.

4- a. THE FACTORS OR REASONS FOR CONFEDERATION WERE;

1. Political.
2. Commercial.
3. Military.
4. Imperial.

6- b. THREE REASONS FOR THE FATHERS OF CONFEDERATION BEING ENTITLED TO FAME AND HONOUR WERE.

1. They united the British North American Provinces into one permanent Dominion which is a distinguished and prosperous self-governing State of the British Empire.

2. They formed a constitution which was unlike any that had been previously organized, and which has solved the problem of a central government for the entire Dominion while each province has a parliament to look after its local affairs.

OMIT. 3. They sank strong party differences, and forgot personal ambitions while they worked in the interests of the Dominion and the welfare of the British Empire.

4. They showed a wisdom and a patriotism which was far in advance of the spirit of the day, and created a new state which was one of the most notable achievements of the nineteenth century.

5. They believed in the future destiny of Canada, and refused to heed the pessimistic predictions of all who lacked faith and courage.

b

6- b. THREE LEADERS IN THE CONFEDERATION MOVEMENT WERE:

1. Sir John A. Macdonald.
2. George Brown.
3. Thomas D'Arcy McGee.
4. George Etienne Cartier.
5. Alexander Tilloch Galt.
6. Leonard Tilley.
7. Dr. Charles Tupper.

2- c. THE DATE OF THE BRITISH NORTH AMERICA ACT :

1867.

2- d. IT WAS DRAFTED BY:

The Fathers Of Confederation.

2- e. IT WAS PASSED BY:

The British Parliament.

4- f. FOUR THINGS UNDER THE CONTROL OF THE DOMINION GOVERNMENT ARE:

1. Tariffs
2. Postal Matters.
3. Militia.
4. Criminal Law.
5. The appointment of Judges.
6. All national matters.
7. Penitentiaries.
8. Trade and Commerce.
9. Navigation and shipping.
10. Currency and coinage.
11. Banking.
12. Weights and measures.
13. Patents and copyrights.
14. Naturalization.
15. Indians.
16. The appointment of Lieut-G

3- g. THREE THINGS UNDER THE CONTROL OF THE PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENTS ARE:

1. Education
2. Municipal Government.
3. Jails and Asylums.
4. The enforcement of law.
5. The sale of liquor.
6. Local affairs.
7. Direct Taxation.
8. Management and sale of Pub
9. Timber
10. Administration of justice.
11. Provincial Hospitals.
12. Licenses.

6- h. THREE RESULTS OF THE BRITISH NORTH AMERICA ACT WERE:

1. The old province of Canada was divided into two parts, Ont and Quebec.
2. These were united with New Brunswick and Nova Scotia.
3. The Dominion of Canada was formed.
4. Ottawa was selected as the capital of the new Dominion.
5. True Responsible Government was established.
6. Representation in Parliament according to Population was es lished.
7. The Intercolonial Railroad was built connecting Canada wit the Maritime Provinces.

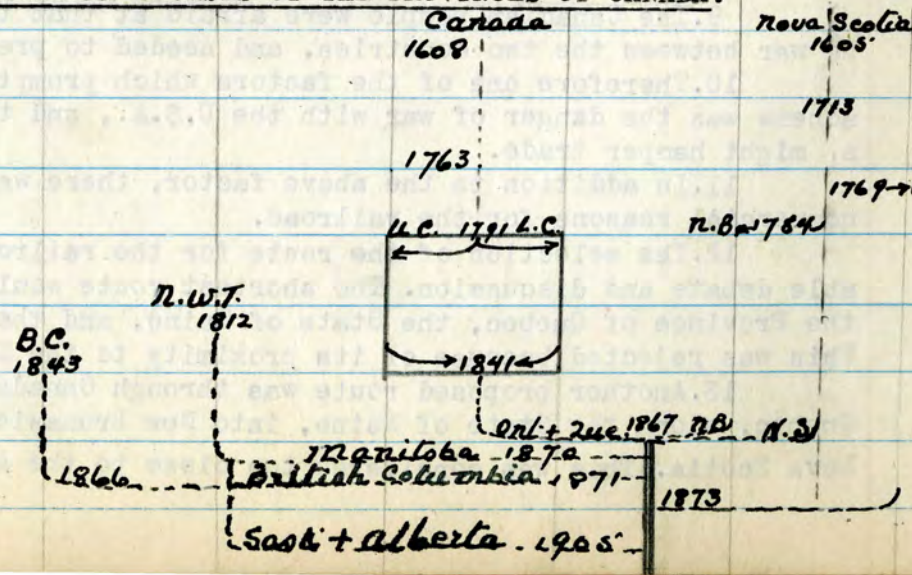
5- i. THE PROVINCES THAT ENTERED THE DOMINION AFTER 1867, with the dates o entry were:

1. Manitoba.....1870.
2. British Columbia.....1871.
3. Prince Edward Island.....1873.
4. Alberta.....1905.
5. Saskatchewan.....1905.

xx THE GROWTH OF THE DOMINION OF CANADA.

DATES	EVENTS.
1.-1713	By the Treaty of Utrecht, France gave Acadia(Nova Scotia) to Great Britain.
2.1759) 1763)	Canada became British by the Treaty of Paris.
3.1773	Prince Edward Island was separated from Nova Scotia.
4.1784	New Brunswick became a separate Province, following the arrival of the United Empire Loyalists.
5.1791	Upper and Lower Canada became separate Provinces.
6.1840	Upper and Lower Canada joined in a Legislative Union.
7.1867	A Confederation of Ontario, Quebec, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia was brought about.
8.1870	The Province of Manitoba was formed and admitted.
9.1871	The Province of British Columbia was admitted to the Dom.
10.1873	The Province of Prince Edward Island was admitted to the Dominion.
11.1905	The Provinces of Saskatchewan and Alberta were formed and were admitted to Confederation.

xx THE HISTORICAL COURSES OF THE PROVINCES OF CANADA.



xxxxFOR A NOTE REGARDING THE CONFEDERATION OF THE CANADIAN PROVINCES SE
THE HISTORY MANUAL.

XXTHE INTERNATIONAL OR INTERCOLONIAL RAILWAY.

1.One of the Provisions of the British North America Act wa
THE CANADIAN GOVERNMENT WAS TO BUILD A RAILWAY CO
ING THE ST. LAWRENCE WITH HALIFAX. IT WAS TO BE COMMENCED WITHIN SI
MONTHS AFTER THE UNION.

2. The date of the Union was July 1st. 1867.

3.The two plces that were to be connected by the Railroad we
Halifax and the St. Lawrence River. Halifax was undoubtedly chosen
of the termini because it was so near the sea.

4. Quebed is also near the sea, but it (the St. Lawrence River) freezes oger during t
cold winter weather. It is frozen over for about four months of the
and ocean-going vessels cannot use the river then, therefore Halifa
chosen as a good winter port on the Atlantic.

5.The St. Lawrence terminal of this railroad was most likely
either Quebec or Montreal.

6.The reason for the railroad being between the St. Lawrence
Halifax was that there were some railroads in Upper Canada at that t
and it was possible for goods to be shipped from Upper Canada to the
ected terminal on the St. Lawrence by rail in the winter and by wate
the summer. There were several canals already built on the St. Lawre
to overcome the rapids. About $1,500,000 had been spent on canals b
Confederation. The Grand Trunk Raiway was running from Sarnia to Que
City by 1856, and as a result Quebec was chosen as the Terminal on t
St. Lawrence.

7.Canadian goods during the winter had to be shipped through
United States as it was impossible to ship them out by water.

8.The cancellation of the Reciprocity Treaty ~~of~~ in 1866 meant
that the Canadian People had to depend more on themselves. In additi
there was a good deal of trouble between Britain and the United Stat
which had arisen out of the civil war in the U.S.A. which had just e
(The Trent Affair and the Alabama Claims.)(The Fenian Raids of 1866.)

9.The Canadian people were afraid at that time that there mi
be war between the two countries, and needed to prepare.

10.Therefore one of the factors which prompted the railroad
scheme was the danger of war with the U.S.A., and the fear that the U
A. might hamper trade.

11.In addition to the above factor, there were military and o
commercial reasons for the railroad.

12.The selection of the route for the railroad caused consider
able debate and discussion. The shortest route would have run through
the Province of Quebec, the State of Maine, and the Maritime Provinc
This was rejected because of its proximity to the U.S.A.

13.Another proposed route was through Canada entirely, through
Quebec, along the State of Maine, into New Brunswick and then through
Nova Scotia. This was considered too close to the Americans in case

war:

14.The selected route was as far removed from the American border as possible. This route was longer, and would cost more than the others. It is really 138 miles longer than the second route suggested, but because of the military issue it was chosen.

15. A great deal of the money required for the building of this railroad was borrowed from Grat Britain. The British Government had guaranteed the money for railroad and helped in planning the route. 16.The fear of the war that caused the selection of the particular route was not realized, but the Intercolonial Railroad played a conspicuous part in bringing the Provinces closer together. Other Railroads have been built on the first two proposed routes.

17.The Internalonial Railroad was later greatly increased in lenght and now forms a part of the Canadian National Railroad

SUMMA RY

1.The Provision of the B.N.A.Act for the building of the R.R
2.The Reasons for the building of the R.R.
    1.Military.
    2.Commercial.
3.The selection of the route.
    1.Routes that were possible.
    2.Reasons for the final choice.
4.Facts about the railway.
    1.Principal places on the R.R.
    2.Branches of the R.R.
    3.Lenght, and Cost.
5.The value of the new railway to the new Dominion.

V THE RISING OF THE HALF-BREEDS.

1. LOUIS RIEL

(A)THE DATES.

1844-1869-70-1884-5.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A Half-breed..(French and Indian), born in St.Boniface, M

2.A son of French-Canadian parents, but had a strain of Ind blood in his veins.

3.A student of unusual ability who was sent to Montreal to educated.(It was hoped that he might enter the priesthood, but his i ation lay in another direction. He preferred to return to the West w he threw in his lot with the half-breeds.) He hoped to establish a Frenc Republic on the Red River.

4.A leader of the Half-breeds in the region of the Red Rive (He was well-educated, and had ability.) in the Rebellion of 1869-7 and later, in the Saskatchewan Rebellion of 1885.

(C)HIS WORK.

1.Returning to the west shortly before the negotiations were commenced to include The Hudson's Bay Company's territories in the Dominion of Canada.

2.Becoming the leader of the Metis, or Half-breeds.

3.Resenting the method of transfer of the territory because

1.he felt that the H.B.Co. proposed to hand the Half-breeds and their over to Canada for a sum of money;

2.The half-breeds were not consulted during the negot ions.

3.Their interests were not safeguarded.

4.The half-breeds were completely ignored.

4.Resenting the attitude of the Canadian Government..which

1. Sent surveying parties into the North West even be the territory had been formally handed over to Canada. The surveyors their lines through the lands on which the Metis had squatted.

2. Sent William McDougall, one of the Fathers of Conf ation, out as Lieutenant-Governor, at the end of 1689.

5.Organizing his half-breed compatriots and..

a.Interrupting the surveyors, and threatening violenc the survey was not stopped.

b.Meeting and forbidding McDougall to enter the North West Territories from the United States until he had come to an under standing with the Half-breeds.(Even then there seemed a possibility McDougall might advance and occupy Fort Garry, the headquarters of th Hudson's Bay Company in the Red River valley.)

6.Seizing Fort Garry in an attempt to safeguard the rights of Half-breeds as British subjects against an illegal invasion.

NOTE..McDougall adopted toward them a conciliatory attitude and chose to treat them as rebels. On December 1, 1869, he issued a proclamation announcing himself as Lieutenant-Governor of the North West Territories.

7.

7.Organizing a Provisional and temporary Government in the Red River Colony with himself as President.(This government was the only government in that region for nearly eight months.)

NOTE..MCDOugall was unable to exercise his authority, so retired to St.Paul in the U.S.A. He was promptly recalled by the Canadian Government, and his reputation for political wisdom never survived the unhappy results of his unfortunate handling of the situation in the Red River Valley in 1869.

8.The Provisional Government was opposed by English-speaking Canadians in The Red River Valley, and at Portage la Prairie. It never commanded general confidence, but a number of its members were well educated...The chief justice appointed by it was James Ross. He was a graduate of the University of Toronto, and had been a classical master at Upper Canada College. It preserved law and order by making prisoners of the leading men opposed to it. It entered freely into negotiations with representatives of the Canadian Government,,,notably DONALD SMITH,(afterwards LORD STRATHCONA)

8.Allowing the provisional government to make one great and fatal mistake..(Thomas Scott, and Irish Canadian prisoner refused to recognize the authority of the provisional government. He was brought to trial without any of the safeguards of British justice, was convicted of the charges brought against him, and was shot by a firing squad.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.There was an outbreak of bitter feeling in Ontario from which Scott had come.

2.The government of Ontario, under Edward Blake, offered a reward for the capture of the murderers of Scott.

3.The Dominion Government which contained a number of ministers who sympathised with Riel and the half-breeds organized an expeditionary force to remove Riel and his friends from control in the Red River Valley.(This force was under the command of Colonel Wolseley, a distinguished British soldier. It reached the Red River toward the end of August) As it approached Fort Garry Riel and his followers fled)

4. Riel and his followers fled.

5. The force entered the H.B.Co's fort without firing a shot and THE RED RIVER REBELLION COLLAPSED.

6. The Red River Colony ~~was made~~ and the surrounding country was made the Province of MANITOBA, and was admitted to the Union in 1870.

7. A new Lieutenant-governor was sent out to organize a government.

8.Manitoba was given a constitution similar to that of the other Canadian Provinces. In this the French half-breeds were given the same representation as was enjoyed by the other elements in the province.

8. Louis Riel went into hiding for a time after his flight.

9. In 1875 he was outlawed from the country, and took refuge the U.S.A.(He remained there until 1885, and then returned to lead a uprising.This uprising was a real rebellion, and Riel was hanged.) He paid the penalty of death , the penalty paid by the unsuccessful rebe

2. THE RISING OF THE HALF-BREEDS.

(A)OTHER NAMES:-

1.Riel's first Rebellion.

2.The Red River Rebellion.

(B)THE DATES:-

1869-1870

(C)THE CAUSES:-

1. Unfriendly relations existed between the early French half breed settlers and the new-comers from Canada and England because the British openly despised the Half-breeds and they resented it.

2. The half-breeds were afraid that their lands which were be surveyed, and to which they did not have deeds,would be taken from th

3.The Half-breeds wanted a guarantee in regard to religion, la uage and education but it was not granted to them.

4. They feared the coming of the British Governor.

5.The Roman Catholic Bishop, Tache, was out of the country; a the Governor of the H.B.Co. was ill. As a result, there was no trust person to advise them.

6. The Americans in the nearby country encouraged rebellion, a hoped for a chance to step in and take the territory.

7. The leader of the Half-breeds, Louis Riel, who had been tr ed for the priesthood, wanted to found a French-Canadian Republic on Red River, and was opposed to the transfer of the Hudson's Bay Territ to the Dominion Government without consulting the people of the terri He caused the half-breeds to feel that they had been completely ignor that the H.B.Co. proposed to hand them and their land over to Canada a sum of money; and that their interests had not been safeguarded;He caus them to resent the arrival of the surveyors who ran their lines throu the lands on which they had squatted; and the appointment of a lieuten governor to govern the territory.(The surveyors broke their ribbon-li farms up into blocks.)

1. The half-breeds interrupted the work of the surveyors, and threatened violence if the survey was not stopped

(D)THE COURSE OF THE REBELLION.

1.In 1869, William McDougall was appointed Lieutenant-Governo of this territory. He travelled to his new post by way of St. Paul in the U.S.A.

3. The half-breeds met him at the border and refused to allow him to enter until he had come to an understanding with the inhabitan He was forced to retire to St. Paul, but the half-breeds were afraid that he would proceed in spite of them.

4. McDougall issued a proclamation announcing himself the lieu ant-governor of the territory, and proposed to treat them as rebels.

5. Louis Riel then seized Fort Garry and established a Provisional Government of which he was the President. This government was the only government in that territory for almost eight months. It was opposed by English speaking Canadians in the Red River Valley, and at Portage la Prairie. It preserved law and order by arresting all of those who were opposed to its authority, and entered freely into negotiations with the representatives of the Canadian Government..notably Donald Smith.. (Lord Strathcona). He was arrested and imprisoned but was allowed to address the inhabitants of the Red River area. Riel translated his address to the metis, and a convention was appointed to deal with the issue. There were twenty English and twenty French on the Convention. Riel threatened them, and nothing was accomplished.

McDougall was recalled.

7. Some of the loyal settlers under the leadership of Major Boulton attempted to compel the release of certain prisoners.

8. They were defeated by Riel, and forty-seven prisoners were taken and were tried by court-martial for treason. Major Boulton was sentenced to be shot, but the sentence was not carried out. Scott, a Canadian from Ontario was condemned and was shot.

9. Bishop Tache returned from Rome and used his influence to restore peace and loyalty.

10. There was an outbreak of bitter feeling in Ontario from which Scott had come.

11. The Government of Ontario under Edward Blake offered a reward for the murderers of Scott.

12. A force was sent by the Dominion Government to remove Riel and his friends from control in the Red River Valley. (Under Colonel Wolseley.)(It marched through the wilderness from Fort William.)

(E) THE RESULTS.

1. The Rebellion collapsed.

2. Riel and his followers fled.

10+ 3. The Red River Colony and the surrounding country was made the Province of Manitoba, and it was admitted into the Union in 1870.

4. A new lieutenant-governor was sent out to organize a government.

5. Manitoba was to have its own legislature. It was given a constitution similar to that of the other Canadian Provinces. The French Half-breeds were given the same representation as was enjoyed by the other elements in the province.

6. The French and English language were on equal footing for official usage.

7. The existing rights of the Roman Catholics and the Protestants were guaranteed.

8. Louis Riel went into hiding for a time.

9. In 1875 he was outlawed from the Province, and he took refuge in the U.S.A.

add to no 3 – 10 Manitoba was formed by the Dominion Government in 1870 to preserve law and order among the Indians, and to give them a provincial goverment whereby they might control their own affairs. The population was about 10.000.

3. DONALD SMITH (LORD STRATHCONA)

(A)THE DATES.

1820-1914.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A poor Scotch lad who came to Canada to seek fame and fo and succeeded in the commercial and the political fields.

2.Industrious, determined, persistent.

3.A Junior clerk in the H.B.Co. in 1838, who rose to the po ion of chief Factor in the North West in 1862, and afterwards to re governor and chief commissioner; and ultimately governor of the comp

4.A special commissioner who was sent by the Dominion Gover to investigate the Riel Rebellion in 1869.

5.A member of the Manitoba and the Dominion Parliaments.

6.A Railroad builder.

7.The Canadian Commissioner in England for Canada.

(C)HIS WORK:

1.Being employed as a clerk by the H.B.Co. in Montreal.

2.Working for some years in the Co's interests at its posts north of the St. Lawrence.(One winter he was troubled with his eyes, feared that he was going blind, so he went to Montreal for an examin Upon arriving there he was met by Sir George Simpson the Governor of Company who wanted to know who had given him authority to appear the He had left his post without permission, so was found guilty of a gr breach of discipline, and was told to leave within half an hour for bleak and barren shore of labrador.)

3.Arriving at Hamilton Inlet on the Labrador caast, and spe thirteen years at various posts on the coast.

4.Being moved to the North-west where he became chief factor 1862, and later resident governor and chief commissioner. Laterhe be the governor of the Company.

* 5.Being appointed by the Dominion Government, special commi er to investigate the Riel Rebellion in 1869.(He handled the situatio with tact and thereby helped to undermine the influence of Riel.)

6.Returning to Ottawa, and recommending that a military for be sent to the west to overawe the Indians.

7.Becoming a member of the Executive Council of the North-We Territories in 1870.

8.Representing Winnipeg in the Manitoba legislature 1871-18 and Selkirk in the Dominion House 1871,2,4,8.

9.Representing West Montreal from 1887 to 1896.

10.Absolving Sir John A. Macdonald personally from the suspic of having taken money from Sir Hugh Allan for corrupt purposes, in the debate on the Pacific Scandal in the Dominion House of Commons in 18 and announcing that he would have to vote against the Government and own party.

11.Helping in 1878 to bring Sir John A. Macdonald back into

because he felt that the future of the country depended upon his return.

12.Becoming interested in railroad construction.(He with two partners had bought an American line, The St. Paul and Pacific Railway, which had become bankrupt. Under the new management this road soon became a paying concern. He had been convinced that railroads could be put through by private companies although he had opposed such when Macdonald had suggested that a private company build the Canadian Pacific Railroad which was to connect British Columbia with Eastern Canada. He favoured the construction of the C.P.R. by the Dominion Government. When the government proposed to give a new contract to a private company for the construction of the C.P.R., he gave the scheme his cordial support.)

13.Forming a company of which he and his cousin George Stephen were the principal members, and entering into a contract with the government to build the railroad.

14.Having the satisfaction of seeing the railroad completed within five years after the contract was accepted. (He drove the last spike at CRAIGELLACHIE in the Rocky Mountains. Nov.7, 1885.)

15.Re-entering Parliament in 1887 representing Montreal West.

16.Being knighted for his services in 1886.

17.Being appointed High Commissioner for Canada in England in 1886.

18.Being raised to the peerage in 1897 with the title.. Baron Strathcona and Mount Royal.

19.Recruiting a body of men from Western Canada and outfitting them at his own expense to help Great Britain in the Boer War. They were known as the Strathcona Horse and gave an excellent account of themselves in the War.

20.Giving money to help establish The Royal Victoria Hospital and McGill University in Montreal; also giving money to further Canadian Education. ($250,000 was placed in the Strathcona Trust Fund in 1907 to further physical and military training in Canadian Schools.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.He did much to build up Canada from an insignificant Colony to a strong and self-reliant Dominion.

2.As a businessman, and as a railroad builder he did much to promote the material prosperity of the Dominion.

3.As a statesman he helped to strengthen the ties which bind Canada to the Motherland.

VI. THE RIDERS OF THE PLAINS.

4. THE RIDERS OF THE PLAINS.

(A) THE DATES.

1873. /-1920

(B) OTHER NAMES.

1. North West Mounted Police. 3. The Soldiers of the Queen

2. Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

(C) REASONS FOR THEIR ORGANIZATION

1. There was a need for the preservation of law and order in vast territory lying to the westward of Lake Superior, which was inh ed chiefly by the wandering tribes of war-like Indians, with a scat of fur-traders and American desperadoes who were engaged in selling whiskey to the Indians.

(D) THE AREA TO BE POLICED.

1. It extended from Ontario to the Rocky Mountains, and from International Boundary line to the Arctic Ocean.

(E) THE ORIGINAL FORCE.

1. It was to number only three hundred men. (At first it numbe only 190 men, but later it was increased to 1000.

2. It was to be purely civilian in character.

3. The uniform, with its scarlet tunic was militaristic and w intended to impress the Indians who had a kindly memory of the red-c British Regulars who had been on duty at some of the forts of the pr country.

4. Preference was given to men who had served in the British Army, and as a result the force was composed of good horsemen and de shots, who were accustomed to the fearless discharge of their duties, and to immediate obedience to orders.

5. The credit for its organization goes to Sir John A. Macdona

(F) THE MARCH WESTWARD.

1. In the early summer of 1874 the force gathered at Lower F Garry on the banks of the Red River only twenty miles from Winnipeg. They had journeyed there by way of the American Railroads because th were no railways to western Canada.

2. The famous march westward was commenced on July 10. 1874.

3. The mounted Police led the way. Each division was mounted o horses of different colours. (Ox-carts, prairie schooners, wagons, mo machines, other agricultural implements, and cattle followed.) The colu was a mile and a half long; and snow was falling before the last det ments reached their destinations.)

4. The western headquarters were at Fort Edmonton and at Fort Macleod near the Rockies.

(G) THE WORK OF THE POLICE.

1. The first duty was the suppression of the whiskey traders f the U.S.A. who were corrupting the Indians. (This resulted in a new f ing of security throughout the west.)

2. The winning of the confidence of the Indians. (This resulte Indians regarding them as their friends.)

x.(The story of Chief Crowfoot of the Blackfeet Indians.. Bull's Head..Colonel Macleod, the assistant commissioner of Police had made promises and he kept them.)

x.Red Crow, chief of the Blood Indians, had two braves who had been guilty of cattlestealing. Two constables were sent to arrest them but they resisted. A Party of twenty constables was sent. They gave Red Crow one hour to hand over the culprits.He did.)

x.Pie-a-Pot and his Indians were in the line of the survey of the C.P.R. and refused to move.The police gave him a quarter of an hour to strike camp. They refused to move, so the key-pole of every tepi was knocked down and they moved.)

x.A band of Cree Indians had moved into the U.S.A. They were escorted to the Canadian border by a regiment of American Cavalry. They were met by three mounted policemen and were escorted into Canadian Territory.)

x.American desperadoes or bad men. One of them vowed that no Johnny Canuck could arrest him, and took shots at the citizens of the town of Weyburn near the American Border. One Policeman took his gun away from him before he could use it.

x.

3.They were called upon to fight forest and prairie fires.

4.They nursed the sick.

5.They escorted maniacs.

6.The manner in which they discharged their duty won the admiration of the world. Once they got on the track of a criminal they never gave up until they captured their man.

(H)THE REORGANIZATION OF THE FORCE.

1.The territories to be patrolled by the police became less as the west became more settled.

2.In 1920 they were reorganized as the Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

Exam

(I)THE RESULTS.

1.They helped to preserve law and order in the West.

2.They won the confidence of the Indians.

3.There was a new feeling of security throughout the west.

4.They rendered a signal service to Canada.

VII FROM STONE-MASON TO PRIME MINISTER.

5.ALEXANDER MACKENZIE....THE POLITICIAN.

(A)THE DATES.

1822-1842-1848-1852-1861-7-1867-1873-1878-1880-1892.

(B)HE WAS:

1. A Scotch lad who had come to Canada in 1842 at the age

of twenty, and settled at Kingston.

2.A stone-masoNby trade.(He had been apprenticed to a stone-er in Scotland, and had completed his apprenticeship before he came Canada.

3.Hardworking, and conscientious, and had an excellent chara

4.A successful Contractor.

5.The editor of the LambtonShield, a Reform Newspaper publis in Sarnia, and a friend of George Brown.

6.A member of the Parliament, Dominion and Provincial.

7.The First Liberal Premier of the Dominion of Canada after Confederation.

8.A supporter of Confederation.

9. A statesman who rose from a very humble beginning to highest post in the gift of the Canadian people.

(C)HIS WORK:

1.Moving to Sarnia in 1848, where he started in business as builder and contractor.

2.Becoming interested in politics.

3.Becoming the editor of the Lambton Shield, a Reform Newsp published in Sarnia, in 1852 when he was only thirty years of age.

4.Advocating the adoption of Reform or Liberal principles in Government of Canada.

5.Being elected to represent Lambton County in the Parliamen Canada in 1861.

6.Being a supporter of the Confederation movement. (His view the Confederation Issue was that the Reformers should not accept se in the coalition ministry, but that they should give Confederation a outside support.)(Upon the resignation of George Brown from the Gre Coalition in 1865, he was invited to take his place, but declined.)

7.Being a member of the Dominion House of Commons and of the Ontario Legislature from 1867 to 1872.

8.Taking an active part in driving ~~SIR~~ Sandfield John A. Macdonald fro power in Ontario. (John Sandfield Macdonald had been placed in charg affairs in Ontario by Sir John A. Macdonald.)

9.Becoming Provincial Treasurer in the administration of Edw Blake in the Province of Ontario in 1872. He administered this offic with characteristic zeal.

10.Withdrawing from ~~the~~ Provincial politics because a law had passed in 1872 which prevented anyone from sitting at the same time i Dominion House of Commons at Ottawa, and in the Provincial Legislatu (He devoted himself wholly to the duties of a member in the Dominion

11.Moving a vote of want of confidence in the Government of ~~SI~~ John A.Macdonald and bringing about his resignation.

12.Being asked by the Governor-General to form a new administ n.

13.Being willing to allow Edward Blake to accept the office, he declined to accept the leadership of the party, and Mackenzie was compelled to become prime minister. 1873

(D)HIS WORK AS PRIME MINISTER.(HIS ADMINISTRATION IS CHARACTERIZED BY

1.He was premier for five years..1873-1878.

2.He devoted himself to reforming the Government of Canada.

3.Vote by Ballot was introduced in 1874, to ensure the purity of elections.(Before this voting had been open, and the voters were often frightened into voting against their wishes.

4.The powers of the Governor-General were limited, and defined and the extent to which the Canadian People were able to regulate their own affairs was increased.(Edward Blake as minister of Justice persuaded the British Government to take this step.)

5.Placing politics on a new plane, and giving Canada a Government of efficiency and economy.

6.The Dominion Supreme Court of Canada was organized in 1875

7.The Intercolonial Railroad was opened in 1876.

8.He took a pessimistic view of the Canadian Pacific Railway scheme, and very little was done in connection therewith during his term in office; but he offered to substitute post roads, canals, and telegraphs in place of the railroad which was offered to British Columbia by Sir John A. Macdonald.

(E)THE REASONS FOR HIS DEFEAT.

1.Three of the worst harvests in Canadian History occurred during his term in office, and although he was not responsible for this, and the depression, the people blamed his government for the hard times that resulted.

2. He offended many of his supporters.(In addition to being Prime Minister, he also looked after Public Works, and in this capacity he came into conflict with many contractors who expected to receive favours and concessions from the government.)

3.Sir John A. Macdonald had been working on a scheme which was to play a conspicuous part in the election campaign of 1878, and also throughout the history of Canada in the years that followed. This was "THE NATIONAL POLICY".

(F)AFTER HIS DEFEAT.

1.He continued to lead the opposition..The Liberal Party,in the House until 1880, when he handed the leadership over to Edward Blake, and he became a private member in the House.

2.In his later years he took little active part in politics.

3. He died in 1892.

(G)THE RESULTS.

1. Vote by ballot was introduced. (Secret voting.)

2. Canadian Politics were placed on a new plane.

3. The powers of the Governor-General ~~was~~ were limited and defined.

4. His government was honest, conscientious, and economical

VIII THE STORY OF THE TELEPHONE.

6. ALEXANDER GRAHAM BELL.

(A)THE DATES.

1847-1870-1872-1876-1998-1910-1911-1922.

(B)HE WAS:

1.The son of a Scottish Professor of elocution.(Alexander Mel Bell) who had made a special study of the way in which the sounds of human speech were made, and who had invented a system whereby the de were able to understand what others were saying by watching their li

2.An experimenter.(He had experimented with the production o the sounds of human speech.)

3.A teacher of the deaf and dumb.

4.The inventor of the telephone.

5.(A tall, pale young man with jet-black hair and eyes.His h was poor, and for some time he lived quietly on the homestead which father had purchased at Tutelo Heights near Brantford.

(C)HIS WORK:

1.In 1871, he became a teacher of deaf-mutes in Boston.(Here made the acquaintance of one or two wealthy men whose children he wa teaching. They became interested in his work, and gave him the encou ment and financial assistance that was necessary for him to carry on work.)

2.Conceiving the idea of talking over a wire in 1874 while spending his summer vacation near Brantford.

3.Entering on the long series of experiments which resulted 1876 in the invention of the telephone.

4.Giving up teaching, and devoting all of his time to his ex iments.

5.Gradually improving the instrument, and establishing telep connections between Brantford and Paris in 1876, while spending his hol at Tutelo Heights. The distance was eight miles.(The transmitter was Paris, the receiver was in Brantford, and the battery on the circuit in Toronto about sixty miles away. (This experiment definitely estab ed the success of the telephone as a commercial venture.

6.Immediately applying for patents in the U.S.A.,Canada, and Britain.

7.Organizing the Bell Telephone Company.(In Canada he tried t obtain the support of George Brown, the Editor of the Globe, and some financiers, but without success. He then gave his father the Canadian rights to his invention.)(The first telephone wire leased in Canada w between Rideau Hall, the residence of the Governor-General of Canada the office of Alexander Mackenzie, the Prime Minister of Canada, in th parliament buildings in Ottawa.

8.Refusing to sell his invention, but leasing it to various Telephone Companies.

9.Spending a large part of his time at his place at Braddeck, on the Bras d'Or Lakes in Cape Breton Island, where he continued to conduct all kinds of scientific experiments.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.Great developments have taken place in Telephone services since (the appearance of the first primitive telephone in) 1876. The telephone instruments have been improved so that the human voice may be heard thousands of miles away.

2.Telephone exchanges have been established to facilitate communications throughout the system, which extends all over the continent, and even across the Atlantic.

3.The automatic telephone has been invented.

4.The telephone has revolutionized the business and social life.

5.Bell became a very wealthy man; and he used his wealth to conduct scientific researches for the benefit of mankind.

6.He invented the graphophone, and the first heavier-than-air flying-machine to make a public flight in America.

7.His death removed one of our greatest benefactors in 1922.

A RESUME OF AN ARTICLE APPEARING IN THE MAY ISSUE 1932 OF THE CANADIAN MAGAZINE REGARDING "THE DISTANT VOICE".

Alexander Graham Bell, at the age of twenty-three years, came out to Canada with his father. The little homestead that they purchased was not actually in the City of Brantford, Ontario. It was some two miles from the present city limits. The house reflects that the family were in moderately affluent circumstances. It was not a farm house but stood on what might be considered a fair sized garden and there were neighbours about one hundred yards distant.

The family had long been interested in Scotland in teaching elocution, phonetics, and the correction of defective speech. A certain family techniquehad come down through three or four generations and Alexander Graham Bell was well fitted to follow his chosen work.

When the family arrived in 1870, the father Alexander M. Bell was no stranger in the new world as he had been out on lecture tours during the two or three years preceding. Shortly after his arrival, he was sought out by Queen's University.

From 1870 until 1872 young Alexander Bell devoted himself to regaining strenght lost in a long illness. In 1872 he received an offer from an educational institution in Boston. He accepted this and his new problem was the education of children who had been born deaf and who were unable to use their normal vocal organs beacuse they had never heard a sound.

In the early days he was faced with many discouragements but he had been broadly educated in the classics and mechanics.

and having found that the known approaches to these young unfortun would not produce results, he commenced to cast about him for some ical device that would enable him to break through the barrier that between him and his pupils. After many experiments he devised a sch that gave him some help. A parchment membrane was held tightly over end of a cardboard tube by means of a rubber band. An ordinary sewi needle projected out from a drop of sealing wax in the centre of th parchment. The tube was mounted above a sliding wooden stand which arranged so that a bit of smoked glass could be passed beneath the Bell found that the sound of the various vowels would trace charact curves on the smoked glass, and that the design of each vowel was s With this somewhat crude device he succeeded in getting the idea ac to the pupils, and they started a series of experiments in making v sounds into the open mouth of the cardboard tube in an effort to pr the definite tracings that resulted from the sounding of the vowels. careful study of lip-motion he made a great deal of progress when th summer holidays of 1874 put a temporary stop to his work. During hi preparations for the trip to Brantford, where he had arranged to sp the vacation, the idea of improving this device was uppermost in hi and he wondered where he could procure a human ear and devote some to it while at home. The belief that the solution to his problem mi lie in this study, he applied to a medical friend who had some impo connection with the medical school in Boston.(He received a little board box a few hours before he left. It contained a section of a h head and all of one ear that had been removed from a specimen sent for study at the Boston Medical College.) In a little upper room of homestead near Brantford, a room which had been his combined study bedroom before leaving for Boston,he set to work on his rather grue object. After careful study he discovered that there was a definite relation between the human ear and his cardboard tube with the parch membrane. The idea crossed his mind to try the effect of sound upon ear, so he mounted it at the end of a tube and with sealing wax secu a needle that would project out of the membrane and draw on a moving smoke glass. When he spoke into the tube he was astounded at the gre beauty and symmetry of the curved design that resulted.

Suddenly: like a flash the idea crossed his mind. If sound produce those vibrations, why cannot those vibrations produce sound it were possible to transform those vibrations into electrical impul it would not be impossible to send the human voice along a wire.

Just about the time that the vacation of 1875 was drawing Bell and his assistant succeeded in transmitting human speech from t attic to the basement of his boarding house. He packed up his two cu instruments, and returned once more to Brantford.

There has been a tendency on the part of the Americans to claim to the great discovery of the telephone, but its conception, development and its first application took place on Canadian soil.

According to Bell, the conception of the telephone took p during the summer visit to his father's home in 1874, and the appar

was just as it was subsequently made, a one membrane telephone on either end. The experiment of August 10, 1876 made from Brantford to Paris was the first transmission, the first clear intelligible transmission of speech over the real line that had ever been made.

Material aid was rendered by the family doctor who had been called to the Bell home to attend some minor ailment of a member of the family. He examined the apparatus and suggested obtaining a thin disc from a photographer. The improvement was marked.

Rev. T. Henderson who lived nearby suggested that a real test be made, and a wire was strung from the Bell home to his residence. It was a success. The people of Brantford then commenced to take an interest. Permission was then received for a trial to be made over the telegraph wires between Paris and Brantford. The date of the experiment was August 10, 1875. It was a success.

The press of the period with the exception of the Brantford Paper ridiculed the idea. It looked as though the idea was a hoax, and there were suggestions that Bell was a swindler. The joke was played up in the papers throughout theAutumn of 1875 and the winter of 1876. In 1876 Bell exhibited his invention at the exhibition in Philadelphia in an endeavour to get some one with money and influence to take an interest in it.

In 1877 the telephone was installed commercially in Hamilton Ontario, and was the first commercial venture in Canada, and one of the first in the world.

Although the telephone in use today does not resemble the early instrument, the little iron disc in the receiver is similar to that which was suggested by the old doctor of Brantford.

IX. THE QUEEN'S HIGHWAY.

7. THE CANADIAN PACIFIC RAILROAD.

(A) THE EVOLUTION OF THE IDEA.

1. The evolution of the idea of a transcontinental railroad may be traced to (George Johnson who wrote in his Alphabet of First Things in Canada, from) (1) the search for an over-land route to the Pacific in the days of New France. (2) The finding of an overland route to the P. down to the various suggested transportation projects, (4) first the wagon-road across the continent, then for (3) a water thoroughfare, then for (4) a combined water and rail route, then for (5) a railway from Lake Superior to the Pacific, and finally for (6) a transcontinental railway from Montreal to the Pacific.

(B) THE REASONS FOR.

1. British Columbia entered the Dominion of Canada on condition that a railroad would be constructed giving it railway connection with the east.

x. Under the terms of the union, British Columbia had been

promised, in 1870, railway connection with the east by Sir. John A. Macdonald, the Premier of the Dominion. (B.C. entered the Dominion

(C)THE STEPS ~~ON CONSTRUCTION~~? IN PREPARATION FOR ITS CONSTRUCT

1. Sir Sandford Fleming ,(who had come to Canada in 1845, an made his way from Quebec to Peterborough by way of the St. Lawrence Ottawa, the Rideau Canal and Lake Ontario, and by farmer's cart fro Cobourg to Peterborough; and was for a time employed on the surveys the Northern Railway; and was the chief engineer of the Intercolonia Railway, 1864-1876, was sent to map out a route, 1871-1880.

OMIT------3.In 1872, two companies were chartered, and these were fina merged in a third with Sir Hugh Allan of Montreal at its head. This any was to receive a heavy subsidy from the government for the build of the railway.

2. It was at first proposed that the government should itself undertake the construction of the railroad, but it seemed too great a task, and negotiations were opened with a private company, under Sir Allan who was a wealthy merchant of Montreal, and head of the Allan of Ocean steamers.

The Pacific Scandal occurred.

3.During 1873,a Liberal Member charged that Sir Hugh Allan h paid large sums of money to the Conservative party to be used in the general election that was held in 1872.Correspondence was revealed w placed the government in an unfavourable light, and as a result, Mac with his ministers resigned office. This was known as the PACIFIC SCA

4.The Liberal Government under Alexander Mackenzie felt that building of the railroad was too costly a proposition , and offered t build a wagon road (and telegraph line, and the gradual building of th railroad as surveys were completed. The Province of British Columbia not satisfied with this, and it was only the skilful diplomacy of Lor Dufferin, the Governor-General that prevented its withdrawal from the union. The Government proceeded very slowly with the construction of lines of railways connecting the several stretches of western waterw (The Mackenzie Government had proved lukewarm in the construction of railroad.)

5.In 1878, upon the return of the Macdonald Government, it w found that very little had been done to fulfil the promises to Britis Columbia, and negotiations were opened with a new group of capitalist under George Stephen who formed the CANADIAN PACIFIC SYNDICATE.

6.The contract for the building of the railroad was signed in 1880, and stipulated that a railroad was to be build from ocean to oc within a space of ten years. In return the syndicate was to receive a subsidy of $25,000,000 in cash, 25,000,000 acres of land, and six hun and forty miles of railway, either already completed or in the proces of completion.

(6)~~THE BUILDING OF THE RAILROAD~~.

D (A)THE CHIEF FIGURES IN THE SCHEME.

1.George Stephen,(afterwards Lord Mountstephen).
2.Donald Smith, (afterwards Lord Strathcona and Mount Royal)
3.R. B. Angus.
4.W. C. VanHorne.
5.Sir John A. Macdonald and 6.John Henry Pope.

Donald Smith at first remained in the background as he and Macdonald had not been on good terms for sometime. From the first he was a dominant member of the syndicate, and he became a chief figure in its construction. He had made a fortune in a western railroad in 1869, and pledged his personal fortune in the enterprise.

(E) THE DIFFICULTIES THAT WERE OVERCOME.

1.North of Lake Superior the road was built through a wild and barren country where it was neceasary to blast through vast masses of rock, and to fill almost bottomless swamps.

2.The road passed through many hundreds of miles of almost uninhabited prairie country. (There the construction gangs built as many as six miles a day.

3.It was built through the great barrier of the Rocky Mts. through the Kicking Horse Pass, around steep precipices and through long tunnels.

4.The subsidy was not sufficient, and the directors had to repeatedly ask the government for further loans of money .At one stage the resources of the construction company were exhausted and the general manager wired the president accordingly. The amount of money that was needed was $5,000,000. This was secured from the government through the influence of Sir John A. Macdonald and John Henry Pope who had persuaded him that the failure of the Canadian Pacific would mean the ruin of Canada, the ruin of the Conservative Party and the ruin of Sir John A. Macdonald.

(F) THE TIME REQUIRED.

1880-1885-Work was started in May 1881.

(The contract allowed ten years to complete the road, but it was completed in five. The last spike was driven by Donald Smith at Craigellachie, a lonely village in British Columbia on November 7, 1885.

(G) THE RESULTS.

1.As an engineering feat, the building of the C.P.R. was a marvellous accomplishment.

2.While it was being constructed mis-statements were made about it....Some said that it would not pay for its axle-grease...others said that the government was pouring money down the gorges of British Columbia.

3.It rapidly repaid everything that the government had lent it, and from the day of its completion it has proved a success.

4.It contributed in a very great measure to make the Dominion of Canada what it is to-day.

5.It made possible the rapid settlement of the Great West.

6.It linked together for the first time the East and the We the Dominion.

7.It gave the world a striking example of what Canadian ent and determination can accomplish.

8.It provided a route whereby the British Possessions on th Pacific became connected with the Mother Country.

9.It allowed for the transportation of troops to the West d the Saskatchewan Rebellion.

10.It has become a channel of Imperial communication, and as result was called "THE QUEEN'S HIGHWAY."

(8) X. THE REBELLION OF THE SASKATCHEWAN.

(A)OTHER NAMES.

1.The North West Rebellion.

2.Riel's Second Rebellion.

3.The Saskatchewan Rebellion.

(B)THE DATE.

1885.

(C) THE CAUSES.

1.The coming of the railroad and civilization was bringing the disappearance of the buffalo herds and the fur-bearing animals which the Indian, Half-breeds who had moved to that region between 18 and 1885; (the Hudson's Bay Traders,and a few white settlers), relied their livelihood.

2.The (government) surveyors were (ignoring the boundaries of t long river-lots which the half-breeds had taken for themselves, and laying out square townships and sections along the Saskatchewan.

3.The half-breeds had begged for titles to their lands, and (even) sent a deputation to Ottawa where they received empty promises.

4.They were afraid that their homes would be swept away in t oncoming march of civilization.

5.They sent a deputation (of four half-breeds) down to Monta to invite Louis Riel,(who was teaching there in a school) to return assume (once more) the leadership of his own people.(Riel was not the leader that they could have chosen because he had spent some time in insane asylum since he had headed the rising of the Metis in Manito and he was undoubtedly a man of unbalanced mind.)

6.He had the interests of his people at heart, and returned Canada. At first, he devoted himself to trying to obtain redress of t grievances of which the half-breeds claimed.He drew up a "BILL OF RI (which was adopted by a large meeting of the half-breeds, and which contained many requests that were fair and just.)and forwarded it to Ottawa, where the petition was not taken seriously, and nothing was

(It is possible that the government felt that it would be a sign of

weakness if they paid any attention to an agitation headed by Riel, and it is also possible that the government felt that Riel would not go to extremes.)

7.The half-breeds were angered by the indifference in Ottawa, and in March 1885 they formed a Provisional Government in Saskatchewan with Louis Riel at its head as president.and seized Batoche.

8.They organized a military force, with Gabriel Dumont, a famous buffalo-hunter, as commander-in-chief.Part of this half-breed army came into conflict with a detachment of North West Mounted Police and some volunteers near Duck Lake.(In the encounter the Police lost several men and were forced to withdraw.)This victory encouraged the Indians to break loose, and several bands of Crees and Assiniboines went on the Warpath.)

next page (D)THE EVENTS, LEADERS,AND REMARKS.

1.News of the attack at Duck Lake was sent to Ottawa, and the Government awoke to the seriousness of the situation.

2.The rising of the half-breeds was serious enough, but there was the fear of a general Indian uprising in the West.

3.A force was organized, and sent west under General Middleton, on the newly constructed C.P.R.(3000 volunteers were raised in Ontario and Quebec, and 2000 militiamen were raised in Manitoba and the North West Territories.)

4.General Middleton divided his force into three divisions. One under General Strange was to operate against Big Bear in the neighbourhood of Edmonton; The second under Colonel Otter was to operate against Poundmaker in the neighbourhood of Battleford; and the third under his own command was to operate toward Prince Albert.

5.a. DUCK LAKE..A party of half-breeds ~~resist~~ under Gabriel Dumont resisted a patrol of the N.W.M.P. under Major Crozier.The Police lost several men and were forced to withdraw.

b. FROG LAKE..A band of Crees under Chief Big Bear massacred eight of the inhabitants, and carried off the remainder as captives.

6.The country around Battleford was held by Chief Poundmaker. and the half-breeds held Batoche and the neighbourhood.

6.c.FISH CREEK..Middleton met the rebels and experienced a stubborn resistance, but drove them back to Batoche. Rebels L.Dumont.

d.CUT-KNIFE CREEK..A band of Crees under Poundmaker repulsed Colonel Otter who had been sent to relieve Battleford and Fort Pitt.

e.BATOCHE...Middleton's men succeeded in capturing it and the rebels fled.

SEE TABULATED ACCOUNT FOR THE ABOVE ON NEXT PAGE.

Name-EVENTS	REMARKS.
a. Duck Lake (Near Fort Carlton, and about 40 miles from Prince Albert)	Part of the half-breed army under Gabriel Dumont resisted a patrol of the N.W.M.P. und Major Crozier. The Police lost several men were forced to withdraw.
b. Frog Lake (Between Fort Pitt and Edmonton)	A band of Crees under Chief Big Bear massa eight of the inhabitants, and carried off the ainder as captives.
c. Prince Albert	The Mounted Police had concentrated most o ir men there, and held the centre until the ion was over.
d. Cut-Knife Creek (Near Battle-ford)	A band of Crees under Poundmaker defeated C onel Otter who had been sent north to relieve Battleford and Fort Pitt.
e. Fish Creek (South of Batoche)	General Middleton was held up for a time by Gabriel Dumont ; but, he finally (he) forced the re to retire to Batoche.
f. Batoche	General Middleton captured Batoche, and the rebels fled.
x.	

(E)THE RESULTS.

1.Dumount fled to the United States.

2.Riel was captured by Mounted Police Scouts.

3.Big Bear was also captured by the Police.

4.In the Autumn of 1885, Riel was tried at Regina, with a nu of his followers, on a charge of high treason; Riel was found guilty was sentenced to be hanged, while eighteen of his followers were sent to imprisonment for periods varying from one to seven years.

5.The rebellion collapsed.

6.A general Indian uprising was averted.

7.Bitter feeling developed between Ontario and Quebec.(The people of French descent were drawn to him by ties of blood, and they found excuses for him. They demanded that the death penalty should be commuted. It was asserted that he was insane, and should not be held accountable for his acts. The people of the rest of Canada could not forget that Riel twice headed an insurrection in the West, and they manded that he should pay the extreme penalty.

8.The Indians were given title-deeds to their lands.

9.The

9.The North West Territories were given representation in parliament.

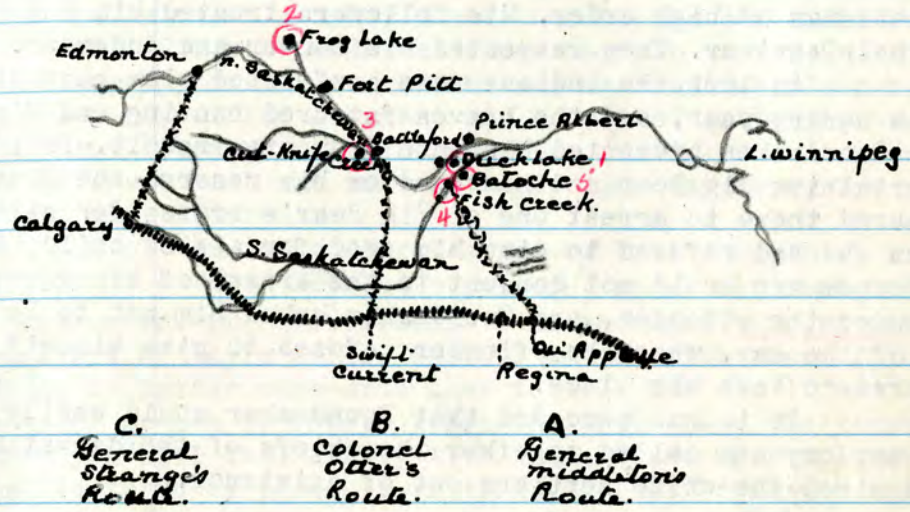
10.The possibilities of Western Canada were revealed and the attention of settlers was drawn to the west.

11.There was an increase in National feeling.

12.The Mounted Police Force was increased.

13.The rebellion claimed the lives of two hundred white people

(F)A SKETCH MAP SHOWING THE REGION INVOLVED.



(G)THE STORY OF "POUNDMAKER THE PEACEMAKER" APPEARS IN THE APRIL ISSUE OF THE CANADIAN MAGAZINE. (1934)

In 1879 two event occurred which were contributing factors to the Rebellion of 1885. The buffalo herds were practically exterminated from the plains, and there was rising discontent among the Cree Indians over the terms of the treaty that they had concluded with the government in 1876. By this treaty they surrendered their territory to the Dominion. In return the red men were permitted to shake hands with the Queen's Commissioners. They also received from the Government the gift of $25. yearly for each chief or headman, a medal, a suit of clothes, one square mile of land for each family of five, and five dollars annually for each man, woman, and child in their nation. They were promised also ammunition, twine for nets, farming implements, and stock.

With the disappearance of the baffalo, they had no pemmican and uneasiness took possession of the tribes. The white man's method of gaining a living by working the land did not appeal to them.

A spirited group headed by Poundmaker, one of the ablest chiefs of Cree Confederacy, journeyed to the south country for food. They we to the Missouri Country and found that conditions were changed ther Civilization was crowding the red man off the plains, and food was coming poor and scarce. After a period of restless wandering, they ed north and prepared to try agricultural life. The site selected w enclosing Cutknife Hill which Poudmaker had captured from a Great S warrior some fifteen years before when the tribes were fighting for desirable hunting grounds. This reservation lies on the south side Battle River about thirty five miles from Battleford.

Poundmaker called himself a peacemaker, but in reality he a statesman of high order. His followers trusted him and looked upo as their saviour. They respected his honour and judgment.

In 1882 the Indians were confronted with many difficultie was a hungry year, and the braves favoured hunting and fighting to ing. Poundmaker prevented his band from open revolt. In 1884 when h entertaining Big Bear and his band on his reserve the Mounted Polic appeared there to arrest one of Big Bear's braves for striking the agent who had refused to give him food for a sick child, with an ax e. Poundmaker would not consent to the arrest of his guest. Major C demanded the offender, and Poundmaker asked him not to be hasty. At end of the day, when the offender refused to give himself up, Pound offered to take his place.

It is now conceded that Poundmaker could easily have sound his war-cry and called together the chiefs of the dissatisfied band have wiped the white settlers out of existence.

Early in the rebellion when Riel was trying to induce the ians to join him, Poundmaker heard the Indian Agent Rae at Battleford wanted to see him. As he was in need of supplies, he took his band of Indians and hurried to the town, only to find that the Agent, fearing attack from the half-breeds at Duck Lake, had withdrawn to the forti barracks across the river. Poundmaker was disappointed, and express surprise that the agent was not there to meet him. A note was sent i which Poundmaker expressed a desire to see him, and Rae offered to the chief or a few of his councillors half-way across the river. Pou maker refused to go as he declared that it was the agent's place to rn to duty. With the coming of night, the young braves of Poundmaker helped themselves to the unguarded supplies, as the town was deserte

After the relief of Battleford, Colonel Otter did not trus Poundmaker although he was remaining quietly on his own reservation. was afraid that the powerful chief would join forces with Big Bear, felt that Poundmaker should be punished for the depredations at Batt d. About three o'clock in the afternoon of May 1, 1885, Otter s out for Poundmaker's reserve with 325 men. The unsuspecting Indians suddenly advised of the attack. The women and children moved to the shelter of a distant hill. Never before had they been attacked by wh men.

It is not known which side started the fight. At the trial of Poundmaker, Charles Rose of the Mounted Police swore that Otter had not hoisted a flag of truce, nor had he made any attempt to hold a council with the Indians before firing. Robert Jefferson whom Pound maker was protecting in his tent declared that when the troops were marching on the camp, Poundmaker said that the whites are coming to fight us. He wrapped a flag of truce around his shoulders, and went into the fight.

Poundmaker, according to evidence at his trial made several attempts to leave his reservation and to move westward to the Blackfeet Territory, but the warrior group of his Indians would not let him go. He was virtually a prisoner of his own tribe.

G.Mercer Adam, a former Captain in the Queen's Own Rifles, condemns Otter's unprovoked attack on Poundmaker's encampment. He accuses him of bad judgment and a lack of gallantry. He also points out that Poundmaker would have been justified in commencing firing, since the attack was made not only upon warriors, but also upon the women and children.

When Poundmaker learned of Riel's capture, he immediately wrote to General Middleton through Robert Jefferson, the Indian Farm instructor. It read....Sir,- I am encamped with my people at the east end of Eagle Hills, where I am met with news of the surrender of Riel. No letter came with news to tell how far it may be true. I send some of my men to you to learn the truth, and the terms of peace. I hope you will deal kindly with them. I and my people wish you to send us the terms of peace in writing, so that we may be under no misunder standing from which so much trouble arises. We have twenty-two prison ers who we have tried to treat well in every respect.

Middleton relied...I have utterly defeated the half-breeds at Batoche, and have made prisoners of Riel and his council. I have made no terms with them, neither will I make terms with you. I have men enough to destroy you and your people, or at least drive you away to starve, and will do so unless you bring in the teams you took and come yourself with your Councillors, and arms to meet me at Battleford on Monday the twenty-sixth. I am glad you have treated the prisoners well and have released them.

Poundmaker's answer to Middleton's command was carried by Father Cochin, and the other prisoners. It was concise and masterful. It said...I and my men are at the foot of the Eagle Hills.I send you twenty-two white prisoners, who I have treated well. I await the terms of peace. Please send them in writing so that there may be no mistake

At his trial, he pointed out that he had done everything that he could to stop bloodshed. Had I wanted war, I would not be here now. I would be on the prairie. You did not catch me. I gave myself up. You have got me because I wanted justice.

At the conclusion of the trial he was sentenced to imprisonment, but after spending some month in prison, he was released on the intercession of Archbishop Tache and Pere Lacombe.

XI THE WHITE PLUME.
9 WILFRID LAURIER.

(A)THE DATES.

1841-1852-1867-1871-1874-1887-1896-1897-1899-1910-1919.

(B)HE WAS:

1.A French-Canadian who was born at St. Lin, north of Montr in the Province of Quebec.

2.Educated in the French Schools of Quebec until he was ele years of age; then spent two years..1852-1854 in the English School New Glasgow;attended a French-Canadian College; and entered a Frenc Canadian Law Office in Montreal.

3.An orator, even in English, who had no rival in Canada.

4.A student of Character who gained a sympathy with the out of the English-speaking element in Canada which made him one of the greatest harmonizing influences between the French and the English Canada that has ever existed.

5.A delicate young man who had to move from Montreal to Arth baskaville, in the Eastern Townships, for his health.

6.The editor of a country newspaper,LE DEFRICHEUR, and a co lawyer. 7.The leader of the Liberal Party.

8.The first, and only French-Canadian Prime minister of Can

9.Refined and scholarly, courteous in manner and a favourit

(C)HIS WORK

1.In 1871 he became the representative of Arthabaskaville i the Quebec Legislature.

2.In 1874 he became the representative of Arthabaskaville the Dominion Parliament.

3.He became a member of Alexander Mackenzie's(Government)Ca but only held office for one year as the Mackenzie Government was de ed in 1878.

4.He became the chief lieutenant in Quebec of Edward Blake succeeded Alexander Mackenzie in the leadership of the Liberal Party.

5.Upon the resignation of Blake in 1887, he became the Lead of the Liberal Party.

6.In ~~the elections of~~ 1896, he won the election, and became the first French-Canadian Prime Minister of Canada, and held office fifteen years.

7.His ministry was strong, and was known as "THE MINISTRY OF ALL THE TALENTS".(Several of the Provincial Prime Ministers were persuaded to take office in his cabinet.)

8.During his Premiership.....

1. He settled the Manitoba School Question.

(THE MANITOBA SCHOOL QUESTION.)

By the British North America Act, the matter of Education

W. Laurier.

He was a French Canadian who was born at St. Lin, North of Montreal in the Province of Quebec. He was educated in the French Schools until he was eleven years of age; and then he spent two years (1852-1854) in the English School of New Glasgow. ~~Later~~ He then attended a French Canadian College, and later entered a Fr. Can. law office in Montreal. He ~~became~~ was refined, scholarly, and courteous in manner, and he became an orator, even in English, who had no rival in Canada. On account of poor health, he moved to Athabaskaville where he became a country lawyer, and the editor of a country newspaper. He became the leader of the Liberal party, and the first, and only French Canadian Prime Minister of Canada. He understood the outlook of both the English and the French and he became one of the greatest harmonizing influences between the French and the English in Canada that has ever existed.

W. Laurier

Henri a French Canadian who was born at St. Lin, Terrebonne in the Province of Quebec. He was educated in the French Schools until he was eleven years of age; and then spent two years (1872-1874) in the English School of New Glasgow. Later he attended French Canadian College, and later entered a St. Cyr law office in Montreal. He became admitted, scholarship, and took to in practice and became an orator, even in English which had no rival in Canada. On account of poor health, he moved to Arthabaska where he became a country lawyer, and the editor of a country newspaper. He became the leader of the Liberal party, and the first, and only French Canadian Prime Minister of Canada. He understood the outlook of both the English and the French and became one of the greatest harmonizing influences between the French and the English in Canada that has ever existed.

was intrusted to the provinces. For many years Manitoba desired to have a single Provincial School system.

In 1894, the Manitoba Legislature passed the Manitoba School Act, abolishing the French and Roman Catholic Separate Schools. The Roman Catholic authorities at once protested, and petitioned the Dominion Government to disallow the act. This was a very delicate thing to do, as it was an interference with the working of the Provincial Government. At that time to two governments..Dominion and Manitoba were of different political parties, and any action would be misinterpreted.

In 1895, the Conservative Federal authorities requested a consultation with the Liberal Manitoba authorities, with a view to an arrangement that would be satisfactory to all parties. This raised a storm of protest from Manitoba about Provincial rights. Donald Smith then attempted to settle the question, but he was unsuccessful.

In 1896, in accordance with the decision of the Privy Council, a REMEDIAL BILL was introduced in the Federal Parliament to restore the rights and the privileges that had been long enjoyed by the minority in Manitoba. Manitoba remained firm, and Quebec came to the support of her co-religionists in Manitoba, while the Orangemen in Ontario rallied to the support of Manitoba in the defence of Provincial Rights.

In the General election of June 1896, this was one of the strongest factors in the defeat of Sir Charles Tupper and the Conservative Party, by the Liberals under Wilfrid Laurier. His Government refused to interfere with the Provincial Rights of Manitoba in connection with the issue.

2. He gave England a Preferential Tariff.

The Liberals lowered the duties on goods from countries which did not levy high tariffs on Canadian Products. The tariff policy was so modified that imports from Great Britain came into Canada at a lower rate of duty than those from foreign countries This established an Imperial Preference which still exists.This binds Canada more closely to Great Britain.

3. He represented Canada at the Diamond Jubilee of Queen Victoria. 1897. In 1897, Queen Victoria celebrated the sixtieth anniversary of her accession to the throne, and Wilfrid Laurier, as the Prime Minister of Canada represented the Dominion on this occasion

4. He authorized, with the consent of the Dominion Parliament, the sending of troops to aid Great Britain in the Boer War. 1899

This was the first test of Laurier's view of imperial relationship. Canada had no immediate concern in this war, but the demand made by many Canadians resulted in Laurier at first

opposing the proposal; but realizing that when Great Britain was at
Canada was also at war, he placed the issue before the representati
the people, and upon receiving their approval, he authorized the se
of volunteer troops.

5. He started a vigorous campaign to settle the Western land
Numerous immigrants came to Canada and settled i
the west. Over two million came between 1896 and 1911.

6. Penny Postage was established.
Roland Hill was the father of our modern Postag
system. Seeing the prohibitive rates of postage that prevailed at t
time, and the advantage of a cheaper rate, he began a campaign in 1
to secure penny postage within the kingdom. He urged that the increa
the number of communications would compensate for the decrease in th
and would maintain the revenue. In 1840, his proposal was adopted, a
letters of a certain weight were sent to any part of the kingdom of
Great Britain and Ireland for one penny.

In 1897 lower postal rates were advocated by Si
William Mulock, Post-master-General of Canada, and as a result, Pen
Postage was adopted between Great Britain , Canada, Newfoundland, C
Colony, and Natal in 1898. This was afterwards extended to all part
the British Empire.

This helped to bind the Empire more closely tog
because it allowed that friends in various parts could keep in touch
with one another more easily. The low rate on Papers and magazines a
helped considerably.

7. Railroads were built, and helped to open up the country.
In 1898, the Mackenzie-Mann interest was formed
construct the Canadian Northern Railroad which was the second Canadi
Transcontinental railway system. It was constructed in sections, and
was expected to be a paying concern; but as there was insufficient ca
to carry on such a great undertaking, they appealed to the government
assistance, and the railroad was finally placed under the control of
government.

In 1903, the Grand Trunk Pacific Company was cha
ed, and a third transcontinental railway was begun. It was to connect
Quebec and the eastern seaboard with the Pacific Coast at Prince Rup
and was to open up a new North West to settlement. It was to be built
the government and leased to the comapny.

The new undertaking resulted in the government t
over the G.T.R. as well as the C.N.R. in July 1919. At the present t
these roads are known as the CANADIAN NATIONAL RAILROAD.

8. The formation of Albertaand Saskatchewan.
These provinces were organized and were admitted
the Dominion in 1905.

9. Lord Strathcona was sent to England as Lord High Commissioner for Canada.

The office of High Commissioner for Canada in Great Britain was created in 1880. He was to act as Canada's chief emigration agent and was to have the management of the Public debt and correspondence relating to the finances of Canada in London. It has been held by a number of Canada's honoured citizens.

In 1880, Sir Alexander Galt was appointed to this important office.

In 1884, he was succeeded by Sir Charles Tupper, who for sixty years was the outstanding advocate of every great question or movement in the history of Canada of that period. In 1896, Sir Charles became the Prime Minister of Canada.

In 1896, Sir Donald Smith, afterwards, Lord Strathcona, the real leader in the building of the C.P.R. was appointed. He Held this high office until his death in 1914.

In 1914, Sir George H. Perley was appointed. He held office until 1922.

In 1922, Hon. P.C.Larkin was appointed.

The present Commissioner to London is the Hon. G. Howard Ferguson.

j 10.The all British Cable was completed.

k 11.The tercentenary of Quebec was celebrated in 1908.

l 12.The nucleus of the Canadian Navy was established.

In 1910, Laurier purchased the Niobe and the Rainbow from Great Britain to serve as training ships. In 1911 he tried to create a navy in order to be ready to help England in time of war, but this did not meet with the support of the Representatives of the people.

m 13. A reciprocity treaty with the United States was proposed.

It was on this question that his government was defeated.

n 14.He led the opposition until his death in 1919.

(D)THE RESULTS.

1.Canada made remarkable progress during his premiership.

XII. THE SETTLEMENT OF THE GREAT WEST.

10.The SETTLEMENT OF THE GREAT WEST.

(A)THE TIME. OR THE DATES.

1857-1885-1890-1896-1897-1904-1905-1910-1920.

(B)THE FACTORS WHICH DISCOURAGED OR HINDERED SETTLEMENT WERE:

or THE REASONS FOR THE SLOW DEVELOPMENT OF THE WEST WERE:

a.The colony that Lord Selkirk had planted on the Red River had continued in existence, but it had not spread.

2. The H.B.Co. discouraged colonization because it was felt such would be injurious to the fur-trade.

3. The H.B.Co. tried to persuade the outside world that the prairies were unsuitable for agricultural settlement.(In George Simpson, the Governor of the H.B.Co., told a committee of the House of Commons that no part of the territories of the Company was suitable for settlement.He claimed that the crops were everywhere u certain, and that even in the Saskatchewan Valley the Employees of Company had seldom been able to raise wheat.

4. General Lefroy, a distinguished British Soldier and scien declared that agricultural settlements could make but very slender ress in the western region.

5. The (long) delays in building the Canadian Pacific Railway ed the revelation of its possibilities.

6.The Saskatchewan Rebellion discouraged settlement because were afraid to take up land ~~where~~ in a country where settlers had b massacred by (bands of marauding) Indians.

7.Stories that were told about the cold north-western winter discouraged settlement.

(C)THE FACTORS THAT ENCOURAGED SETTLEMENT WERE:

1.The construction of the Canadian Pacific Railroad revealed possibilities of the West.

2.The launching of an aggressive immigration campaign by the Laurier Government under the direction of the Hon. Clifford Sifton, minister of the Interior, who had charge of immigration.

The Increase of settlement.

(D)THE FIRST SETTLEMENTS AND THE RESULTS OF THE IMMIGRATION POLICY.

1.The building of the C.P.R. resulted in (the establishment o "boom". The settlements were established along the line of steel. To sprang up about the railway stations; and settlers from eastern Canada ed in, and to take took up free grants of land.

2.By 1890, Manitoba had (acquired) a scattered population, and Winnipeg had grown into a city of 25,000 people.

3.Canada, especially the West, was advertised in Great Britai The U.S.A., and in countries of central Europe; and Canadian Immigratio offices were established in numerous countries.

4.In 1897, the total number of immigrants into Canada was 20,

5.By 1911, the total annual immigration had grown into nearly third of a million..that from the U.S.A. increased from a bare 25,00 1897 to an annual immigration of 125,000.

6.Some of the immigrants were Doukhobors, a kind of Russian ant.(Some of these proved difficult to make over into good Canadian c izens.) Some who came from the great cities of the Old World were un d to pioneer life on the Canadian Prairies. Generally, the settlers of an excellent type.

7.The number of homestead entries in 1896 was 1880. In 1911 there were 44,000.

8.Thirty-eight percent of the immigrants came from the British Isles.This increased from 9000 in 1900 to 120,000 in 1911; Thirty four percent came from the U.S.A....more than 100,000. Others who came were Doukhobors from Russia; Galacians from Austrian Poland; Roumanians, Italians, and others.

9. The influx of Orientals became a serious problem. The Chinese had to be taxed, and special arrangements were made with Japan to curtail their immigration to this country.

(E)THE RESULTS.

1.Two million people were induced to come to Canada.

2.The population of Canada increased from five million to eight million.

3. The western prairies were transformed from a lonely wilderness into a highly developed agricultural and stock-raising country.

4.The North-West Territories were formed into two new self-governing provinces, Saskatchewan and Alberta, in 1905.(Soon imposing Government buildings were erected at Regina and Edmonton. State Universities were built.)

5.It became necessary for the establishment of a means of transporting the grain from the wheat-fields, and the cattle from the wide spreading ranges.

a.The C.P.R. increased its mileage from 3000 to over 13,000..but it was unable to handle or meet the demands made upon it.

b.Two new transcontinental railways were built. (The Grand Trunk Pacific under Government auspices, and the Canadian Northern, built by to daring Canadian financiers..Sir William Mackenzie, and Sir Donald Mann.

c.The G.T.P. and the C.N.R. proved to be a great boon to the west, but they had financial difficulties and were incorporated into the CANADIAN NATIONAL RAILWAYS SYSTEM in 1920. This system is owned by the Canadian People.

6.The West lacks the manufacturing facilities of the East, but its production of raw materials is rivalling Eastern Canada.

7.Scientific discoveries in Agriculture, such as that of MARQUIS WHEAT by William Saunders have added greatly to its productivity and wealth.

8.The edge of civilization is being pushed farther (and farther back to the) north each year. (Districts which were thought to be too far north for agriculture are turning out to be unexcelled.)

9.Oil fields and gold mines have been discovered.

10. Great cities with well-equipped universities have sprung up.

XIII. CANADA AND THE MOTHER COUNTRY.

II. CANADA AND THE MOTHER COUNTRY.

(A)THE EARLY RELATIONSHIPS. 1759-1897

1.In her infancy the Mother Country protected and cared fo

2.The British Taxpayer contributed vast sums for the defen and development of Canada when Canada was not able to defend or de herself.

3.During that time the Mother Country claimed and execised authority over her dependent territory.

(B)THE LATER RELATIONSHIPS. 1897- 1926.

1.In 1897, Queen Victoria celebrated the diamond jubilee o sixtieth anniversary of her accession to the throne.

2.At that time there was a feeling in favour of a closer un between the Mother Country and her over-seas Dominions. There were t who advocated a Federation of the Empire, and the Representations of Dominions in the Mother Parliament in England. having after having

3.Laurier, at first favoured this move, but upon a serious discussion about of the relations between Canada and the Mother Country, h favoured the doctrine of DOMINION SELF-GOVERNMENT.

4.There was a common allegiance to the Crown, even while ea enjoyed the fullest right to regulate its own affairs.

5. In 1899, the Canadian Representatives sent troops to hel the Mother Country in the Boer War in South Africa.

6.During this war their was a striking growth in Canadian S Government. (It was (during this war that) the last British Troops wo withdrawn from Canadian soil , and that the fortifications of Halif and Esquimault were handed over to the Canadian Militia.) Shortly af wards, the Canadian Militia ceased to be cammanded by an Imperial O er, lent by the British War Office.)

7.In 1910, Laurier launched the beginning of the Canadian N It was to be under the control of the Canadian Government, but was t act in co-operation with the British Navy.

8.Canada assumed the responsibility for her own defence, int and external, military and naval.

9.(Other) striking developments took place in connection with foreign relations.(Canada received the Treaty-making power.) Laurier obtained for Canada in 1908, from the British Government, an acknowl ment of Canada's right to make trade agreements with other countrie and a promise that no imperial treaty would be binding upon Canada wi out her express consent.

10. In 1910, by the Immigration Act, Laurier secured the righ to control even British Immigration, (and to exclude where ~~desirable~~ undesirable, British immigrants landing at Canadian Ports).

11. During the Great War the Canadians rallied to the support of the Mother Country.

12. After the Great War, Sir Robert Borden proposed sending a diplomatic representative of Canada to Washington.

13. In 1926, Mackenzie King established a Canadian legation in Washington that was distinct from the British Embassy.

14. In 1926, the Imperial Conference supported the relations between the Mother Country and the Dominions. (In the report of the Conference) on inter-imperial relations, it was laid down that..... Great BRITAIN AND THE DOMINIONS ARE "AUTONOMOUS COMMUNITIES WITHIN THE BRITISH EMPIRE, EQUAL IN STATUS, IN NO WAY SUBORDINATE ONE TO ANOTHER IN ANY ASPECT OF THEIR DOMESTIC AND EXTERNAL AFFAIRS, THOUGH UNITED BY A COMMON ALLEGIANCE TO THE CROWN, AND FREELY ASSOCIATED AS MEMBERS OF THE BRITISH COMMONWEALTH OF NATIONS".

(C) THE RESULTS.

1. Canada is an independent, self-governing Dominion.

2. Canada supports and protects herself.

3. Between Canada and the Mother Country there still exists loyalty, affection and allegiance to the same crown and traditions, and whenever the Mother Country needs Canada's help, it will be feeely and gladly rendered.

12. CANADA'S PART IN THE BOER WAR.

(A) THE DATES.

1899-1900.

(B) THE CAUSES.

1. The Boers, (Dutch) in the Transvaal and Orange Free State objected to British intervention in their foreign affairs, and refused to allow British settlers and miners to exercise a vote in political matters.

2. British troops were ordered to withdraw from the territory.

x. This war was forced on Great Britain by the attitude of the Boers.

(C) THE ATTITUDE OF CANADA.

1. Although Canada had no immediate concern, there was an (immediate) demand on the part of many Canadians that Canada should rally to the support of the Mother Country.

2. Laurier, at first, resisted the demands, although he realized that when Great Britain was at war, Canada was also at war. (He felt that the extent of Canada's active participation in the struggle was a matter for the representatives of the Canadian People to decide)

3. Then parliament met, it authorized, (with Laurier's approval) the sending of three successive contingents of troops. (Great Britain was willing to take over and pay the troops as soon as they landed

in South Africa.

4.Quebec at first objected, but the demand from Ontario and Western Canada was so strong that volunteers were called.

5.(The contingents consisted of:- The Royal Canadian Infant The Canadian Mounted Rifles, The Royal Canadian Artillery, and Stra a's Horse...The first contingent which sailed from Quebec, October 1899, numbered 1,141. The second contingent, which sailed from Hali in January and February 1900, mustered 1,320. These two contingents comprised the official Canadian contribution to the British forces war, but Lord Strathcona also raised a contingent at his own expens contingent known as the Strathcona's Horse, sailed from Halifax in 1900, the force numbering 540 officers and men, and 599 horses.)

6.CANADA SENT TROOPS..AND IT WAS THE FIRST TIME THAT CANADI SERVED THE EMPIRE OVERSEAS.

7. Toward the end of the war, the official contingents were continued ~~because~~ even though many Canadians continued to enlist, b of the persistent opposition of the Province of Quebec.

(D)THE PART PLAYED BY THE CANADIANS.

1.Early in 1900, the Canadian section took part in the relief of K LEY and in the BATTLE OF PAARDEBERG.Another section took part in the R OF MAFEKING, and both sections marched to Pretoria.

2.Over 3000 Canadians took part in the war against the Boer

x(88 were killed, 136 died of wounds, and 252 others were w ed.)(The war cost Canada $2,830,000)

3.The Canadians particularly distinguished themselves.

(E)THE RESULTS.

1.The beginning of a period of striking growth in Canadian Government was commenced.

2.The last British troops were withdrawn from Canadain soil.

3.The fortifications at Halifax and Esquimault were handed to the Canadian Militia.

4.Shortly afterwards the Canadian Militia ceased to be comm by an Imperial Officer, lent by the British War Office.

5.The bond of union between Canada and the Mother Country w strengthened.

XIV. CANADA AND THE UNITED STATES.

13.THE INTERNATIONAL RELATIONSHIPS WHICH HAVE EXISTED BETWEEN CANADA A THE UNITED STATES. 1759-1934.

DATES	REMARKS.
1.1775-6	The Americans tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth Colony in the American Union, but they were defeated by Sir. Guy Carleton.
2.1783-4	The Americans drove the United Empire Loyalists from their country, and they found refuge in Canada.
3.1812	The Americans tried to separate Canada from the British Empire in the War of 1812-14, but they were unsuccessful.
4.1817	The Americans and the Canadians agreed,according to the Rush-Bagot Agreement, to abolish war-ships from the Great Lakes, and forbade the fortification of the international boundary line.(Armaments on the Great Lakes were limited.)
5.1839	American filibusters in conjunction with Canadian rebels created a number of disturbances along the border after the Rebellion of 1837-8.
6.1839	The Aroostook War threatened trouble with the United States. This arose out of the unsettled boundary question between Maine and New Brunswick.(Each side claimed certain disputed territory. Troops were called out on both sides but an agreement was reached and bloodshed was averted.)
7.1842	The Ashburton Treaty was signed, and provided for the settlement of the international boundary line between Maine and Canada.(Of the territory in dispute, The U.S.A. received seven-twelfths, and Canada received five-twelfths It also provided for the determination of the boundary in the St. Mary River, and thence to the Lake of the Woods; for the free navigation of the St. John River; for the suppression of the slave trade; and for the extradition of criminals.)and along the 49th.parallel to the Rocky Mts.)
8.1849	A number of prominent Canadians signed a manifesto advocating the annexation of Canada to the United States. (Because they were angered by the attitude of the British Government toward Canada)
8.1846	The Oregon Treaty Was signed.(By the terms of the Ashburton Treaty of 1842, the international boundary was to run west along the 49th. (parallel) to the Rocky Mts. FROM THE MTS TO THE PACIFIC THE LINE WAS LEFT UNCERTAIN. The question of the Oregon goes back much farther than 1842. The U.S.A. claimed the entire Pacific Coast up to the southern boundary of the Russian Territory, partly because of the explorations of American seamen, and partl as heir to the discoveries of the Spaniards. In particula r they claimed the valley of the Columbia by reason of

DATES	REMARKS.
	Grey's discoveries in 1792, and the Lewis and Clark ex ition of 1804-1806. Great Britain's claim rested on th discoveries of Cook and Vancouver by sea, and Alexand Mackenzie, Simon Fraser, and David Thompson by land. T situation was complicated by the American founding of Astoria and its transfer to the British during the War 1812-14. In 1818 an agreement was entered into which l both countries in occupation, but this settled nothing agreement was renewed in 1827. As the American settler occupied the valley of the Lower Columbia, the questio came acute, and in 1844, "FIFTY-FOUR-FORTY of FIGHT" b the slogan of American Politicians, and the watch-word thousands of jingoes. Finally, Great Britain suggested *extension of the forty-ninth parallel to the sea, This agreed to and was embodied in the treaty of 1846.
8 10.1854	The Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. was passed. provided for the free exchange, between Canada and the of natural substances and raw materials.)
9. 11.1861-5	Civil War was in progress in the United States, an Canadians feared trouble because of the Trent Affair.(A Northern Ship-of-war stopped the mail British Mail Ste TRENT, and arrested two Southern Commissioners who were Board. At last the Americans surrendered the two commis ers. This action caused deep resentment in the North, a the people there felt that the British sympathized with South.)
10 12.1865-6	The Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. was cancell because the Americans felt that the Canadians had reape greatest benefits during the Civil War. A high tariff b was then erected by the Americans.(This excluded from th American Market everything that the American could do wi and was an attempt to farce Canada to annex with them.
11. 13.1866	The Fenian Raids occurred.(The Fenian Brotherhood a society of Irishmen whose object was to free Ireland f British Rule. After the American Civil War, military ex ions of these Fenians were organized in the U.S.A. with avowed purpose of conquering Canada andapportioning it a their followers, and to be a step towards the attainment their ultimate object. The American authorities were not of the work in progress, but they failed to suppress it. most formidable of these raids was along the Niagara wh some hundreds, under O'Neal crossed the Niagara River at Black Rock, but they were defeated at Ridgeway in 1866. 1870, there was a Fenian scare in Quebec, and in Manitob 1871, but they did not amount to much.

DATES	REMARKS.
12 14.1867	Confederation was established and markets were provided for Canadian Produce by the removal of the inter provincial barriers. This meant that the Canadians did not need the American markets.
13. 15.1871	The Washington Treaty between (Canada) Gt. Britain and the U?S.A. was signed. (It settled a number of questions or points B that had been in dispute for some time, and had caused very strong feeling in both countries. (THE ALABAMA CLAIMS These were made by the U.S.A. against Great Britain for damage done by the Alabama and other ships which were built in Britain for the Southern States during the American Civil War, and which Great Britain had allowed to escape after having been notified by the U?S.A. of th their destination. They were referred to the Geneva Arbitration. In 1872, the Americans were awarded $15,500, 000. which Britain paid promptly in one large sum. It is said that the Americans greatly exaggerated their claims and that much of this award still remains unclaimed in the hands of the American Government.
	C. (B)THE USE OF CANADIAN FISHING WATERS. The Halifax Commission arranged by the Washington Treaty met in 1877 and all of Great Britain's Representatives were Canadians It decided that the U.S.A. should pay $5,500,000 for the privilege they had had of fishing in Canadian waters. This was finally settled in 1888, after it had been ratified by the Canadian Parliament.
	C. (C)THE ALASKA BOUNDARY. This difficulty began when the Russian and Canadian Fur-traders met on the Pacific Coast and was settled by a treaty in 1825. When the Americans bought Alaska in 1867, the rights of the Russians were transferred to the Americans. Andispute then arose as to the meaning of the treaty of 1825, in connection with.. 1.The location of the Portland Channel..Which channel was referred to under that name? 2.The position of the coast-line, and therefore of the boundary line, which extended ten leagues from the shore. Was it ten leagues from the mouth or the head of the various deep inlets? and 3. Whic range of mountains was meant? The Americans claimed the line which gave them the most territory, and this meant depriving the Canadians from access to the Canadian Yukon territory by water. The discovery of gold in the Yukon increased the importance of this dispute. The decision was given in favour of the Americans. This award was made in 1903.

DATES	REMARKS.
(14) 16.1910	A commission was established to help bring about co-ion of the Canadian and Amerigan Governments.
14 17.1911	The Canadians refused to consider a reciprocity tre with the U.S.A.; and they also refused to consider a uni with the U.S.A. due to loyalty to Great Britain.
15. 18.1917	The Canadians and the Americans fought with the Alli the World War.
19.1920-34	The Canadian Government has continued the practice o having protective tariffs.
16 20.1926	A Canadian Legation was established in Washington.
17 21.1934.	The Congressof the U.S.A. defeated the Deep-water-wa scheme, which was to provide sufficient draught to allo ocean vessels to journey to the head of the Great Lakes.

XV THE GREAT WAR.

14

(A)THE DATES

1914-1918.

(B)THE CAUSES.

1.The international relationships of the Great Powers of E were such that they were arranged in two rival groups. Each was afrai the power of the other in trade and commerce.

2.The aims of the powers were such that they were willing t wage war to realize their desires.

3.The political murder in south-eastern Europe. The Archduk Austria was assassinated on June 2, 1914 by a Serbian conspirator at Sarajevo in the Austrian Province of Bosnia.

(C)THE ENTRY OF THE POWERS INTO THE STRUGGLE.

1.The Austrian Government demanded satisfaction from Serbia, imposed a number of conditions on her. She accepted some of these and rejected others. Austria then declared war.

2.Russia intervened because she was the protector of Serbia the other Balkan people.

3.France entered as an ally of Russia.

4.Germany entered as an ally of Austria. On August 1, 1914, Germany declared war on France and Russia. Germany planned to attack France from the North, and moved an army through Belgium. This was contrary to a pledge that had been signed regarding the Neutrality of Belgium.

5.A Scrap of Paper, had been ignored, and Great Britain ente

the war in protest of the action of the Germans, on August 4, 1914 because she could not afford to allow Germany to overrun Belgium and France.

5."WHEN THE BRITISH EMPIRE WAS AT WAR, CANADA WAS AT WAR. Canada, as a Dominion, entered to help Great Britain. At that time she was unprepared for war as she did not have a navy, and she had but very few professional soldiers.

(D) GENERAL NOTE.

1.Canada became engaged in the Great War in 1914. The war lasted for nearly four and a half years, and before it was over, nearl all of the Great Powers of the world and many lesser countries were drawn into it. It was fought on the high seas, and in Europe, Asia, and Africa. The combatants were numbered in tens of millions, and it is estimated that eight million died in battle, and over thirty million were killed and wounded.

Ex (E) CANADA'S PART IN THE GREAT WAR. or THE HELP RENDERED BY CANADA.

1.The Canadian Government under Sir Robert Borden called for volunteers, and before the war was three months old, Canada sent to England a force of 33,000 men...(This was the largest body of soldiers which had ever, up to that time, crossed the Atlantic.)

2.About half a million men were sent to help the allies.

3.The civilians in Canada manufactured munitions, grew food supplies, and raised money, by Victory Loans.

4.When enlistments in the Canadian Army declined, the Government introduced CONSCRIPTION or COMPULSORY MILITARY SERVICE for all ummarried men or childless widowers of military age.

5.A censor Board was established to prevent the circulation of injurious literature.

6.A food controller was appointed to conserve food.

7.Help was also sent through the Red Cross, and other Organizations....(Patriotic Organizations.)

(F)Some of THE ENGAGEMENTS IN WHICH THE CANADIANS TOOK PART WERE:

1.The first Canadian Division was landed in France in February 1915. The Canadians became recognized as among the best of the allied troops. They were engaged in many of the greatest actions on the Western Front in France.

	DATES	ENGAGEMENTS AND REMARKS.
1.	1915	The Second Battle of Ypres. In Belgium, poison Gas was used by the Germans. The Canadians held the line for four days and blocked the road to Calais.

DATES	ENGAGEMENTS AND REMARKS.
2. 1916	SOMME They made many of the most successful atta It lasted from July to November. The British fi used armoured tanks there, and the Canadians re outstanding service.
3. 1917	VIMY RIDGE They stormed this centre, near Arras in t spring.
4. 1917	PASSCHENDAELE They captured the last ridge there in the battle of Ypres in the fall of 1917.(The sea of where many perished.)
5. 1918	MONS They captured Mons on November 11, 1918 jus before the armistice was signed.
6. 1918	They were chosen with others to cross the R and occupy Germany.

ADDITIONAL PLACES WHERE THE CANADIANS PLAYED CONSPICUOUS PARTS WER

Amiens.	Bourlon Wood,	Cambrai
Drocourt-Queant,	Festubert ,	Givenchy
Hill Seventy,	Lens	Loos
St. Eloi,	St. Julien	Sanctuary W

(G)a.The Canadian Minister of Militia was:
Sir Sam Hughes.
b.The Commander-in-chief of the Canadian Forces was:
Sir Arthur Currie.

(H)THE RESULTS.

1.Records were established in the conduct of Canadian affai during the war, and during the period of reconstruction which showe that Canada had a strong and efficient administration.

2.The Canadians displayed a whole-hearted patriotism.

3.They helped to finance the War effort of Canada by subscr to the Victory Loans of 1917 and 1918.

4.The soldiers were returned to Canada and demobilized.

5.Canada entered upon a period of reconstruction.

6. Canada became recognized as a Nation within the Empire.

7. The Dominion Representative signed the Treaty of Versail

(I)THE ARMISTICE.

The Armistice was signed on NOVEMBER 11, 1918, and hostil ceased.

XVI THE MAKING OF PEACE.

15. THE PEACE CONFERENCE.

(A) THE DATE

1919.

(B) IT WAS:

A meeting in paris of representatives of all the countries which had taken part in the World War, in Paris, to discuss Peace.

(C) THE CANADIAN REPRESENTATIVE WAS:

1. Sir Robert Borden, the Prime Minister of Canada, (and seve of his colleagues in the Government.)

(D) THE FRAMING OF THE PEACE TREATY.

1. It fell mainly to what was known as the "BIG FOUR".
   a. The President of the United States.
   b. The Prime Minister of Great Britain.
   c. The Prime Minister of France.
   d. The Prime Minister of Italy.

(E) THE SIGNING OF THE PEACE TREATY, 6 by the Dominions.

1. The Prime Minister of Canada made his influence felt on more than one occasion. He strongly advocated that the British overseas Dominions be permitted to sign the Treaty, and as a result, the representatives of Canada and the other British overseas Dominions signed the TREATY OF VERSAILLES along with the representatives of the British Government.

(F) THE RESULTS.

1. Canada and the other Dominions represented at the Peace Conference were recognized as nations within the Empire.
2. The terms of the Treaty of Versailles were drafted.
3. The League of Nations was established.

16. THE TREATY OF VERSAILLES.

(A) THE DATE.

1919

(B) THE PART TAKEN BY CANADIANS IN DRAFTING IT.

1. The Canadian delegates, and particularly Sir Robert Borde took and active part in the negotiations leading up to the treaty, and in the framing of the clauses in regard to the League of Nations

(C) THE TERMS OR PROVISIONS.

1. Germany lost all of her colonies.
2. Compulsory military training was abolished in Germany.
3. Germany and Austria were to pay the Allies vast sums of mo ey to repair the damage done.
4. The Austrian Empire was broken up into several separate states.
5. Alsace and Lorraine were returned to France.
6. Luxemburg, Poland, Bohemia, and the Russian States became independent.

7. The German Fleet and submarine craft was surrendered to th
es. 8. The German Army was reduced.

9. The Saare Valley was internationalized, and the Coal Mines
given to France.

10. The fortifications along the Rhine, east and west, were de
ed. 11. Danzig was made an international section on the Baltic Sea
afforded an outlet for the inland countries nearby.

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. Some now think that the terms imposed were too severe, but
nations which enter upon a dreadful conflict, and fail to win, have
bear heavy penalties.

2. There was an effort to insure Peace, and to show that quar
should be settled in a more civilized way.

3. Germany (to-day) claimed that the terms were too severe, and
tried to have them modified. (They have been to some extent)

17. THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS.

(A) THE DATES.

1. 1920-1934.

C (B) IT IS:

1. An organization of the nations of the world into a league (union) t
prevent war.

2. A new gospel of international relationships in a firm and p
ical bond of co-operation and good will and (which is) open to the nations of th
world.

3. A growth in the process of international relations. (a volu
associations of nations which agreed to certain obligations which w
set forth in the Covenant of the League.

B (C) THE REASON FOR:

1. There was a universal cry of humanity for delivery from the
destruction and slaughter of the flower of manhood, (the incalculable)
suffering of countless women and children, and the destruction of wea
(The object lesson of the Great War showed that 10,000,000 men, the
flower of the nations engaged, had perished on the battlefield; 20,0
000 men were left casualties. They were mutilated and physical wreck
Plague, pestilence, famine followed in the wake of the war, and incal
able financial and economic burdens were left for the succeeding gene
ions to bear.)

(a The aim — 1 To prevent war. 2 To promote International peace)

Tell (D) THE FIRST STEPS IN ITS ORGANIZATION.

1. A representative committee was appointed, consisting of nin
members who were chosen from eleven of the chief allied nations engag
in the war.

2.The committee held meetings and considered the question with representative s of the neutral Nations of Europe. They obtained their viewsx, and made a final report.

3.The report was adopted by the Peace Conference, and became "THE COVENANT OF THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS."

Tell (E)THE COVENANT OR AGREEMENT.

1.The Nations entering the league agreed to promote international co-operation, and to work for international peace and security.

2.They agreed not to resort to war; and to establish honourable relations between nations; and an understanding regarding the conduct of dealings with organized people.

D. (F)THE BIRTHDAY OF THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS.

January 10, 1920.

E (G)THE HEADQUARTERS OF THE LEAGUE.

Geneva, in Switzerland.

(The permanent officials of the League took up their residence there in 1920.)

F. (H)THE COMPOSITION OF THE LEAGUE.

1.The League was to be made up of three bodies:-

a.The Council.
b.The Assembly.
c.The Secretariat.

2.The Council was to be composed of the permanent representatives of the Great Powers (Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy, and Japan.) and representatives of other states. These were known as non-permanent members and were elected annually by the Assembly.

It was to sit more or less permanently, and was to be entrusted with the actual working of the League.

Canada, with the other Dominions was eligible for election to the Council of the League.

In 1926, the representative of Canada, Senator Dandurand, who had been president of the Assembly (of the League) in 1925, was elected to the Council, (and took his place beside the representatives of Great Britain, France, and the other great powers).

It meets once every three months, and may assemble at any time at short notice if necessary.

Its sessions are held at Geneva or at such other places as the council considers advisable.

3.The Assembly was to be composed of the representatives of all states which became members of the league. (It is composed of three representatives from each member-nation. With the present membership this gives a possible body of 165 delegates in the Assembly. (Each delegation is appointed by the Government of the nation which ~~it~~ he represents.

Each nation has one vote.

It meets once a year at Geneva, on the first Monday in September, and the session lasts four or five weeks

4.The Secretariat is the working force of experts, director secretaries, clerks, record keepers, translators, and others carryi the work of the Council and the Assembly.

The members of this body are selected as f possible from the nation-members. They are the officers of the Leag

There are about a dozen Canadians on the s at Geneva at the present time.

It is composed of the finest organized sta capable and experienced men and women obtainable.

G. (I)THE AIMS OF THE LEAGUE.ARE:

1.To prevent wars.

2.To promote international Peace.

H (J)THE HANDICAPS UNDER WHICH THE LEAGGUE WORKED

1 1.The U.S.A. did not become a member of the League.

2.Soviet Russia did not become a member.

2 3.Germany was not in the League at first, but it was elected member in 1926, and it is now a Permanent Member of the Council of t League.

3 4.There is the necessity for unanimity or oneness or union t both the Council and the Assembly in regard to all important decisio (Each state, no matter how small, has a veto which may prevent actio This is no doubt, a wise action or provision, since it means that t League, when it does act, acts with the full force of all the countr which compose it. This provision sometimes makes it impossible to ge decisive action at all.)

i ((K)THE WORK THAT HAS BEEN DONE BY THE LEAGUE.

1.Its activities may be divided into three groups:-

a.Political.

b.Economic.

c.Humanitarian.

2.Its political activities include:-

a.They have prevented International disputes fro developing into war.

bbThey have administered neutralized territories two or more national interests have been involved.

c. They set up at the Hague, in 1921, a Permanent Court of International Justice, popularly known as the World Court, t which any disputes of an international character may be referred for decision. (The court is composed of judges drawn from the most disti ed members of the legal profession all over the world.)

d.They have worked to bring about a reduction of armaments.

e.They supervised treaties that were made for the protection of minority nations, and they supervised the administrati native trusts confided to the Mandating Powers.

3. Its Economic activities:- include

a. It appointed an economic and financial commission composed of men selected from the best and most experienced and practical experts from the various countries for the purpose of considering the economic and financial situation as affected by the Great War. Through the operation of this committee, Austria has been financially assisted; Hungary, Albania, and the Free City of Danzig have been helped to re-adjust themselves on a sound economic and financial baisis. Austria received an international loan.

4. Its Humanitarian Activities:- include

a. The League has interested itself through its Labour Organization, in the welfare of workers all over the world.

b. It has through its Health Organization, done a great deal to improve Public Health in many countries.

c. It has helped to combat wide-spread evils such as the sale of narcotic drugs.

d. About 500,000 prisoners of war scattered throughout Europe were returned to their own countries.

(L) THE RESULTS.

1. The League of Nations is the greatest organization in the world, working to avert war.

2. Fifty-five nations have pledged themselves to use the League of Nations to insure Peace.

3. The League of Nations has proved that it can stop wars. prevent

4. The restoration of Europe has commenced.

5. Industrial conditions are improving because standards of labour are being raised throughout the world.

18 19. THE POSTWAR ADJUSTMENTS IN CANADA.

1. Every effort has been made to recover from the effects of the war. 2. The years immediately following the war were difficult and trying. 3. The soldiers and civilians who had been engaged in the war, and in war-work were fitted back into civilian life.

4. During the war, the cost of living had doubled, but the wages had remained the same.

5. The national debt had increased tenfold, and it became necessary to levy new, and heavy taxation.

6. Foreign trade had to be rebuilt.

7. In 1920 there were a series of general strikes.

8. Gradually Canada recovered from the unrest.

9. Canada's natural resources have enabled her to recover more quickly than the majority of combatant countries.

10. In 1929 Canada entered a world wide depression which has caused untold suffering and we hope that it is nearly over.

XVII THE STORY OF FARMING IN CANADA.

19. 19. THE STORY OF FARMING IN CANADA.

(A) EARLY FARMING, by THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS.

1. The first farmers encountered the dense forests except on prairies of western Canada.

2. They cut down the trees, and rooted out the stumps. (This required the labour and work of years.)

3. Sometimes the grain was sown in the forest itself.

4. In order to let the sun reach it, they burnt or ringed the s so that they died.

5. Their implements were very simple. The first settlers bro the ground with hoes; they cut the grain with scythes; and they thre with flails.

6. They had few horses and cattle.

7. Sometimes they had to haul the drag or the ploughs themsel

8. They often had to carry the grain long distances to the n est mill to have it ground into flour, and sometimes they had to gri in hand-mills.

9. The houses in which the pioneers lived were generally made logs. The furniture in them was largely home-made.

10 Food was often cooked on an open fire-place.

11. The clothes were made on a spinning wheel.

12. There were no luxuries in the home, and few comforts.

13. Life, was, except in winter, an unending round of labour.

14. While the men worked in the fields, the women cooked, spun ed. 15. The pioneer farmers were heroes, and their womenfolk were ines.

(B) LATER FARMING.

Since those early days, life on the Canadian Farms has becom happier and easier.

2. The farmer now hasn't any trees to cut down, no stumps to out, and farms which were covered with trees are now entirely cleared.

3. Farms are much larger than they used to be, and they are m easily cultivated as a result of the improvements and inventions in machinery.

4. Steel ploughs drawn by horses or tractors are now used.

5. Horse-drawn reapers or binders now do the work automatically that required several men to do.

6. Threshing machines now replace the old-time flails.

7. Cream separators are now used to separate the cream from th milk, whereas it used to be skimmed by hand.

8. Much of the work of the farm is now done by machines. (Which miracles of haman inventiveness.

9. Farming has become much more scientific. (The present-day fa er uses mixed farming, rotation of crops, and fertilizes the soil, whe the pioneers exhausted the soil by growing only one kind of grain.)

10. The Government has established experimental farms where new

scientific methods of farming are studied. At these farms new types of grain are evolved; ~~such as the famous Marquis and Garnet Wheat~~; new and improved types of cattle and sheep have been imported into the country.

11. Canadian orchards have been enriched by improved varieties of fruits.

12. Insect pests which destroyed the grains and fruit-trees have been largely conquered by chemical sprays.

(C) THE RESULTS.

1. The farmer of to-day has comforts and luxuries ~~that~~ of which the pioneer did not dream.

2. The log-houses have been replaced by comfortable homes of frame, brick, and stone.

3. The barns are now often magnificent structures.

4. The old isolation has been removed.

5. Rural mail deliveries leave letters and papers daily at the farmer's door.

6. Many homes are equipped with telephones and radios.

7. Some are equipped with electricity, and as a result many labour-saving devices may be installed.

8. Automobiles are owned by farmers, and as the roads have been improved, they are able to reach the nearest centres of population in a fraction of the time that it used to require in the old days of the corduroy roads and spring-less buggies.

9. Life on a farm now is not the struggle for existence that it used to be.

10. Canada to-day is the fourth wheat-producing country in the world.

11. Nearly half of the people live on farms to-day.

12. The amazing changes which have occurred in farming shows the progress that has been made in but one industry.

Comparison. Early farming was unscientific whereas later farming is scientific.

XVIII THE ROMANCE OF CANADIAN MINING.

20 (A) THE EARLY HISTORY.

1. The early Europeans hoped to find precious metals in Canada.

2. During the French Period, there were numerous reports of their discovery, but these were found to be incorrect.

3. The principal mineral found was iron, near Three Rivers.

4. During the period 1763 to 1863 under British Rule, very little was done.

5. With the exception of the Gold Mines of British Columbia, none of the great mining fields were discovered.

6. The story of Canadian Mining belongs to our own day.

(B)THE PART PLAYED BY SIR WILLIAM LOGAN

1.Sir William Logan was a Canadian Scientist, and Geologist who studied the history of the earth's surface,

2.He revealed the possibilities of Canada as a field for mi

3.He showed that Canada, especially in Ontario and Quebec, might ~~expect to find~~ produce precious metals, and other ~~precious metals~~ valu minerals such as oil.

4.As a result of his work, some minor discoveries were made

5.The truth of Logan's prophecies was revealed by chance.

(C)THE STORY OF THE NICKEL MINES NEAR SUDBURY.

1.In 1883, while the C.P.R. was being constructed, copper w discovered in the vicinity of Sudbury.

2.The CANADIAN COPPER COMPANY was formed to develop them.

3.The chemist who analysed the ores taken from the mine fou a metal which he did not know. It proved to be nickel.

4.Nickel is a hard metal, and when amalgamated with steel, gives a metal which is ideal for the manufacture of armaments(Guns It was adopted by all of the leading nations for battleships and ca and the demand increased. During the Great War, the Nickel Mines of Sudbury District brought tens of millions of dollars into Canada an as Canada IS ALMOST THE ONLY NICKEL-PRODUCING COUNTRY IN THE WORLD.

(D)THE KLONDYKE GOLD RUSH.

1.In 1896 gold was discovered in the Yukon on the Klondike

2.Prospectors made some rich strikes of gold, (and the steam carried nearly a million dollars worth of the precious metal out in t spring)

3.The arrival of the steamer with its cargo, in the Spring and the news of discovery led to a stampede to the Yukon. (Overland from Skagway to n)

4.(Many of the men who journeyed into the Yukon perished of c and hunger; others reached the gold diggings, but did not find gold returned penniless.)

5.The more) Some of the experienced prospectors staked out claims which them fortunes.

6.In 1900, twenty-two millions dollars worth of gold were t out of the Yukon, but since then the production has declined, and onl moderate supply is now derived from that territory.

(E)THE DISCOVERY OF COBALT IN NORTHERN ONTARIO.

1.In 1903, the Government of Ontario began to build the Temi ing and Northern Ontario Railroad north from North Bay by Lake Temisk

2.The discovery of Silver near Hailebury was accidental. (A blacksmith the employ of the R.R.Company threw a hammer at a passing fox, and up going to get the hammer, he found that a chip had been knocked off th rock, and silver was revealed.

3. Prospectors flocked into the country, and staked claims which have developed into mines of fabulous wealth. Many of them ha

produced tens of millions of dollars in silver ores.

(F)THE DISCOVERY OF GOLD IN ONTARIO.

1.In 1909, Gold was discovered in the Porcupine Country north west of Cobalt.

2.A prospecting party set out from Hailebury which included JACK WILSON, BARNEY McEANNEY, and BENNY HOLLINGER. They discovered gold and staked their claims.

3.WILSON staked out the present DOME MINE which has produced over thirty-million dollars' worth of gold.

4.McEANNEY staked out the CROWN PORCUPINE MINE which is showing a clear profit.

5.BENNY HOLLINGER chose a haphazard property which he sold for a third of a million dollars. Now it produces over a million dollars' worth of gold a month.

6.In 1912, the KIRKLAND LAKE AREA was discovered, and it promises to rival the Porcupine area in production.

7.Silver has been discovered in large quantities at Gowganda and at Lorrain.

8.Gold has been discovered at Rouyn in Northern Quebec, and at Red Lake in the Patricia District.

(G)THE RESULTS.

1.Canada produces practically the worldss supply of Nickel.

2.Canada ranks third among the gold producing countries of the world.

3.The future will undoubtedly reveal additional metal resources.

*4.Hundreds of millions of Dollars'worth of Gold and Silver have been produced.

XIX WHITE COAL.

22 WATER-POWER

A 1. Power is one of the most valuable things in the world. There have been numerous forms which have been used by man...

NO	FORM OF POWER	REMARKS AND USES?
1.	Muscular Power(Human)	It has been and is used in working lifting, walking, chopping, driving nails.
2.	Horse Power	It has been and is used to draw carriages, ploughing, and working

NO.	FORM OF POWER	REMARKS AND USES.
3.	Wind Power	For many, centuries this was the power of sailing vessels and wind
4.	Running Water Power	It was and is used to turn mill and during the eighteenth century was the chief source of power for actures.
5.	Steam Power	This was discovered during the part of the eighteenth century. J Watt discovered the motive power unused in the kettle. From this t Steam-engine was developed. It ha fluenced the development of steam railways, and manufactures.
6.	Gasoline Power	This has influenced the develop motor-cars and the aeroplane.
7.	Electrical Power	This is used in lighting, heati manufactures, and ushered in a ne THE ELECTRICAL AGE.

(8) THE (DISCOVERY), DEVELOPMENT, AND USE OF ELECTRICAL ENERGY.

1. The discovery of Electrical energy is considered more impo than the preceding discoveries.

2. Electricity is the natural force which is seen in lighting.

3. The invention of the electric battery led the way to the i duction of the electric telegraph.

4. The invention of the dynamo made possible, the electric st car.

5. Electricity was generated by engines driven by steam. This method proved expensive.

1 6. Toward the end of the nineteenth century electrical engine conceived the idea of using water-power, or white coal in the generat of electricity.

3. 7. Electrical energy ~~developed~~ the development from waterpower, or (white coal) was substituted for steam power and black coal, and the electricity it was transmitte ~~for~~ great distances over electric wires.

4. 8. The first great hydro-electric plants in the world were co ted at Niagara at the end of the nineteenth century,

5 9. At first these developments were undertaken by private comp but the Government of Ontario set up in 1906 THE HYDRO-ELECTRIC POWER COMMISSION OF ONTARIO.

(B) THE ONTARIO HYDRO-ELECTRIC POWER COMMISSION OF ONTARIO.

1. It was established in 1906 by the Government of Ontario.

2. The Chairman of the Commission was SIR ADAM BECK.

3. The commission gradually took over the private plants, and built new ones of its own.

4. Through it, the people of Ontario have become the owners of the largest hydro-electric power-producing business in the world, and they are able to sell to themselves at cost, the power produced.

x In Quebec and most of the other provinces the production of hydro-electric power is still in the hands of private companies, but there are also great plants, and the power is distributed widely and cheaply.

(C) THE RESULTS.

1. Canada owes its great material progress made in the last quarter of a century to (white coal) Electricity

2. Electrical power has made possible the manufacture on a large scale of Canadian Pulp and Paper; and provides lighting for the Canadian Mines.

3. It has given an impetus to Canadian manufactures.

4. It has brought about a revolution or change in the life of Canadian Homes. (Even on farms, electric light has been installed in many places; and many now enjoy the luxury of electric stoves, heaters iron, washing-machines, and vacuum cleaners.

5. The demand for electric heat, lighting, and power is so great (is gradually increasing, so) that in time the production may only meet the demand.

XX CANADIANS ON THE HIGH SEAS.

22. NAVIGATION.

(A) DURING THE FRENCH PERIOD.

1. The ship-building industry was established at Quebec in Canada. 2. The vessels were made of timber, and they sailed on the Great Lakes, and the sea.

(B) DURING THE BRITISH PERIOD.

1. Canadian shipping became an important industry.

2. The timber produced in Canada was such that the British Navy secured the most of its masts from this country.

3. Quebec became a prosperous ship-building centre.

4. The Maritime Provinces produced sailing vessels and sailors.

5. In 1801, the Charlotte Dundas was the first steam-ship. It was launched on the Clyde River in Scotland.

6. In 1807 the Clermont was the first steam-ship in America.

The engines of this vessel had been made in Great Britain. It appe on the Hudson River, and ran between New York and Albany.

7.In 1809, John Molson, and enterprising merchant of Montre launched the ACCOMMODATION on the St. Lawrence. It was to ply betw Montreal and Quebec. (The Accommodation was a small ship, and she h speed of only five knots an hour, but even her engines were CANADI She may be regarded as the first whooly North American Steamship in American Waters.)

8.In 1831 THE ROYAL WILLIAM which had been built at Quebec launched, and sailed between Quebec and Halifax, and even to Boston was found that money was being lost, and it was decided to send the to England to be sold.)In 1833, it sailed to England under its own and was the first steamship to cross the Atlantic under steam alone.

4. The early vessels

5.

DATES	NAMES OF VESSELS	REMARKS
a 1801	The Charlotte Dundas	1.It was the first steamship. 2.It was launched on the Clyde in Scotland.
b. 1807	The Clermont	1.It was the first steamship in 2.The engines were made in Great in. 3.It appeared on the Hudson River, sailed between New York and Alb
c. 1809	The Accommodation	1.It was launched by John Molson Montreal, and was to ply between and Montreal on the St. Lawrence. 2.It was a small vessel and only speed of five knots an hour. 3.It was the first wholly Canadia steamship in North American water
d. 1831-3	THE ROYAL WILLIAM	1.It was built at Quebec, and made s between Quebec and Halifax and 2.It was sent to England in 1833. left Quebec on Aug.5, 1833, coaled Pictou, Nova Scotia, and reached Lo 25 days later under her own steam. 3.It was the first steamship to cr the Atlantic under steam alone.

7 (C)THE RESULTS.

1.In 1838, Samuel Cunard organized the North American Royal

Mail Steam Packet Company which established the first regular steamship service across the Atlantic.

2.This has developed into the famous Cunard line of steamships which sail the seas to-day.

3.Hugh Allan of Montreal established the Allan Steamship Line and embodied in his vessels the latest developments in the science of ship-building.(This line was the first to use Screw-steamers instead of paddle-wheelers; it was the first to build an Atlantic Liner entirely of steel; it was the first to use Turbine Engines.)

4.SAMUEL CUNARD and HUGH ALLAN helped to place Canada in the front rank in Navigation.

5.In 1867, Canada stood fourth among all countries in tonnage of her ships, but since then she has fallen behind because steel has been used in shipbuilding instead of wood.(Canada has plenty of wood, but only a limited supply of steel.)

6.Shipbuilding is no longer one of Canada's chief Industries.

7.The Canadian Pacific Railway Company has established a steamship business linking up its railway-system with steamship lines on the Atlantic and the Pacific; and it is now one of the chief steamship companies in the world.

8.The Union Ensign of Canada, the flag carried by all Canadian ships is seen on the seven seas.

A RESUME OF AN ARTICLE APPEARING IN THE SUDBURY STAR MAY 20, 1933.

The Royal William spanned the Ocean 100 Years ago. It was the first to cross the Atlantic under Steam Power.

This year will mark the 100th anniversary of the spanning of the Atlantic by the Royal William, a Canadian-built vessel, the first to make a crossing from mainland to mainland entirely under her own steam power.In 1818, 15 years before the Royal William's feat, that steam was first used on a trans-Atlantic voyage. The sailing packet Savannah, equipped with auxiliary engines, crossed the Ocean from New York to Cork in May and June, but the engines were operated for only 80 hours of the trip, and she consumed her entire store of coal in that time.

In 1826 the steamer Curaco, later renamed the Calpe, was built in Dover for the cross channel service and was purchased by the Dutch Government as a man-of-war. She was, however, employed on the mail service to the Dutch Colonies in the West Indies, and made her initial transoceanic voyage from Rotterdam in 1827, taking one month to make the trip.

The Royal William, however, is conceded the honour of the first complete crossing by steam power only. It was constructed by

the Cunards at Quebec for operation in the coastwise trade between t city and Halifax. According to one record, a trade depression and an epidemic of cholera made the trade unprofitable and her owners decid sell. Thinking that a better price could be obtained in Europe than Canada, they sent her across the Atlantic in 1833, sailing from Pict N.S., on August 18. She took 25 days for the passage and consumed tons of coal. Later she was sold for £10,000 and after a short perio a commercial carrier, was used as a transport in the Portuguese Navy she ended her career as a warship in the Spanish Fleet. She was cond and scrapped in 1847.

Thus it is claimed that the first complete steam navigati the Atlantic belongs to the Royal William of a century ago.

XXI CANADIANS IN THE AIR.

23. AVIATION.

(A) THE EARLY DEVELOPMENT OF THE AEROPLANE.

1. The first successful public flight of an aeroplane in Nor America was made from Canadian soil. This was the famous flight of Redwing, an aeroplane built by Alexander Graham Bell, the inventor the telephone, and driven by Mr. F.W. (Casey) Baldwin. The Redwing named because its wings which were curved inwards were covered wit silk. The first flight was in 1908, and it only rose ten feet from t ground, and flew a little over a hundred yards.

2. It proved the possibility of aerial flight, and establish claim of Canada to a place among the pioneer countries in aviation.

3. The science of aeronautics advanced rapidly, and many suc l flights were made.

(B) THE AEROPLANE IN THE GREAT WAR.

1. The possibilities of the aeroplane were recognized by the countries at war, for observation behind the enemy's lines, and for b ing.

2. During the war as a result the aeroplane was developed and perfected. as it might not have been in twenty years of peace.

3. Science and money were used to develop the greatest efficie

4. Canadian airmen played a conspicuous part, in the war. At a third of the pilots in the Royal Flying Corps and the Royal Naval A Service were Canadians. They were daring, self-reliant, and willing t take chances.

5. In 1916 a special training-depots were established in Ca of the Royal Air Force in Canada, and in the later stages of the war, Canada became a reservoir from which the Royal Air Force drew its men

6. A number of Canadian became aces.

7. CAPTAIN WILLIAM AVERY BISHOP, a native of Owen Sound held record for the number of machines brought down on the British front won nearly every military honour which it is possible for a flying

to win, including the Victoria Cross. He fought no less than one hundred and ten single combats with enemy aircraft. (On one occasion he fell 4000 feet with his machine in flames and escaped unhurt.

(C) THE AEROPLANE IN PEACE--AFTER THE WAR.

1. With the coming of peace, the Canadian airmen returned to civil life.

2. In 1920, the ROYAL CANADIAN AIRFORCE was established, and a number of war veterans found employment.

3. Planes have covered the whole of Canada from East to West, and from North to South; and aerial photographs have mapped the country with an accuracy that is beyond land surveyors.

4. They have carried letters and important documents by air-mail. 5. They have performed valuable services by patrolling timber areas with a view to reporting forest fires.

6. In 1924 the Province of Ontario established an air service of her own to patrol her own forests.

(D) THE RESULTS.

1. Although commercial aviation is still in its infancy, a number of centres in the Dominion have already established Dominion Air-ports.

2. Planes have been used to transport prospectors and explorers to regions which cannot be reached except by canoe in summer or by dog-train in winter.

3 They have played a conspicuous part in the conservation of the forests ~~of Canada~~ of resources of Canada.

EPILOGUE.

24. A REVIEW OF CONDITIONS IN CANADA 100 YEARS AGO AND TO-DAY.

HEADING	100 YEARS AGO	TO-DAY.
1. Amusements	Simple--no radios, no moving pictures, no theatres. Travelling players, or private theatricals by local talent. Few games, dancing was chief amusement.	Complex, and elaborate. Radios, moving pictures, theatres, Foot-ball, cricket, baseball, tennis, hockey dancing, card-playing.
2. Books	SCARCE -no public libraries, a few circulating libraries. Books were read aloud in the family circle in evening	PLENTIFUL Public libraries circulating libraries, magazines for every taste.

HEADING	100 YEARS AGO	TO-DAY.
3.Cities	FEW AND SMALL Toronto was known as Muddy York and had a population of 3000.Galt Guelph, Peterborough were newly-formed hamlets. West of Great Lakes the only settlement was the Kildonan Settlement.	NUMEROUS AND LARGE. Mont Quebec, Toronto, Winnipe Vancouver, etc.
4.Communication	DIFFICULT? EXPENSIVE No telegraphs, wireless or telephones.No post-men. Cost of sending letters was prohibitive. Envelopes unknown,	Easy, CHEAP. Telegraphs, Telephones, less,postmen, cheap lette
5.Education	Being introduced, fees were charged. McGill was about to open. Elementary schools were few. Private schools. Teachers lacked qualifications. Literacy low.Materials scarce.	Compulsory and free. Scho are well equipped. Teache have special qualificati Universities numerous. Literacy high.
6.Extent	Only Upper and Lower Canada.(and Maritime Provinces.)	From the Atlantic to the
7.Food	Plain, and locally produced. No imported fruits.Expensive to buy the imported goods.	Fancy and imported. Orang lemons, figs, dates, raisi tea, coffee, oatmeal, pot
8.Houses	Log, or Board, a few of stone, no furnaces, very few stoves, open fire-places.	Frame, brick, furnaces, coal-stoves, gas-stoves, ric stoves.
9.Heating	Open fire-places, wood used as fuel.	Furnaces, stoves, coal a wood, electricity, gas.
10.Life	Primitive	Modern
11.Lighting	Pine Knots, Torches, Home-made candles.	Electric lights, gas, coal
12.Matches	Lucifer matches were being introduced. Flint steel and tinder.	Plentiful and cheap

HEADING	100 YEARS AGO	TO-DAY
13.Population	Only a fraction of the present city of Toronto.	Over nine million people.
14.Paper	Scarce and expensive, Birch-Bark used.	Cheap and plentiful.
15.Roads	Logs or planks, Corduroy. Irregular trails.	Concrete, asphalt, gravel. Surveyed highways.
16.Religion	Few churches. Church of England established in larger centres. Few missionaries. Travelling Methodist Preachers.	Numerous churches and ministers.
17.Real Estate	Cheap, 25¢ an acre or as low as 12¢ per acre.	Expensive.
18.Relaxation	Fishing, hunting, needlework .	Varied.
19.Street Lighting	No lights. people carried lanterns.	Electric Lights.
20.Travel	Slow, uncomfortable, and difficult.	Pleasant and rapid.
21.Trade	Barter, very little money, coins,	Money paid for goods.
22.Western Canada	The Selkirk Settlement	Organized into Provinces from the Atlantic to the Pacific.
23.Water	From Lakes and rivers and wells.	From drilled wells and artesian wells, springs.
24.Writing	Goosequill pens .	Fountain Pens, and steels nibs.
25.Wages	Up to one dollar a day.	They vary.

Amazing progress has been made in various things, and we owe a debt of gratitude to those who helped to make Canada what she is to-day.

25. DEFINITIONS.

TERM	EXPLANATION.
1.Township	It is a subdivision of a county where population is scattered, and it is called a community.
2.A Village	It is a community composed of not over hundred acres, and has a population of 250 s or more.
3.A Town	It is a community of 2000 persons or u
4.A City	It is a community of 10,000 persons or upwards.
5.A Reeve	He is the official at the head of a to ship council.
6.A Warden	He is the official at the head of a Co Counsil.

26. THE METHOD OF SELECTING OFFICIALS.

OFFICIAL	THE METHOD OF SELECTION.
1.A Mayor	This official is elected annually by a ge vote of the municipality. (He is the offici the head of a town or city council).
2.A Reeve	This official is elected annually by a ge vote of the township or village.
3.A Councillor	This official is elected annually by a ge vote of the town; or by the vote of a ward in city in which he is called an Alderman.
4.A Warden	This official is elected by the members of County Council from their own members. (The County Council is made up of the reeves and deputy Reeves of all the townships, villages, towns in a county.)
5.A County Council	This body is composed of all the elected

OFFICIAL	THE METHOD OF SELECTION
	REEVES AND DEPUTY REEVES IN THE COUNTY. This body chooses its own head. He is known as the warden.
6.Police Magistrates.	He is APPOINTED by the Provincial Government, but his salary is paid by the Municipality. (His duties are to preside over Police Court and to try criminals cases. Serious cases go to a higher court, and are tried by a judge, or a judge and jury.)
7.The Legislative Assembly of Ontario.	This body is elected by the people of the Province. The Province is divided into constituencies, each of which elects one or more representatives. (There must be an election at least once every four years.)
8.The Premier of Ontario.	After an election, the Lieutenant-Governor of a Province calls upon the leader of the Party with the majority of members in the House to form a Cabinet. This leader is then called the Premier or the Prime Minister.
9.The Lieutenant-Governor of a Province.	He is appointed by the Governor-General upon the advice of his cabinet or council, and is paid by the Dominion Government.
10.The members of the Senate.	These are chosen by the Prime Minister of the Dominion on the advice of his cabinet, and are sworn in by the Governor-General.
11.A town or City Council	Members of this body are elected. a.The head of the Council is the Mayor who is elected by the citizens at large. b.For the election of the Councillors, in a city, the city is divided into wards. When there are less than three wards, three are elected from each. When there are more, two are elected from each.
12.The Members of the House of Commons.	These are elected by the people. The Province is divided into constituencies, and each elects one or more representatives. (There must be an election at least every five years.)

29. THE DUTIES OF OFFICIALS. and Governments.

OFFICIAL	HIS DUTIES ARE:
1.Warden	He presides over the County Council.
2.Reeve	He presides over a village or township Co (and he plays an important part in the affair a municipality.)
3. Mayor	He presides over the town or city council he is also chairman of the Board of Control there is one.
4.The County Council	It has control of the making of County r the building and maintenance of bridges, j court-houses, and poor-houses.
5.City Councils	They look after the upkeep of public wor streets, drains, protection of the people(F and Police), the health of the People; the and the sick; and the raising of money by t
6.Provincial Government	It has control over: Education, Municipal Institutions, J and asylums , Liquor Laws , L Crown Lands, Hospitals , D Taxation , Justice , H Reformatories, Prov. Railroads , P
7.Dominion Government	It has control over:- Post Offices, Tariffs , militia, Ind Penitentiaries, Judges, Criminal Law Trade and Commerce, Immigration, Weig and measures, National Debt, Banking, Coinage, Appointment of Lieutenant-Gove Foreign Relations, Patents and Copyrig Naturalization.

30. THE SOURCE OF REVENUE. and its use.

REVENUE	THE SOURCE OF:::
1.Provincial	1. The Dominion Government gives each Provi an annual subsidy. 2.Licenses ::Auto--Hunting--liquor, etc., 3.Crown Lands, lumber and mining Companies the use of lands. 4 Taxes.

REVENUE	THE SOURCE OF ::
2.Dominion	1.Stamps,-Postage and excise. 2.Taxes ,-Amusement, income. 3.Sales , Customs dues and public works.
3.Town or city.	1.Taxes,-Property and business, and income. 2.Permits,-building. 3.Fines ,- 4.Borrowing money.
4.Revenue is used for	1.To care for the poor. 2.To maintain roads, streets, water-works. 3.Fire protection. 4.Salaries.
5.Taxes are collected for	1.Education. 2.Public works.

29. 25

THE NAMES OF OFFICIALS.

OFFICIAL	NAME
1.The Governor-General of Canada.....	His Excellency ~~the~~ The Earl of Bessborough. 1934.
2.The Lieutenant-Governor of Ontario.....	Dr. Herbert Alexander Bruce 1934.
3.The Prime Minister of Canada.....	Rt. Hon. R.B. Bennett.
4.The Prime Minister of Ontario.....	Hon. G.S.Henry. Hon. M.F. Hepburn.
5.The Canadian High Commissioner to England	Hon. G.Howard Ferguson.
6.The Canadian Representative to Washington	Hon. W.D. Herridge.
7.The Minister of Education.....	Hon G. S. Henry. Hon. L. J. Simpson

OFFICIAL	NAME
8.The Dominion Member from this Constituency.....	Hon. W.A.Gordon.
9.The Provincial Member from this Constituency.....	Hon. Charles McCrea.
10.The Mayor of Capreol.....	Wm. Gibson.
11.The Chairman of the School Board...	D.C.Elliot.

28. How Positions are received. The Term of Office and Receipt of position.

NAME	HOW POSITION IS RECEIVED	TERM OF OFFICE
1.Governor-General	Appointed by the Br.Gov.	Five Years.
2.Premier	Chosen by the Gov.-Gen or Lieut-Gov.	Cabinet holds offi as long as it has m of Commons or Assem
Cabinet 3.Other Ministers	Chosen by the Premier.	
4.Lieutenant-Governor	Appointed by Dom. Gov.	Five Years.
5.Senator	" " " "	Life
6.Judge	" " " "	Life
7.Co.Crown Attorney	Appointed by the Prov.G.	Good Behaviour.
8.Magistrate	" " " " "	" "
~~9.~~		
9.Member of H. of C. Parliament	Elected by the People	Five Years.
10Member Leg. Assembly	" " " "	Four Years
11County Councillor	" " " "	Two Years.
12Warden	" " Co. Council	One Year.
13.Mayor 14.Reeve 15.Councillor 16Alderman	" " the People	One Year.
17.Member of School Bd.	" " " "	Two Years.
18.School Trustee	" " " "	Three Years.

CANADIAN HISTORY MAY EXAMINATION.

1. THE RISING OF THE HALF-BREEDS.

a.The Leader of the Half-breeds in the Uprising(of 1869-70)was:

1.Louis Riel.

2.

b.Two other names for this uprising were:

2. 1.Riel's First Rebellion.

2.The Red River Rebellion

c.The dates were:

1869-1870.

1.

11.THE RIDERS OF THE PLAINS.

a.Two other names for the Riders of the Plains were:

2. 1.The North West Mounted Police.

2.The Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

3.The Soldiers of the Queen.

6.(2x3) b.Three results of their work were:

1.They won the confidence of the Indians.

2.They helped to preserve law and order in the West.

3.A new feeling of security became evident throughout the W.

4.They rendered a signal service to Canada.

111.FROM STONEMASON TO PRIME MINISTER.

2. a.Name the ~~Stonemasonxwhoxrose~~ Canadian who rose from Stonemason to Prime Minister.

1.Alexander Mackenzie.

6.(2x3) b.Three results of his administration were:

1.Vote by Ballot was introduced.(Secret Voting)

2.Canadian Politics were placed on a new plane.

3.The powers of the Governor-General were limited and defined.

4.Canada had an honest, conscientious, and economical administration.

1V.THE STORY OF THE TELEPHONE.

2. a.The inventor of the telephone was:

1.Alexander Graham Bell.

2. b(State)One outstanding result of the invention of the telephone:

1.It revolutionized business and social life.

6 (2x3) V. THE QUEEN'S HIGHWAY.

a.Three difficulties that were overcome in building it were:

1.North of Lake Superior, the road was built through a wild and barren country where it was necessary to fill almost bottomless

swamps, and to blast through vast masses of rock.

2.The road passed through many hundred of miles of almost u habited prairie country.

3.It was built through the great barrier of the Rocky Mount through the Kicking Horse Pass, around steep precipices, and throug long tunnels.

4.The grant of money given by the government was not suffic and the directors had to repeatedly ask for further loans. These were made by the government.

6.(2x3) b.Three of the outstanding figures in the scheme were:

1.George Stephen.
2.Donald Smith, (Lord Strathcona).
3.Sir John A.Macdonald.
4.John Henry Pope.

VI. THE REBELLION ON THE SASKATCHEWAN.

1. a.The date was:

1885.

3. b.Three other names for it were:

1.The North West Rebellion
2.Riel's Second Rebellion
3.The Saskatchewan Rebellion.

V11. THE WHITE PLUME.

6.(2x3) a.Three accomplishments of his administration were:

1.He settled the Manitoba School Question.
2.He gave England a preferential Tariff.
3.He represented Canada at the Diamond Jubilee of Queen Vic
4.He authorized, with the consent of the Dominion Parliament sending of troops to aid Great Britain in the Boer War 1899-1900.
5.A Vigorous campaign was started to settle Western Canada.
6.Penny Postage was established in Canada.
7.Railroads were built, and helped to open up the country.
8.The Provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan were organized a admitted to the Dominion.
9.Lord Strathcona was sent to England as Lord High Commissio for Canada.
10.The all-British Cable was completed.
11.The Terecentenary of Quebec was celebrated in 1908.
12. The nucleus of the Canadian Navy was established.
13.A Rediprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. was proposed.

V111. THE SETTLEMENT OF THE GREAT WEST.

4.(2x2) a.The factors that encouraged settlement were:

1.The construction of the Canadian Pacific Railroad revealed the possibilities of the West.

2.An aggressive immigration policy was launched by the Laurier Government under the direction of Hon. Clifford Sifton, the minister of the Interior, who had charge of immigration.

IX VIII.CANADA AND THE MOTHER COUNTRY.

2. a.The war in which Canada helped the Mother Country in 1899-1900 was:

1.The Boer War, or the South African War.

6.(2x3) b.Three results of this war on Canada were:

1.A period of striking growth in Canadian self-government was commenced.

2.The last British troops were withdrawn from Canadian soil.

3.The fortifications at Halifax and Esquimalt were handed over to the Canadian militia.

4.Shortly afterwards, the Canadian militia ceased to be commanded by an imperial officer, lent by the British War Office.

5.The bond of union between Canada and the Mother Country was strengthened.

IX. CANADA AND THE UNITED STATES.

10.(2x5) a.The international relationships which existed between Canada and the United States in connection with the following dates were:

DATES	INTERNATIONAL RELATIONSHIPS.
1.1775-6	The Americans tried to force Canada to become the fourteenth Colony in the American Union, but they were defeated by Sir Guy Carleton.
2.1783-4	The Americans drove the United Empire Loyalists from their country, and they found refuge in Canada.
3.1812	The Americans tried to separate Canada from the British Empire in the War of 1812-14, but they were unsuccessful.
4.1854	The Rediprocity Treaty with the United States was signed and allowed or provided for the free exchange between Canada and the United States of natural substances and raw material.
5.1911	The Canadains refused to consider a reciprocity treaty with the United States, and they also refused to consider a union with the U.S.A. due to loyalty to Great Britain.
6.1926	A Canadian Legation was established in Washington.

DATES	INTERNATIONAL RELATIONSHIPS.
7.1934	The Congress of the United States defeated the Deep-way scheme which was to provide sufficient draught to all ocean vessels to journey to the head of the Great Lakes.

XI THE GREAT WAR.

10.(2x5) a.Five ways in which Canada rendered help in the Great War were:

1.The Canadian Government under Sir Robert Borden called for volunteers, and before the war was three months old, a force of 33,000 men were sent to England; and before the war was over, half a million men had been sent to help the allies.

(omit) 2.The civilians in Canada manufactured munitions, grew food supplies, and raised money by Victory Loans.

3.When enlistments in the Canadian Army declined, the Government introduced Conscription of Compulsory Military Service for all unmarried men or childless widowers of military age.

4.A Censor Board was established to prevent the circulation of injurious literature.

5.A Food controller was appointed to conserve food.

6.Help was also sent through the Red Cross, and other Patriotic Organizations.

XI.XXXTHEXMAKINGXOFXPEACE.

2. b.The Canadian Minister of Militia was:

1.Sir Sam Hughes.

2. c.The Commander-in-chief of the Canadian Forces was:

1.Sir Arthur Currie.

XI.THE MAKING OF PEACE.

2. a.The Canadian Representative was:

1.Sir Robert Borden, the Prime Minister of Canada.

2. b.THE TREATY THAT WAS DRAFTED AFTER THE CLOSE OF THE WAR WAS:

1.The Treaty of Versailles.

3. c.The Bodies composing the League of Nations was:

1.The Council.
2.The Assembly.
3.The Secretariat.

3. d.The groups into which the activities of the League are divided are:

1.Political.
2.Economic.
3.Humanitarian.

XIII. THE STORY OF FARMING IN CANADA.

a. Compare early farming with later farming: (in a sentence.)

2. 1. Early farming was unscientific, whereas later farming was scientific.

XIV. THE ROMANCE OF CANADIAN MINING.

a. The Canadian scientist, and geologist who revealed the possibilities of Canada as a field for mining was:

2. 1. Sir William Logan.

XV. WHITE COAL.

a. The Chairman of the Ontario Hydro-electric Power Commission in 1906

2. 1. Sir Adam Beck.

XVI. CANADIANS ON THE HIGH SEAS.

a. The first steamship to cross the Atlantic under its own steam was:

2. 1. The Royal William.....1833.

XVII. CANADIANS IN THE AIR.

a. The Canadian War Ace who played such a conspicuous part in Aviation during the Great War was:

2. 1. ~~William~~ Captain William Avery Bishop, of Owen Sound.

XVIII. CIVICS.

7. (1x1) a. The present Governor-General is:

His Excellency, The Earl of Bessborough.

b. The Present Lieutenant-Governor of Ontario is:

Dr. Herbert Alexander Bruce.

c. The Prime Minister of Canada is:

Rt. Hon. R.B.Bennett.

d. The present Prime Minister of Ontario is:

Hon. G.S.Henry. Hon. M. F. Hepburn.

e. The Canadian Commissioner to England is:

Hon. G. Howard Ferguson.

f. The Canadian Representative to Washington is:

Hon. W.D.Herridge.

g. The Provincial Member for this Constituency is:

Hon. Charles McCrea.

Hon. E. A. Lapierre.